

DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 067 955

FL 003 544

AUTHOR Glassman, Eugene H.
TITLE Conversational Dari: An Introductory Course in Dari
(=Farsi=Persian) As Spoken in Afghanistan.
INSTITUTION International Afghan Mission, Kabul (Afghanistan).
Language & Orientation Committee.
PUB DATE 71
NOTE 392p.; Revised edition of "Conversational Kabuli
Dari" by Eugene H. Glassman with the assistance of M.
Taher Porjosh
AVAILABLE FROM Medical Assistance Programs, Inc., P.O. Box 50,
Wheaton, Illinois 60187 (\$6.00)
EDRS PRICE MF-\$0.65 HC-\$13.16
DESCRIPTORS *Audiolingual Skills; Basic Skills; Comprehension
Development; *Conversational Language Courses;
Cultural Education; *Grammar; Indo European
Languages; *Instructional Materials; Intensive
Language Courses; Language Instruction; Listening
Comprehension; Modern Languages; *Persian
IDENTIFIERS Afghanistan; *Dari; Farsi

ABSTRACT

This course in Dari, also known as Farsi or Persian, concentrates on development of conversational skills. Twenty-five lessons, reflecting current linguistic theories of language learning, include pronunciation drills, grammar study, vocabulary development, and exercises. Appendixes contain 14 sections of cultural material concerning Afghan social structure, geography, and verb review. Several indexes are included: (1) the Dari sound system, (2) words and phrases used in the lessons, (3) English words and phrases used in lessons, and (4) a subject index. (RL)

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION & WELFARE
OFFICE OF EDUCATION

THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRODUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM THE
PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIGINATING IT. POINTS OF VIEW OR OPINIONS
STATED DO NOT NECESSARILY REPRESENT OFFICIAL OFFICE OF EDUCATION
POSITION OR POLICY.

Conversational DARI

AN INTRODUCTORY COURSE IN DARI (= FARSI = PERSIAN)
AS SPOKEN IN AFGHANISTAN

by

Eugene H. Glassman

REVISED EDITION

of

"CONVERSATIONAL KABULI DARI" by Eugene H. Glassman

with the assistance of M. Taher Porjosh

The Language & Orientation Committee
International Afghan Mission
Post Office Box 625
Kabul, Afghanistan

FILMED FROM BEST AVAILABLE COPY

ED 067955

FL003 544

Copyright © 1970, 1971 Eugene H. Glassman

All Rights Reserved

"PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS COPY-
RIGHTED MATERIAL HAS BEEN GRANTED
BY EUGENE H. GLASSMAN

TO ERIC AND ORGANIZATIONS OPERATING
UNDER AGREEMENTS WITH THE U.S. OFFICE
OF EDUCATION. FURTHER REPRODUCTION
OUTSIDE THE ERIC SYSTEM REQUIRES PER-
MISSION OF THE COPYRIGHT OWNER."

INTRODUCTION

Of the thirty-two languages* found in Afghanistan the Constitution of October 1, 1964, recognizes two, Pashto and Dari, as "official" (Article 3). The present course is concerned with the latter, Dari, which is an alternate--and currently popular--designation for what many people call "Farsi" or "Persian." Although the literary Persian as used in Kabul (Afghanistan) and Teheran (Iran) differs but little today, the spoken forms of the language vary considerably. For a number of reasons the trend of the times is to emphasize the name Dari in preference to--and possibly even to distinguish it from--the Persian (or Farsi) of Iran. It is the language of the capital city (Kabul) although, of course, it is spoken elsewhere in the country as well. It belongs to the Iranian branch of the Indo-European family of languages.

Inasmuch as the conversational forms of Dari differ greatly from the literary or written forms, the present course deliberately stresses the spoken form of the language. The student who wishes to learn Dari should realize that this course is conversational, spoken or colloquial, and should not be surprised if his language informant at first expresses chagrin at being asked to teach such language, even though he himself uses it all the time! It must be added that the pronunciations and constructions presented in the course are not "invented"; they are actually those currently in use in the center of Afghan cultural and political life. Reasons for the particular script employed in presenting this conversational material are explained in Lesson One.

The work itself has been conceived and executed on the basis of now well-established principles of language learning and teaching as developed by linguists over the last few decades, not the least of which is that spoken language is regarded as primary while written (or literary) language is secondary. There are at least two reasons for giving priority to the spoken language: (a) all normal human beings can understand and speak well enough to carry on the affairs of their daily lives while a considerable proportion of them are unable to read and write; and (b) people learn to speak their native language a number of years before they ever learn to read and write it, if they learn to read and write it at all. The amount of speaking we do in a day far exceeds the amount of writing we are likely to be engaged in; and even when we do write don't we usually first try to think of what we want to say before we put it down?

While drawing freely from the results of modern linguistic science, I have nevertheless endeavored to reduce everything to the simplest practical

*The Kabul Times Annual, 1970 edition, p. 124.

terms for the non-technically-trained student of language. The effort has been made to approach the problem of learning a language--in this case, Dari--practically rather than technically, and the presentation of materials is given in the form which some linguists call the "spiral approach." Thus, after introducing the sounds, the course begins naturally with the numbers "one" and "two" and proceeds immediately to distinguish between things of which there are only "one" (singular) and those of which there are more than one (in other words, "two" [or more]; that is, plural). Gradually other elements of the language are introduced, often coming back to the same point (or using the same basic ingredients) but on a somewhat higher level, so that by the completion of Lesson Twenty-five all of the main structure of Dari has been learned within a vocabulary of about 1,000 words or phrases.

The learning of any language well enough to speak it--so that the student is able to communicate or interact with those of the new culture, requires attention to four particular areas, in all of which "interference" from the student's mother (or native) tongue will have to be overcome.

1. Sounds. Inasmuch as the spoken language is primary the sounds of the language take precedence in this presentation. It will be noticed that the first two lessons are taken up entirely with the sounds which are found in Dari, some of which are common to English but some of which will require considerable effort on the part of the student to master. It needs to be made clear that the work in your hands is not some sort of "teach yourself" course which you might acquire much as you did Latin or ancient Greek. On the contrary, it requires the voice of a living, native-born speaker of Dari to give you the proper guidance in pronunciation, correct your mistakes and offer the kind of practice that is so necessary to the development of fluency.

Besides the pronunciation of individual sounds, stress (or accent), rhythm and intonation are to be learned in a situation where one can hear and imitate the speech of a native speaker. They cannot be manufactured artificially from the words of a textbook, no matter how well it may be prepared. There is no effective substitute for the voice of a language informant or the people who speak the language to be acquired. In the early lessons (and throughout the entire course as far as vocabulary is concerned) stress is indicated by underlining (*italics*), although even here it must be remembered that the teacher, not the written text, is the guide. A word stressed one way in isolation may come out differently in different contexts and the student should train his ear to hear and his tongue to imitate not only individual sounds but also stress, rhythm and intonation as he hears it from those around him.

So important are the sounds of the language considered that they have been introduced for practice in every lesson of the course. The pronunciation drills which introduce each lesson (beyond Lesson Two) are to be done only with a living teacher who can (and should!) correct his student faithfully. The drills are based largely upon what are known as "minimal pairs" of sounds in the language, put together into utterances rather than merely learned in isolation, since it was long ago determined that sentences, not words, are the significant units of language. Although some of the pronunciation sentences, in the nature of the case, may (when translated) be about as useful for communication as such

proverbial tongue-twisters as "Peter Piper picked a peck of pickled peppers" or "Big boys bottle the blue bug's blood," the student should not be discouraged thereby. Many of them will be found to be quite useful, even though they are not intended to be learned or even necessarily understood. They are for ear and tongue practice only, and the teacher should spend a few minutes on them at the beginning of every day's class.

With regard to this daily pronunciation drill, however, a word of caution will be in order. The teacher must never ask a student to read the pronunciation sentences from the book. The teacher's job is to pronounce the sentences (in whole or in parts) several times while the student mimics the teacher (not reads from the book). After--but only after--the student has demonstrated reasonable facility in making the sounds and repeating the sentences should the teacher resort to mixing up the sentences and, for example, having the student hold up one hand (or answer with a number "1") for one of the two sounds being contrasted while holding up the other hand (or answering with a number "2") for the other of the two sounds. During the pronunciation drill the student's book should be kept closed since the meanings of the sentences are immaterial--it is the sounds that he is learning to distinguish.

An index of the sounds practiced is appended to the work (as Index I on page 349) so that a sound which offers difficulty to a particular student or class can be taken up at any time later in the course by way of review.

2. Structure. A second area of language learning which confronts the student is what is known as the structure or "grammar" of the language. Having learned sounds and words, one has not learned a language. The correct pronunciation of a word like "apple" with proper gestures may get his point across and secure for the student what he wants from a shopkeeper; but this is hardly language competence. What is needed is to be able to put sounds (the basic building blocks of language) and words (somewhat larger units, or combinations of blocks) into a "structure" which conveys full-orbed meaning. This is done through the mastery, slowly and progressively, of the sentence patterns of the language. For this purpose the model sentence (or pattern practice) method of presentation has been utilized. It is felt that an ounce of example is worth a pound of explanation, and consequently each structural (= grammatical) point in the course is presented mainly through models or patterns which by both the teacher and the student can be manipulated and diversified to give the familiarity with the structure and fluency in its use which the student really needs for effective communication. Explanatory notes, when necessary, follow the examples which are given in box diagrams.

As the sentences were prepared to illustrate the various elements of the structure of Dari three factors were kept constantly in mind: (a) Is the sentence useful? In other words, can that sentence be associated with some situation which the student is either likely to find himself in or can easily imagine and/or can variations on it be easily made to fit the real-life situations which the student encounters? Utterances need to be associated with situations and it is hoped that in most cases those chosen will be found to be useful. Every effort has been made to avoid filling the book with theoretical grammar book sentences such as "My grandmother's blue pen is not on the steps" (although even

that sentence, if properly substituted on, is not without some redeeming value)!

(b) Is the sentence idiomatic? No matter how useful a particular sentence might be or how much desired by the student for a particular task, if--in order to keep it within the confines of the grammar and vocabulary at his disposal at that particular point in the course--it takes on an unnatural or artificial flavor, it is of doubtful value in mastering the language. It is largely for this reason that "conversation" presentations around given situations (such as the kitchen, garden, shopping) have been avoided, since an extended conversation on any of these topics usually brings before the student structures which he has not had and should not have to cope with at that stage in his learning. Moreover, to avoid such it is not felt that the invention of unidiomatic sentences is justifiable. (c) Is the sentence controlled? By this is meant, does it limit itself only to the structures already known by the student or being taught at the moment? In actual practice it was often found necessary to discard for later presentation in the course a sentence which at first appeared to be very useful but which, unfortunately, included structural or lexical elements not introduced until one or more lessons following.

However, it is not enough merely to understand the structures given in the course. While sentences reveal to the student the patterns or blueprints of the language it is only by effective manipulation of them (through substitution of various subjects, objects, verbs, tenses, prepositions, etc.) that the student can gain the "feel" for communication which is the aim of the course. In fact, he would be well-advised to copy the basic sentences onto small cards, approximately 1-3/4" x 4", with the English on one side and Dari on the reverse, one sentence per card, somewhat as follows:

one side

How old is your baby?

Ten days old.

17-E

reverse side

tefletAn chand rOza s?

da rOza

17-E

If the lesson number is mentioned the student will be able to look up

the sentence later should any problem arise as to the construction or meaning. These cards can be bundled together (with rubber bands) in groups and used for drill when the student is alone, or with his teacher, or when two students study together, referring to either side and trying to recall the correct form on the other side. One advantage of such review cards is that it is possible to keep a pack of them in one's purse or pocket to review in odd moments when one would otherwise just be wasting time (e.g., when traveling or waiting for someone).

Leonard Bloomfield, a household name in the field of linguistics, espoused the importance of "mastery" (hinted at above) in the following significant words:

"The command of a language is not a matter of knowledge: the speakers are quite unable to describe the habits which make up their language. The command of a language is a matter of practice. One might learn which notes are produced by the keys of a piano and one might memorize the notes and chords which make up a certain piece of music, but one would then still be utterly unable to play the piece until one had practised it over and over again for many hours. The same thing is true of a language. It is helpful to know how it works, but this knowledge is of no avail until one has practised the forms over and over again until one can rattle them off without effort. To understand the forms is only the first step. Copy the forms, read them out loud, get them by heart, and then PRACTICE THEM OVER AND OVER AGAIN, DAY AFTER DAY, until they become entirely natural and familiar. LANGUAGE LEARNING IS OVERLEARNING; ANYTHING LESS IS OF NO USE."*

In passing, it may be noted that the exercises given at the end of each lesson (from Lesson Three onward) are aimed at providing some suggestions as to how the material in that lesson can be manipulated to advantage. Keen students and teachers will undoubtedly think of other, additional ways of achieving the same result. Moreover, the exercises are given in order to teach the student to "think" in the language rather than having to translate from his own tongue into Dari. In fact, translation as a means of language learning has been avoided in this course as the least advantageous of all methods. The student is not asked to spend hours of his time translating an English idea--in most cases erroneously and unidiomatically--into Dari when in only a fraction of the time he can learn far more by seeing the correct pattern in front of him, requiring only some missing item to be supplied to complete the sense. These exercises should be written out as "homework" after each lesson is completed and should then be gone over orally with the teacher for both correction and practice.

3. Vocabulary. Traditional language courses have placed great value upon the acquisition of masses of words, whether or not the student could do anything effectively with them. Linguists, however, have distinguished between

*Leonard Bloomfield, Outline Guide for the Practical Study of Foreign Languages (Washington, D.C.: Linguistic Society of America, 1942), p. 12. Used by permission of the L. S. A.

what are known as content words (like pencil, book, eat, big) and function words (such as with, for, a, the, might, can). Function words make up only a small part of a language--English, for example, has only about 150 such words--but these need to be learned as soon as possible, within a logical and systematic framework. Content words, on the other hand, account for the mass of lexical items which make up dictionaries and which can be learned gradually as the need arises, around real-life situations which call for them. After the student has learned to communicate orally and accurately with a limited vocabulary he can expand this through reading and other means of cultural acquisition.

Somewhat arbitrarily, the vocabulary in this course has been limited to approximately 1,000 words or phrases in Dari. The vocabulary is not presented at the beginning of each lesson as so many words to be memorized by the student; rather, words are introduced through utterances, so that the student has the opportunity to see them in context. As a matter of fact, apart from context a word really means nothing and everything at the same time. Take, for example, the English word "get," with over 50 different meanings (or usages) given in an ordinary desk-top dictionary. Which of the 50 is the right one . . . without a context to go with it? Then, at the conclusion of each lesson--in order to make reference and recall easier--the new vocabulary items are summarized which have already been used (and presumably learned) by the student in that lesson. These may be found again in the indices at the back of the book, where meanings are not given but only page numbers so that the student who is not sure of a particular item can look it up and not merely find out its meaning but (hopefully) refresh his memory on how it was used in that particular lesson. In other words, the indices are not prepared to serve as dictionaries but only as sources of reference and recall.

Teachers must be cautioned against offering--and students against demanding--other words than those presented systematically throughout the course. The temptation is always great, in studying a given lesson, to think of other words for sentence practice than those which the student has already learned or is being taught at the moment. The whole purpose of a "structured" course is vitiated when such a temptation is yielded to. There are already sufficient words in the vocabulary of the course for the average student to keep more than busy mastering without his having to cope with an additional half dozen or so which happen to appeal at the moment. It has been observed that frequently the insistence upon another word (as a substitute for one given in the course) is purely arbitrary (a matter of preference or upbringing) and that often as not such words are included anyway, only at a later point in the presentation of materials. Even admitting that unA (they) is probably more common in usage than wa (they), it is highly presumptuous to insist upon using unA (instead of wa) in Lesson One, for example, when teaching the sound /w/ in initial position, since the sound /w/ does not even occur in the word unA! Such pedantry misses the whole point of the lesson and in any case unA is used to illustrate the initial /u/ sound in Lesson Two.

Words, like transients, come and go; new ones are learned today, according to the individual's need, and old ones--particularly technical terms and slang, pass quickly away, some to remain only as part of the student's passive vocabulary while his "active" vocabulary is constantly changing. It is assumed

that the ability to handle a few words in their proper structural forms is pedagogically more sound than filling the student's mind with masses of vocabulary which he is able to do little more with than convey through sign language.

It may thus be seen that of the three main elements to be acquired in a language so far presented the most important is the phonology (or sounds), which although they are comparatively few in number--only 36 in Dari--require nearly 100% mastery for effective communication.

Next in importance is the structure of the language. Certain constructions may be easier for the student to grasp and he may be able to re-phrase some of his ideas in order to avoid the more difficult forms of expression. In other words, he can "get by" on considerably less than 100%--some have estimated anywhere from 50% on up--of the grammar and syntax that any language contains. But naturally there are limits to this as well, and in the present course all of the basic elements of the structure of Dari have been presented to enable the student to meet his needs.

Vocabulary, however, is clearly limited to a minimum necessary to practice the patterns presented (without boredom) and to demonstrate the sounds, with some clues given as to how the student can inquire about other things. Even in one's mother tongue the average person only makes use "actively" of a very small percentage of the words actually found in his language (as an examination of any unabridged dictionary will verify). By gaining facility, for example, in the use of the few verbs which are included in this course, the student will have no trouble knowing what to do with other verbs which, through further exposure to the language and through reading and writing, he may eventually acquire. The same is true with other parts of speech. Vocabulary can be accumulated quickly after one has a basic working knowledge of the language.

4. Culture. A fourth and final area of knowledge which needs to be acquired by the student of language is the culture of the people who speak that language. By culture we refer to customs, habits, practices, beliefs, taboos, etc., all of which are largely learned and transmitted through language. Insight into a people's customs and behavior may be theoretically learned without knowing their language at all; yet it is not possible to learn their language effectively without imbibing their "feel" for life. Does a pattern of intonation in one language which conveys pleasure or asks a question necessarily do so in another? What about gestures, use of hands (left and right) in handing things, etc., not to mention attitudes towards those of the opposite sex? In other words, one has not really learned a language until he has learned the culture with which that language is so intricately entwined. To take an instance, "bread" in his own language is likely to be quite different from "bread" in the language he is learning. This is certainly true in the case of Dari and English. And English speakers themselves--not only from different parts of the world but within the United States alone--are sometimes confused when defining, for example, precisely what is meant by such words as "dinner" and "supper."

The lessons of the course make limited reference to various aspects of culture in Afghan life through the use of explanatory footnotes following the model sentences. To these it is expected that the student's own language infor-

ment will contribute additional information. Besides this, a number of appendices have been added to convey many matters of general interest, both linguistic and cultural, beyond the scope of the limits imposed within the lessons themselves. It is hoped that such material will be found useful and that the student will avail himself of other opportunities to acquire a knowledge of Afghan life through cultural events (musical, athletic, etc.) and eventually, should he stay in the country long enough, through literature, radio broadcasts and the like.

A word will not be out of place regarding the time element involved in the use of this material. The course is divided into 25 lessons which, if covered one per week, offer sufficient material for the average student for six months. However, the amount of time which students may have available for language study will vary considerably, from perhaps only one hour a day (five days a week) to four to six hours per day. Those with less time may spend a year on the course rather than the six months which have been suggested, doing a lesson in approximately two weeks. Those with more time, or superior aptitude, may cover the material in less than six months. In any case, merely "doing" the lessons is not what is aimed at; what is hoped is that the student will practice and practice, repeat and diversify, until he has really begun to master the basic (or "introductory") elements that are contained in the course. On this foundation he can then go on to erect whatever kind of "building" suits his needs.

In concluding this Introduction to the revised edition I would acknowledge again my indebtedness to linguistic scientists--particularly in the field of applied linguistics as related to the teaching and learning of language--who have done so much to make the task of "learning a foreign language" much less onerous than it used to be. Besides them, I am deeply grateful to Muhammad Taher Porjosh for the months he worked with me as informant on the original edition of the course and then to a number of other teachers as well as students who used the course and have been most generous with their suggestions as to how it might be corrected, clarified and improved. Specifically, I have drawn heavily from experience gained through a testing program wherein students, by their mistakes, unwittingly showed me the weaknesses and ambiguities of our first attempt.

I would also express appreciation for the kind permission granted me to quote certain other authors in this Introduction and in Lessons One and Two.

Although prepared originally for the Medical Assistance Program (MAP), the National Organization for Ophthalmic Rehabilitation (NOOR) and other related personnel of the International Afghan Mission (IAM), this revised edition anticipates use by a larger international circle in Afghanistan, inasmuch as the material is general and not specifically medical in nature.

Kabul, Afghanistan
September 1971

Eugene H. Glassman

C O N T E N T S

	Page
INTRODUCTION	iii
LESSON ONE	
The Sounds of Dari--Consonants	1
LESSON TWO	
The Sounds of Dari--Vowels & Diphthongs	11
LESSON THREE	
3-A Pronunciation drill	17
3-B The cardinal numbers yak (one) and dU (two)	18
3-C The plural forms of nouns	18
3-D Personal pronouns (as subjects)	19
3-E The present tense of the verb bUdan (to be)	20
3-F The personal endings of verbs, indicating subject	20
3-G Statements with the present tense of bUdan (to be)	21
3-H Questions and answers with the present tense of bUdan (to be)	22
3-I na (not) and nE (no) with the present tense of bUdan (to be)	23
3-J Vocabulary for Lesson Three	23
Exercises for Lesson Three (1-15)	25
LESSON FOUR	
4-A Pronunciation drill	29
4-B The cardinal numbers <u>three</u> to <u>ten</u>	30
4-C The demonstrative pronouns I (this), yA (these), U (that) and wA (those)	30
4-D The demonstrative adjectives I (this/these) and U (that/ those)	31
4-E The present tense of the verb dAshtan (to have)	32
4-F Statements with the present tense of dAshtan (to have)	32
4-G Questions and answers with the present tense of dAshtan (to have)	33
4-H na (not) and nE (no) with the present tense of dAshtan (to have)	33
4-I The negative Ech (none, not any)	34
4-J The suffix -Am (too, also, either)	35
4-K The question word chI (what?)	36

	Page	
4-L	Vocabulary for Lesson Four	37
	Exercises for Lesson Four (16-28)	39
LESSON FIVE		
5-A	Pronunciation drill	42
5-B	The question word <u>kuja</u> (where?)	43
5-C	The adverbs <u>Inja</u> (here) and <u>unja/Unja</u> (there), showing location	43
5-D	The prepositions <u>da</u> (in, on), <u>sar-e</u> (on), <u>zEr-e</u> (under) and <u>az</u> (from)	44
5-E	The positive form of adjectives	46
5-F	Nouns made into adjectives	47
5-G	Greetings and courtesies	48
5-H	Vocabulary for Lesson Five	49
	Exercises for Lesson Five (29-44)	51
LESSON SIX		
6-A	Pronunciation drill	54
6-B	Personal pronouns (attached)	55
6-C	Ordinary possessive adjectives	55
6-D	Emphatic possessive adjectives	56
6-E	The possessive preposition <u>az</u> (of) with nouns and pronouns	57
6-F	The possessive form of nouns	58
6-G	The question word <u>kI</u> (who?)	59
6-H	Expressing the question "Whose?" (<u>-e-kI</u> , <u>az kI</u>)	59
6-I	The cardinal numbers <u>eleven</u> to <u>twenty</u>	60
6-J	Forms of leave-taking	61
6-K	Vocabulary for Lesson Six	61
	Exercises for Lesson Six (45-59)	63
LESSON SEVEN		
7-A	Pronunciation drill	66
7-B	The formation of the present tense	67
7-C	The uses of the present tense	69
7-D	The idiomatic use of <u>ar</u> (each, every, all)	70
7-E	Compound verbs	70
7-F	The object marker <u>-a/-ra</u> to show definiteness in objects of verbs	71
7-G	The object marker used to make object pronouns	73
7-H	Vocabulary for Lesson Seven	74
	Exercises for Lesson Seven (60-67)	76
LESSON EIGHT		
8-A	Pronunciation drill	79
8-B	The prepositions <u>amrae</u> (with), <u>katI</u> (with), <u>bare</u> (for) and <u>raJEba</u> (about, concerning)	79
8-C	General time words (present and future)	81
8-D	The prefix <u>em-</u> (to-, this) with time words	82
8-E	Commands, directions, requests and prohibitions (= imperative forms)	83

[Contents]

xiii

Page

8-F	Useful imperative expressions	85
8-G	Summary of verb formations introduced in the first eight lessons	86
8-H	The vocative (or form of direct address)	87
8-I	Vocabulary for Lesson Eight	87
	Exercises for Lesson Eight (68-77)	89
LESSON NINE		
9-A	Pronunciation drill	93
9-B	fardA (tomorrow) in combination with other time words	94
9-C	The word Aenda (coming, future) alone and as a suffix (next-)	94
9-D	The cardinal numbers from 20 onward	94
9-E	The words ba (in, on, to), mesl e (like), -wArI (like) and tA (up to, until)	95
9-F	dAna and tA (piece, item) used with numbers	98
9-G	The word chand (how many? how much? a few)	99
9-H	The question word chI (what?) in compounds	100
9-I	Common words for direction (left, right, straight ahead, towards)	101
9-J	The word bAz (then, again, back)	102
9-K	Vocabulary for Lesson Nine	102
	Exercises for Lesson Nine (78-88)	104
LESSON TEN		
10-A	Pronunciation drill	108
10-B	mEbAsha as a special present tense form of bUdan (to be)	108
10-C	Frequency words	109
10-D	Specific time words	110
10-E	The simple past tense	111
10-F	Statements, questions and negatives with the simple past tense	112
10-G	The suffix -dAr, meaning possessor ("haver") of something	114
10-H	Past time prefixes dI-, parI- and pAr (to show "last," "yester-")	114
10-I	The past-time words guzashta (past, last-) and pEsh (ago)	115
10-J	ke as a relative pronoun, meaning "who, whom, which, that"	115
10-K	Vocabulary for Lesson Ten	116
	Exercises for Lesson Ten (89-96)	118
LESSON ELEVEN		
11-A	Pronunciation drill	121
11-B	Cost or price	122
11-C	The -I suffix to specify currency units	124
11-D	Making change	124
11-E	Quantity and size	125
11-F	The suffix -e to indicate "per" when applied to price or time	126
11-G	Days of the week	127
11-H	The use of weekdays in construction	127

	Page	
11-I	Vocabulary for Lesson Eleven	128
	Exercises for Lesson Eleven (97-108)	130
LESSON TWELVE		
12-A	Pronunciation drill	133
12-B	The formation of the past progressive tense	133
12-C	Statements, questions and negatives with the past progressive tense	134
12-D	Idiomatic uses of chI (what?) alone and in combination with gap (talk)	135
12-E	Personal pronouns attached to verbs as objects	136
12-F	Ordinal numbers with the suffix -um (-wum, -yum)	137
12-G	The use of ordinal numbers (showing rank, order or succession)	138
12-H	Telling time	139
12-I	Vocabulary for Lesson Twelve	142
	Exercises for Lesson Twelve (109-119)	144
LESSON THIRTEEN		
13-A	Pronunciation drill	147
13-B	The question words chera (why?) and kudAm (which?)	148
13-C	kudAm used as an indefinite prefix (some ___ [or other])	149
13-D	The responses az khAter e (ke) [because of, since] and az I/U khAter (therefore)	150
13-E	The words cheqa (how-, to what measure [or, extent]), eqa (this much, so) and uqa (that much, so)	151
13-F	The use of nA- as a negative prefix	152
13-G	Expressing "on time," "exact time," "early(ier)," "fast," "late(r)" and "slow"	153
13-H	Vocabulary for Lesson Thirteen	154
	Exercises for Lesson Thirteen (120-128)	156
LESSON FOURTEEN		
14-A	Pronunciation drill	159
14-B	Attached questions with khu	160
14-C	Attached questions with nE (no)	161
14-D	The totality pronoun kull (all)	162
14-E	The unchangeable past participle	163
14-F	The verb tAnestan (can, be able)	164
14-G	The use of dega/degAm in the sense of "else," "some other," "additional," "any more"	165
14-H	Expressing "to live" (zendagI kadan, sheshtan, mEbAsha)	166
14-I	The use of pEsh e to convey possession	167
14-J	The use of az pEsh___ (by) to indicate agent (with intransitive verbs)	168
14-K	Vocabulary for Lesson Fourteen	168
	Exercises for Lesson Fourteen (129-137)	170

	Page
LESSON FIFTEEN	
15-A Pronunciation drill	174
15-B The subjunctive, expressing contingency	175
15-C The subjunctive of verbs introduced in the first eight lessons (to be added to § 8-G)	176
15-D Summary of verb formations for the verbs in Lessons Nine to Fifteen	177
15-E Uses of the subjunctive	179
15-F Vocabulary for Lesson Fifteen	183
Exercises for Lesson Fifteen (138-145)	185
LESSON SIXTEEN	
16-A Pronunciation drill	189
16-B Suggestions with "Let's . . . " (which include the speaker)	190
16-C The idiom "Let" in the sense of "permit, allow" (with mAndan)	190
16-D The time prepositions pEsh az (before), da wakht e (at the time of, during), bAd az (after) and az I bAd (from now on, after this)	191
16-E The suffix -dAn (or, -dAnI), meaning container	193
16-F Expressing "to like, prefer, be pleased with" (using khush dAshtan and khush_____ Amadan)	194
16-G The reflexive and/or emphatic word khud (self, selves, own)	195
16-H Vocabulary for Lesson Sixteen	198
Exercises for Lesson Sixteen (146-152)	200
LESSON SEVENTEEN	
17-A Pronunciation drill	203
17-B The verb khAstan (to want, send for, order)	204
17-C rukhsat and rukhsatI in the sense of "leave, holiday", "on leave"	205
17-D The words bIRU(n) (outside), darU(n) (inside), pAYAn (beneath, down[stairs]) and bALA (over, above, up[stairs])	206
17-E -a as a time suffix to indicate age (usually of people and animals)	208
17-F Expressing the idea of "waiting," "staying"	209
17-G Vocabulary for Lesson Seventeen	210
Exercises for Lesson Seventeen (153-160)	212
LESSON EIGHTEEN	
18-A Pronunciation drill	216
18-B The comparative form of adjectives	217
18-C The superlative form of adjectives	218
18-D General comparisons	219
18-E The time suffixes -Ana, -wAr and -akI	221
18-F Expressing the continuation of an action (to go [or, keep] on . . .)	222
18-G The prefix ar- used to indicate "-ever" (cf. § 7-D)	223
18-H Vocabulary for Lesson Eighteen	225
Exercises for Lesson Eighteen (161-173)	227

	Page
LESSON NINETEEN	
19-A	Pronunciation drill 231
19-B	The formation of the present perfect tense 231
19-C	Statements, questions and negatives with the present perfect tense 232
19-D	The prepositions nezdiK e (near [to]) and az rA e (by way of, via) 236
19-E	Expressing the "time since" something has occurred 237
19-F	The idiom "to enjoy," "to have a good time" (sAt tEr shudan/bUdan) 238
19-G	The idiom sar az, meaning "beginning (or, starting) from..." 238
19-H	Vocabulary for Lesson Nineteen 238
	Exercises for Lesson Nineteen (174-181) 240
LESSON TWENTY	
20-A	Pronunciation drill 244
20-B	Infinitives used as nouns 244
20-C	The formation of the past perfect tense 246
20-D	Statements, questions and negatives with the past perfect tense 246
20-E	The words bAwujUd e (even though, in spite of), bedUn e (without, except), Ewaz e (instead of), ghair e (in addition to, except for, apart from, besides) and mutAbeq e (according to) 247
20-F	Summary of verb formations for the verbs in Lessons Sixteen to Twenty 249
20-G	Vocabulary for Lesson Twenty 250
	Exercises for Lesson Twenty (182-187) 252
LESSON TWENTY-ONE	
21-A	Pronunciation drill 255
21-B	The -An- infix with causal verbs 256
21-C	Various ways of expressing "to know" 257
21-D	The prepositions muqAbel e (opposite), pAlU e (beside, alongside of), pEsh e rUi (in front of) and pusht e (sar e) (behind, in back of) 259
21-E	Idiomatic uses of sar (head, top) 260
21-F	The suffix -Ana to make possessive adjectives out of nouns 261
21-G	The use of chand with numbers, in the sense of -fold 261
21-H	Vocabulary for Lesson Twenty-one 262
	Exercises for Lesson Twenty-one (188-195) 264
LESSON TWENTY-TWO	
22-A	Pronunciation drill 267
22-B	The formation of the passive forms of verbs 267
22-C	Statements, questions and negatives in the passive forms 269
22-D	The months of the year 271
22-E	Usage of the months of the year 272
22-F	Vocabulary for Lesson Twenty-two 274

[Contents]

xvii

	Page
Exercises for Lesson Twenty-two (196-200)	276
LESSON TWENTY-THREE	
23-A Pronunciation drill	279
23-B The use of khAt (may, might) as a contingent future	279
23-C The past progressive or simple past tense interchanged with the subjunctive	281
23-D The conjunctions (a)garchI (although, even though), tA (wakht e) ke . . . na (until), tA (wakht e) ke (as long as, while) and bE az U (anyhow, anyway)	282
23-E ke (that) used in the sense of "when, so that, since, because"	285
23-F Vocabulary for Lesson Twenty-three	285
Exercises for Lesson Twenty-three (201-205)	287
LESSON TWENTY-FOUR	
24--A Pronunciation drill	290
24-B Conditional sentences in which there is a possibility of fulfillment--hence, future	290
24-C Unfulfilled conditions in present and past time (= contrary-to-fact)	292
24-D The past progressive tense with the modals kAshke (would that), bAyad (ought, should) and shAyad (might, could)	294
24-E Repetition of words for emphasis, distribution or variety	296
24-F Vocabulary for Lesson Twenty-four	297
Exercises for Lesson Twenty-four (206-211)	299
LESSON TWENTY-FIVE	
25-A Pronunciation drill	303
25-B Expressing probability, possibility and presumption in past time	303
25-C -I as an adjectival/nominal suffix	304
25-D The emphatic words amI/amU with adverbial meanings such as "very," "right" and "just"	307
25-E khu with the imperative singular for politeness	308
25-F sU used to indicate direction	309
25-G khai (then) in a logical sense	309
25-H Exclamations	310
25-I Vocabulary for Lesson Twenty-five	310
Exercises for Lesson Twenty-five (212-216)	312
APPENDICES	
I A comparison of the symbols used in this course with those of the IPA	317
II Some names in Dari of continents, countries and languages spoken	318

	Page	
III	Kinship	
	Chart A. Where khud ("self") is <u>male or female</u>	320
	Chart B. Where khud ("self") is <u>male</u>	322
	Chart C. Where khud ("self") is <u>female</u>	323
IV	Cardinal numbers	324
V	General map of Afghanistan	325
VI	[Map of the] Provinces of Afghanistan	326
VII	Kabul City Maps	
	Map A. Areas of Kabul City	327
	Map B. Points of interest in Kabul City	328
	Map C. Streets, intersections and bridges in Kabul	330
VIII	Some Afghan names and titles	331
IX	Governmental terminology	333
X	The Dari verb system (colloquial)	336
XI	Summary of basic verbs used in this course	338
XII	Measurements	346
XIII	Afghan holidays	347
XIV	Directions of the compass	348
INDICES		
I	List of sounds practiced in pronunciation drills	349
II	List of Dari words and phrases used in the lessons	350
III	List of English words and phrases used in the lessons	358
IV	Subject index	370

LESSON ONE*

THE SOUNDS OF DARI--CONSONANTS

The present course recognizes twenty-three consonant sounds (which include seven pairs of similar sounds--joined in the consonant chart by dotted lines), eight vowel sounds and five diphthongs--a total of thirty-six meaningful units of sound.** These, although arranged linguistically rather than alphabetically, will be described briefly and non-technically in the first two lessons and will be followed by pronunciation drills in each succeeding lesson to help the student master them in real utterances rather than merely in isolation.

In presenting the sounds of Dari it has been found necessary to adopt a special script (or way of writing). The reason for this is that the letters of the alphabet, whether English or Dari, are frequently ambiguous and confusing. In other words, one letter (or combination of letters, or symbol) often stands for different sounds while one and the same sound can be represented by a variety of letters. A perusal of the examples given from American English will illustrate the utter chaos that exists in the spelling of English sounds, a phenomenon found in many languages. In Dari, for example, the vowels are often not even indicated in writing, a problem quite additional to the fact that what is written, even if it includes all the sounds, frequently bears little resemblance to what is spoken. In this course we are not concerned with literary Dari at all but only with the vernacular, what people--of whatever station in life--actually say, in their homes, on the street and in the office.

The International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA)*** and other exotic symbols have been avoided since they tend to discourage the non-technical student--presumably the majority of those who will attempt to learn Dari--confronting him, as they do, with a bewildering array of "hieroglyphics" which seem not to lighten his burden (and language study is work!) but only to increase it. Where a perfectly good symbol was already familiar to the speaker of English, was readily available on

*Please read the Introduction to the book before beginning Lesson One. It is important!

**Called by linguists "phonemes" and always written between oblique lines, / /. The reference in these is always to sounds, never to spellings.

***For a comparison of the symbols used in this course with those which are standard among linguists, based upon the IPA, see Appendix I.

an ordinary typewriter and not too likely to be confused in its significance, it has been retained. This is true in the employment of five digraphs (ch, kh, gh, sh and zh) but also the reason that /h/, when it is required in Dari (as is rarely the case), is represented by a capital "H", in parentheses to show that it may or may not be pronounced. However, even though "letters" of the English alphabet are used to record Dari utterances, they should be regarded as symbols, not letters, and as referring to sounds, not spellings. Furthermore, one symbol has been chosen to stand for one class of sounds only.

The vowel sounds of Dari present a much more serious problem, which has necessitated the use of capital letters to differentiate certain sounds. In other words, capital letters in this course do not have the value or meaning attached to them in English at all; they are merely additional symbols on a typewriter pressed into service to represent some of the thirty-six meaningful sounds of Dari.

Stress (or accent) must be observed primarily by listening to and imitating the people who speak the language, although in some sections of the course--particularly the early lessons--it is indicated in the text by underlining the accented syllable(s) of the Dari. The student should be aware of the fact that the stress in a single word presented as a vocabulary item may change when that word is incorporated into an utterance.

A further word of caution about pronunciation will be in order. It should be remembered that no symbol (or spelling) in any script can teach you the correct pronunciation of a language until that symbol is associated with the sound to be learned. This is to be taught through a living teacher. Once you have heard the correct sound as made by your teacher and learned to imitate it, the symbol which is attached to it will serve as a useful guide to proper pronunciation. But in the beginning it can mean nothing to you until you hear the sound made by your teacher and connect that sound with the symbol. For example, in this script the /t/, although it is a kind of "t" described by linguists, is not the "t" which is used in the English language. Therefore, its correct pronunciation will have to be acquired by listening to your teacher who should be a native speaker of Dari. For both your and his help each sound is described in the following pages as to the place in the mouth where it is made and the manner in which it is produced. This is followed in each case by a box diagram giving Dari examples, the symbol which represents that sound in the pages of this course, some examples of the sound from the author's "dialect" of American English and space for the student to write in examples from his own speech, whether English or some other language.

Please note that where no examples are given this means that that particular sound is not a part of the author's normal American English speech. Likewise, the student should only write in words from his own speech which accurately represent the sound of Dari made by his teacher. If no such words exist he should leave that box blank, which very blank will serve to point out those areas of pronunciation which are likely to be the most troublesome to the student and to which he will have to devote the most attention.

The teacher should pronounce--and the student practice saying--many times each of the Dari words given as an example of the sound to be learned. Although

the meanings of the words are noted in parentheses it is not necessary for the student to try and memorize all of the vocabulary of Lessons One and Two at this point. Vocabulary is best learned in context and all of these words, except where otherwise indicated, will come later in the course in sentences--most of them, in fact, in Lessons Three and Four--and can be learned at that time.

Those who may feel that the articulatory descriptions given for each sound are superfluous--since they already know how to pronounce /p/, etc.--are reminded that although the course is prepared by an American using American English as a medium of instruction it will undoubtedly be used by many "internationals" for whom the English language (not to speak of "American English") is a second or "foreign" tongue. People with non-English backgrounds have problems in Dari that differ from those for whom English is a mother tongue. Thus, for example, the /kh/ is difficult for an American but not for a German while the situation with regard to a /j/ is exactly the opposite. As a result all of the sounds are described, it being assumed that the student will not spend much time on explanations for sounds which he already knows and his teacher assures him he is making correctly.

In conclusion, it must be remembered that all of the examples given--whether the Dari words or suggested American English equivalents--are based on the sound of the word and not necessarily its spelling. In this course sound is "king."

CHART OF DARI CONSONANTS

V O I C E L E S S *		V O I C E D *	
1. /p/	2. . . /b/	18. /l/	
3. /t/	4. . . /d/	19. /m/	
5. /k/	6. . . /g/	20. /n/	
7. /q/		21. /w/	
8. /ch/	9. . . /j/	22. /y/	
10. /f/		23. /r/	
11. /kh/	12. . . /gh/		
13. /H/			
14. /s/	15. . . /z/		
16. /sh/	17. . . /zh/		

*Voiceless (or unvoiced) refers to sounds made with air but with no vibration of the vocal cords (the two bands of elastic tissue in the larynx). Voiced refers to sounds made with the simultaneous vibration of the vocal cords. The difference may be "felt" by putting your hand on your throat and pronouncing, for example, the seven pairs of similar sounds--sounds, that is, not letters--joined in the above chart by dotted lines. ("Aspiration" is not meaningful [i.e., phonemic] in Dari and for all practical purposes can be ignored.)

1. /p/ is a voiceless consonant made with both lips, closed, then opened to release air. It may occur at the beginning of a word (initial), in the middle of a word (medial) or at the end of a word (final). For example,

<u>Initial</u>	<u>Medial</u>	<u>Final</u>
pAk (clean)	Ashpaz (cook [n.])	chap (left)
(p)	Equivalents in author's speech: pen, pepper, leap, hiccough	Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

2. /b/ is the voiced counterpart of the /p/ above. It may occur in all three positions as well. For example,

bacha (boy, son)	bAba (old man)	sa(H)eb (sir, gentleman)
(b)	Equivalents in author's speech: ball, baby, job	Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

3. /t/, unlike the American English "t" (which is made with the tip of the tongue against the upper gums), is a voiceless consonant made with the tip of the tongue pressed against the back of the upper front teeth and then released. This "dental" /t/ of Dari may occur in all three positions. For example,

tU (you [sg.])	ketAb (book)	aft (seven)
(t)	Equivalents in author's speech:	Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

4. /d/, unlike the American English "d" (which is made with the tip of the tongue against the upper gums), is the voiced counterpart of the /t/ above, made with the tip of the tongue pressed against the back of the upper front teeth and then released. This "dental" /d/ of Dari may occur in all three positions. For example,

dest (hand)	abda (seventeen)	sad (hundred)
(d)	Equivalents in author's speech:	Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

5. /k/ is a voiceless consonant made with the tip of the tongue not touching anything while the back of the tongue is pressed against the back of the hard palate (or roof of the mouth) and then released. It, too, occurs in all three positions. For example,

kashIdan (to draw, take off)		maktab (school)	yak (one)
k	Equivalents in author's speech:	Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:	
	keep, cook, ache, school, back, skin, anxious, queen		

6. /g/ is the voiced counterpart of the /k/ above and is found in all three positions in a word. For example,

gul (flower)		yagan (some)	sag (dog)
g	Equivalents in author's speech:	Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:	
	good, magnify, bag, guild, ghoul		

7. /q/ is a voiceless consonant produced with the tip of the tongue not touching anything but the extreme back part of the tongue pressed against the uvula (or soft flesh hanging down at the very back of the soft palate); in other words, as far back in the mouth as possible. It has no voiced counterpart in Dari. The sound is not found in American English, although an approximation to it may be made by pronouncing the sound which American English speakers imagine a crow makes, "caw," as far back in the throat as possible. Even though it is similar to a /k/ it is made much farther back in the throat and must be distinguished from the /k/ in Dari. It may occur in all three positions. For example,

qesm (kind, sort)		beshqAb (plate)	utAq (room)
q	Equivalents in author's speech:	Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:	

8. /ch/ is a voiceless consonant made with the front of the tongue against the gums of the upper teeth and the middle of the tongue in contact with the hard palate but spread so that the sides touch the upper teeth. The air escapes against the upper teeth when the tip of the tongue is released. It, too, is found in all three positions. For example,

chI (what?)		kachAlU (potato)	Ech (none)
ch	Equivalents in author's speech:	Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:	
	child, latchet, match, nature, statue, cello		

9. /j/ is the voiced counterpart of the /ch/ above and is found in all three positions. For example,

	<u>juwAb</u> (answer)	<u>Inja</u> (here)	<u>panj</u> (five)
(j)	Equivalents in author's speech: joy, major, edge, gem, general, hoy, education		Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

10. /f/ is a voiceless consonant made with the upper teeth pressed against the inner side of the lower lip, permitting the air to escape between the lip and the teeth. It has no voiced counterpart in Dari. It may occur in all three positions. For example,

	<u>fAida</u> (benefit, use)	<u>dafa</u> (occasion, time)	<u>gulf</u> (lock)
(f)	Equivalents in author's speech: fish, fifty, leaf, rough, laugh, photograph		Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

11. /kh/ is a voiceless consonant made by putting the back part of the tongue against the extreme back part of the velum and exhaling the stream of air. It is not found in American English although it is similar to the sound made when gently clearing the upper part of the throat. It too may occur in all three positions. For example,

	<u>khAna</u> (house)	<u>tukhum</u> (egg)	<u>yakh</u> (ice)
(kh)	Equivalents in author's speech:		Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

12. /gh/ is the voiced counterpart of the /kh/ above, made by putting the back part of the tongue against the extreme back part of the velum and exhaling the stream of air. It is not found in American English but is similar to the sound made when gargling. It occurs in all three positions. For example,

	<u>ghalAt</u> (wrong)	<u>maghbUl</u> (pretty)	<u>dAgh</u> (hot)
(gh)	Equivalents in author's speech:		Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

13. /H/ is a voiceless consonant made by a puff of air over the vocal cords with the tongue and lips in a position for the following sound. In this course it is usually enclosed in parentheses to indicate that, depending on the dialect of the speaker or the area of the country from which he comes, the sound may or may not be heard. It is generally omitted in ordinary spoken Dari, but if used is found only in initial and medial positions. For example,

(H)Ut (the 12th month)		se(H)at (health)
H	Equivalents in author's speech: horse, ahead, who	Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

14. /s/ is a voiceless consonant made with the tip of the tongue near the gums of the upper teeth and slightly grooved so that the air escapes between the raised edges of the tongue. It may occur in all three positions. For example,

sR (three)		paig <u>s</u> (money)	bas (enough! stop!)
s	Equivalents in author's speech: see, basin, mess, yes, city, ceiling, psychology, scissors	Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:	

15. /z/ is the voiced counterpart of the /s/ above and is found in all three positions. For example,

zan (woman)		tAz <u>a</u> (fresh)	mEz (table)
z	Equivalents in author's speech: zebra, amazing, maze, rose, matches, cars, xylophone, Wednesday, was	Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:	

16. /sh/ is a voiceless consonant produced with the front of the tongue retracted, the middle of the tongue raised toward the hard palate and spread so that the sides touch the upper teeth while the air escapes over the broad front surface of the tongue. It occurs in all three positions. For example,

sh <u>u</u> dan (to become)		d <u>sh</u> tan (to have)	shash (six)
sh	Equivalents in author's speech: sheep, lashing, wash, nation, efficient, mission, special, machine, insurance, anxious, association	Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:	

17. /zh/ is the voiced counterpart of the /sh/ above and occurs in all three positions. For example,

	zhAla* (hail)	azhda (eighteen)	lOzh** (theatre balcony)
zh	Equivalents in author's speech: azure, pleasure, vision, beige, leisure, equation		Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

18. /l/ is a voiced consonant made with the tip of the tongue on the gums of the upper teeth and released just before a vowel sound. The middle of the tongue is relatively high while the air escapes over its sides. Although the American English /l/ may vary from a relatively high tongue position (as in "click") to a relatively low tongue position (as in "elk") in Dari it is pronounced as high and as far forward as possible (as in "lean").*** It may occur in all three positions. For example,

	lutfan (please)	bale (yes)	tefel (infant)
l	Equivalents in author's speech: lean, lily, feel		Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

19. /m/ is a voiced consonant made with both lips closed, then released before a vowel sound. The velum is open so that the air can escape through the nose rather than the mouth. It is found in all three positions. For example,

	ma (I)	Amadan (to come)	m(u)allem (teacher)
m	Equivalents in author's speech: man, family, dim		Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

20. /n/ is a voiced consonant made with the tip of the tongue on the gums of the upper teeth and then released before a vowel sound. The velum is open for air to escape through the nose instead of the mouth. When followed by /k/ or /g/ it becomes /ng/**** with the /k/ or /g/ being pronounced as well. /n/ may occur in all three positions. For example,

*Not included in this course. Frequently also pronounced jAla.

**Not included in this course.

***William A. Smalley in his Manual of Articulatory Phonetics (rev. ed.; Tarrytown, N.Y.: Practical Anthropology, 1968), p. 218f., observes that "the pronunciation of laterals [or, /l/'s] is one of the principal characteristics of the foreign accent of Americans" since they unconsciously mix low and high /l/'s with a resultant "undesirable pronunciation." Used by permission of the author.

****The IPA symbol for this is η . In other words, Dari has a phoneme /n/ with allophones [η] before /k/ and /g/ and [n] elsewhere. See Appendix I.

nAn (food, bread)	kOna (old)	AsAn (easy)
n	Equivalents in author's speech: nose, renter, ban, know, gnat, pneumonia	Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

As /ng/ before /k/ or /g/ it does not occur in initial position but only medially and finally. For example,

sangI (of stone)	sang (stone)
Equivalents in author's speech: bank, thank, finger, anger	Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

21. /w/ is a voiced consonant made with both lips, spread at the corners, and the tongue in a position for /U/. It is impossible to pronounce alone but only when the lips and tongue glide quickly into position for a following vowel. It usually occurs in initial and medial positions only, since (with one exception in this course—"dalw") in final position it functions as a semi-vowel (or glide) to form a diphthong.** For example,

wA (they)	dEwAl (wall)	dalw*** (the 11th month)
w	Equivalents in author's speech: well, away, we, bow, bough, question	Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

22. /y/ is a voiced consonant made with the lips and tongue in a position for /I/**** but then gliding quickly to the position for a following vowel. In other words, the middle of the tongue is against the front of the hard palate. It is impossible to pronounce this sound alone. It occurs only in initial and medial positions; in final position it functions as a semi-vowel (or glide) to form a diphthong.** For example,

yak (one)	kAmyAb (successful)	
y	Equivalents in author's speech: yes, mayor, vacuum, united	Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

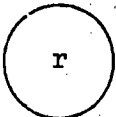
*See Lesson Two, p. 15, for the interpretation of this symbol.

**See Lesson Two, p. 11.

***The final /w/ in dalw is pronounced with a short vowel following.

****See Lesson Two, p. 12, for the interpretation of this symbol.

23. /r/ is a voiced consonant made with the mouth slightly open and the tongue tensed up to within a half inch of the tip while the tip is left wholly relaxed and free to hit the gums of the upper teeth rapidly in such a way that a trill is produced. It is impossible to pronounce alone but only with a preceding vowel. It is quite different from the American English /r/ and is admittedly difficult for a beginner to make. Cummings* suggests that the sound may be practiced with a mirror while the words "th~~h~~ree," "th~~h~~rough," "th~~h~~irty" and "d~~h~~rrt" are pronounced, all the time forcing the tongue to touch the teeth as for the dental /t/'s and /d/'s without any thought of the /r/. Such practice should eventually result in the necessary trill. Smalley** proposes that "If the voiced trill [r] is difficult for you, try saying the following two phrases rapidly and repeatedly, put it on and butter up. For many speakers, when this is done naturally and in a relaxed manner it will give [the desired sound]. Work on these in odd moments, but frequently, over a period of several days, and you will probably find that very suddenly the tongue tip trill works." This sound occurs in all three positions. For example,

raftan (to go)	amshIra (sister, nurse)	nafar (person)
	Equivalents in author's speech:	Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

*Thomas F. Cummings, An Urdu Manual of the Phonetic, Inductive or Direct Method (Sialkot, Pakistan: The Sialkot Mission, 1926), p. xxx.

**Smalley, op. cit., p. 251. Used by permission of the author.

LESSON TWO

THE SOUNDS OF DARI--VOWELS & DIPHTHONGS

Vowels

As hinted at in Lesson One, the vowels of Dari are much more difficult to define than its consonants are. For one thing, they are often not even indicated in writing. For another, they vary considerably from person to person and frequently with the same person, depending on context. What a student hears when his teacher pronounces vowels is likely to be quite "impressionistic" for "no two listeners, regardless of their competence, will ever transcribe all utterances exactly alike."* It is largely for this reason that I have distinguished only eight meaningful vowel sounds, actually representing classes of sounds which may include considerable variety. For our purposes anything more detailed would be, as Bloch and Trager aptly point out, "about as fruitful as it would be for a biologist to assign two cats to different species because one had more hairs in its tail than the other."** These eight vowels will be explained in the pages following as each sound is taken up.

Another difficulty in the production of Dari vowel sounds is that they are generally "pure" vowels, that is to say, level in their quality since the tongue does not glide in the way that it does for English vowels. In other words, in making English vowels the tongue does not stay in the same position but usually glides up or down, resulting in a vowel that is actually made up of two vowel sounds--called a diphthong, meaning "double-sound"--produced in the same stream of air. In fact, foreigners generally hear the vowels of English as diphthongs. Considerable practice will therefore be required by the student who is learning Dari to control his tongue in order to keep it from gliding and to make level or pure vowels.

Unlike consonants, all the vowels of Dari are voiced, that is, produced with the vocal cords vibrating. They can, moreover, be classified according to (a) the position of the lips (whether they are rounded or stretched back) and

*Bernard Bloch and George L. Trager, Outline of Linguistic Analysis (Washington, D.C.: Linguistic Society of America, 1942), p. 36. Used by permission of the L. S. A.

**Ibid., p. 39. Used by permission of the L. S. A.

(b) the position of the tongue (whether it is relatively high, mid or low, and relatively in the front, center or back part of the mouth), somewhat according to the following chart:

	Front Lips stretched Front of tongue raised	Central	Back Lips rounded Back of tongue raised
High	/I/		/U/
Mid	/E/	-/e/	/u/ /O/
Low		-/a/	/A/

The student should remember, however, that the foregoing chart is not absolutely precise for the vowels which he will hear in Dari. He should, as Dr. Smalley observes, "think of the areas of the vowel chart and the positions of the various symbols as 'target areas.' In actual languages [--Dari not by any means excepted--] there is a considerable variation in the pronunciation of a single vowel phoneme, the various pronunciations clustering in an area of the chart, giving a scatter-shot effect."* Thus, there is observable variation, and even occasional "overlap" in the pronunciation of the following related vowels: /E/ and /e/ (especially in the connector 'ezAfI'), /a/ as both /æ/ and /ə/ (schwa), /e/ as both /ɛ/ and /ɛ/, /U/ and /u/, and /u/ and /O/.**

Again, students are reminded that the pronunciation of Dari is not something to be acquired through reading. Its mastery depends upon the ear and tongue. The teacher must pronounce--and the student must repeat--many times each of the Dari words given as an example of the sound to be learned. The meanings of the words are not important at this stage; they will be learned in context in the lessons following. What is important is the ability to differentiate and imitate sounds, a skill which will be practiced in every lesson throughout the course.

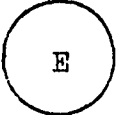
1. /I/ is made with the lips narrowly spread (i.e., unrounded) and tense, as if smiling. The front of the tongue is high while the sides of it touch the upper teeth. It may occur at the beginning of a word (initial), in the middle of a word (medial) or at the end of a word (final). For example,

<u>Initial</u>	<u>Medial</u>	<u>Final</u>
I (this)	zam <u>I</u> n (floor, earth)	ke <u>I</u> (key)
I	Author's nearest equivalents: police, machine, ski, meet, treat, piece, receive, she, quay, company, people, key	Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

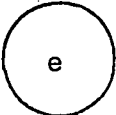
*Smalley, op. cit., p. 201. Used by permission of the author.

**For the special IPA symbols used here for comparative purposes see Appendix I.

2. /E/ is produced with the lips more open than for the /I/, though still spread (i.e., unrounded) and tense while the jaw drops a little. The front and middle of the tongue drop slightly from the high position for /I/ while the sides of the tongue continue to touch the upper teeth. It is found in all three positions. For example,

Ech (none)	dEwAl (wall)	nE (no)
	Author's nearest equivalents: they, rain, eight, name, gauge, great, day, lingerie	Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

3. /e/ encompasses a variety of "short" sounds, made (a) in some cases with the lips narrowly spread (i.e., unrounded) as for /I/ but slightly less tense than for /I/, and (b) in other cases with the lips open slightly more than for /E/, the jaw dropped a little more and the lips not quite as tense as for either /I/ or /E/. The corners of the mouth may also be slightly relaxed, the front of the tongue more relaxed and lower, and the sides of the tongue just lightly touch the upper teeth. In the foregoing chart it is shown varying between two locations. This variation may help to explain why speakers of Dari, unless specially alerted, frequently do not hear the difference in the vowel sounds of the two English words "sit" and "set," being inclined to pronounce them alike. The sound(s) may occur in all three positions. For example,

emrOz (today)	kelkIn (window)	ke (that)
	Author's nearest equivalents: [More common] -- here, near, pit, gym, been, business, women, engineer [Less common] -- there, gem, pet, ready, guess, many, marry, fairy, chair	Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

4. /a/ likewise includes a variety of sounds, ranging from (a) the sound made with the lips more open (but still unrounded) than in any of the above sounds, and drawn back in a laughing position, with the jaw more dropped, the tongue more relaxed and no longer in contact with the upper teeth, to (b) the sound (known as "schwa") made with the lips neither rounded nor drawn back but relaxed in a natural open position while the tongue rests on the floor of the mouth. In the vowel chart it is shown varying between two locations. The exact sound made will depend on the dialect of the speaker and the student will do best to copy his teacher while at the same time being aware of variations when he hears them. The sound(s) may occur in all three positions. For example,

	anwArI (cupboard)	kadan (to do)	na (not)
a	Author's nearest equivalents: [More common] -- what, sofa, cut, son, enough, the, blood, tongue, pigeon, attention [Less common] -- cat, rat, laugh		Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

5. /A/ is the sound made with the lips slightly rounded and protruded and the tongue drawn back slightly from the previous position for /a/. It is found in all three positions. For example,

	Ashpaz (cook [n.])	byAdar (brother)	mA (we)
A	Author's nearest equivalents: call, saw, talk, dog, office, taught, bought, lingerie		Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

6. /O/ is made with the lips well rounded and protruded, even as they are slightly more closed and the jaw slightly more raised than for the /A/ sound. The front of the tongue is not in contact with anything and the tongue itself is drawn back slightly more than for the /A/. It may occur in all three positions. For example,

	O (and)	nOkar (servant)	nO (nine)
O	Author's nearest equivalents: note, coat, window, doe, beau, sew, soul, brooch		Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

7. /u/ is produced with the lips more closed and more rounded and the jaw more raised than for /O/. The tongue is drawn back and the back portion of it is raised slightly while the sides of the tongue touch the upper teeth. The sound occurs in all three positions. For example,

	unA (they)	shunA (you [pl.])	khu [see Lesson 14]
u	Author's nearest equivalents: pull, put, foot, cook, woman, could		Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

8. /U/ is made with the jaw almost closed while the lips are tensely rounded, only slightly opened and protruded as in a position for whistling. The front of the tongue is free but the back of it is raised and in contact with the velum. This vowel, too, occurs in all three positions. For example,

U (he/she/it)	bUdan (to be)	dU (two)
U	Author's nearest equivalents: rule, true, do, who, moon, two, shoe, youth, new, juice, suit	Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

Diphthongs

Dari has five diphthongs (or sounds made up of two vowels produced in the same airstream). They are:

/Ai/ /ai/ /ao/ /oi/ /Ui/

They are made in the following manner:

1. /Ai/ starts with the tongue and lips in a position for /A/, but then the tongue moves upward and forward rapidly to a position for /y/. The sound occurs in all three positions in a word. For example,

Aina (mirror)	chAinak (teapot)	jAi (place)
Ai	Author's nearest equivalents: sawing, jawing, hawing, yawing, cawing, tawic	Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

2. /ai/ starts with the tongue and lips in a position for the short /a/ sound as previously described, but the tongue then moves upward and forward rapidly to a position for /y/. It too occurs in all three positions. For example,

aib* (defect)	paisa (money)	kai (when?)
ai	Author's nearest equivalents: **	Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

*Not included in this course.

**Even though this diphthong approximates the vowel (or diphthong) sound in "by," "try," "die," "buy," "dye," "I" and "sigh," it is actually shorter in duration than any of these and therefore cannot be considered an equivalent (at least in the author's "dialect" of American English).

3. /ao/ starts with the tongue and lips in a position for the short /a/ sound, but then the tongue moves rapidly upward and backward as if to form a /w/. The sound occurs in all three positions. For example,

	ao <u>l</u> Ad (offspring)	chaok <u>I</u> (chair)	pao (.975 lbs.)
(ao)	Author's nearest equivalents: now, how, house, flower, bough	Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:	

4. /oi/ starts with the tongue and lips in a position for /o/, but the tongue then moves upward and forward rapidly to the position for a /y/. It occurs in medial and final positions only. For example,

	jO <u>i</u> cha (little ditch)	jO <u>i</u> (ditch)
(oi)	Author's nearest equivalents: showy, doughy, "Joey"	Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

5. /ui/ starts with the tongue and lips in a position for /u/, but the tongue moves rapidly upward and forward to the position for /y/. The sound occurs in medial and final positions only. For example,

	bU <u>i</u> nAk* (smelly)	bU <u>i</u> (odor)
(ui)	Author's nearest equivalents: screwy, buoy, "Dewey," "Louise"	Equivalents in <u>your</u> speech:

*Not included in this course.

LESSON THREE*

3-A

Pronunciation drill (to be done only with the teacher)**

1. Contrasting /t/ and /d/

tars na dArum (I'm not afraid)
dars na dArum (I don't have a lesson)

tU bugO (Say, "You")
dU bugO (Say, "Two")
tU dU bugO (You say, "Two")

tEr na shud (He/she/it didn't pass by)
dEr na shud (It wasn't late).

kArta rawAn kad (He/she sent a card)
kARda rawAn kad (He/she sent a knife)

I jAi bEtar as (This place is better)
I jAi bEdar as (This place doesn't have a door)

bUt kujA bUd? (Where was the shoe?)

2. Contrasting /I/ and /E/

U sIr as (That is garlic)
U sEr as (He/she is full; or, That is a "seer" [a measurement])

shIr kujA s? (Where is the milk?)
shEr kujA s? (Where is the lion?)

U sI guft (He/she said, "Thirty")
U sE guft (He/she said, "Three")
sE da sI mEsha (Three times ten is thirty)

*Please do not begin Lesson Three, the first of the "structural" lessons, until you have thoroughly covered "The Sounds of Dari" in Lessons One and Two.

**Pronunciation drills are for ear and tongue practice only. The meanings are not important and need not be learned. They are included only to demonstrate that the utterances are real, not nonsense syllables, and to assist the teacher.

tIr tEr shud (The arrow passed by)

3. Illustrating /rd/

kArd e khurda bOrd (He/she took away the small knife)

kArd e zarda bOrd (He/she took away the yellow knife)

awA sard shud (The weather turned cold)

Ard qImat shud (Flour became expensive)

sarem dard mEkuna (My head aches)

3-B

The cardinal numbers yak (one) and dU (two)

۱	۱	۲	۲
-----		-----	
yak (yag)		dU (du)	

1. The final /k/ (voiceless) in yak (one) becomes final /g/ (voiced) before voiced consonants [see p. 3] and all vowels, except when followed by the connector O ("and"), in which case the /k/ is retained.
2. In isolation "two" is usually dU, but when followed by another word it is regularly shortened to du.
3. The numeral as written in Dari is included in order to familiarize the student with the numbers in script which, even though he cannot read the language, will be useful in many situations. Other numbers will be introduced at appropriate points in the course. A table of Dari numbers is included in Appendix IV.

3-C

The plural forms of nouns

mEz	mEzA	but →	yag mEz	du mEz	
(table)	(tables)		(one table)	(two tables)	
aolAd	aolAdA	but →	yag aolAd	du aolAd	
(offspring)	(offspring)		(one offspring)	(two offspring)	
khAna	khANA	chaokI	chaokYA	kachAlU	kachAlUA
(house)	(houses)	(chair)	(chairs)	(potato)	(potatoes)

1. To form the spoken plural merely add -A on the end of the noun--unless a number showing plurality is included with it, in which case the noun

- does not change, whether it is animate or inanimate. When words showing plurality (other than numbers) are used, then the noun may be pluralized.
2. The plural marker -A is always accented.
 3. When adding -A to words ending in vowel sounds the following phonological rules are observed:
 - (a) The final -a of words ending in -a is merely lengthened to -A; so, khAna--khAnA (houses).
 - (b) Words ending in final -I or -i (of diphthongs) change the -I or -i to -y- before adding -A; so, chaokI--chaokyA (chairs).
 - (c) Words ending in -o (of diphthongs) treat -o as -w- before adding -A.
 - (d) Words ending in any other vowel sound (e.g., -E, -A, -O, -U) merely add -A; so, kachAU--kachAUA (potatoes).
 4. Although the two examples shown with yak cause /k/ to change to /g/ (because of the following voiced sounds), with the other three examples (beginning with /kh/, /ch/ and /k/, all voiceless) there is no change. So, yak khAna (one house), yak chaokI (one chair) and yak kachAU (one potato).
 5. In this course stress is shown by underlining the syllables (of a single word or sentence) which are to be accented.

3-D

Personal pronouns (as subjects)

		<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
1	First person	ma (I)	mA (we)
2	Second "	tU (you)	shumA (you)
3	Third "	U (he/she/it; they [inan.])	unA } (they; he/ enA } she [formal])

1. Gender is not indicated by any of these forms. It must be inferred from the context. U, for example, can be "he," "she" or "it."
2. The second person singular form tU is used for children and for familiar friends whom one would address by their first names. It must be distinguished from tO (usually repeated) which is a sound used for calling a dog. (See § 21-A.)
3. The second person plural form shumA is used for those whom one would address more formally or unfamiliarly by their surnames.
4. If the second person plural form shumA is used for more than one person then those persons could be either familiar or unfamiliar. If it is used for one person only then that person would not be well known to the

speaker or would be addressed more formally. It is not so much (as in some languages) a question of "politeness" as it is of familiarity/unfamiliarity or formality/informality. shumA is becoming more and more preferable to use instead of tU. In other words, shumA would nearly always be acceptable while tU in some cases--especially if mispronounced t0 (as in # 2, above)--might be offensive.

5. The third person singular form U, besides its usual sense, is also used as a plural for animals or inanimate things (= they). (Cf. § 3-G-1.)
6. The third person plural form unA is normally used only when referring to persons (not animals or things). As a matter of respect (or formality)--e.g., when talking about another's father--unA may also be used to refer to a singular subject so long as that subject is not present. In such instances the verb is pluralized to agree with unA.
7. The third person plural form enA is used when one is talking formally or respectfully about a person in his presence to another person. This usage requires the third person plural form of the verb with enA.

3-E

The present tense of the verb bUdan (to be)

		<u>S i n g u l a r</u>	<u>P l u r a l</u>
1	First person	<u>astum</u> (I am)	<u>astEm</u> (we are)
2	Second "	<u>astI</u> (you are)	<u>astEn</u> (you are)
3	Third "	as (he/she/ it is)	<u>astan</u> (they are)

1. The infinitive (or "to") form of the verb in Dari always ends in -an.
2. All infinitives are accented on the final (or -an) syllable.
3. The accent of the verb bUdan falls on the first syllable in this tense.
4. The verb bUdan is the most frequently used and also the most irregular verb in Dari. It is important, however, because of the personal endings which are regular except for the third person singular.

3-F

The personal endings of verbs, indicating subject

		<u>S i n g u l a r</u>	<u>P l u r a l</u>
1	First person	-um (I)	-Em (we)
2	Second "	-I (you)	-En (you)
3	Third "	-a (he/she/it)	-an (they)

1. Gender is not shown by any of these forms. It must be inferred from the context. Consequently, the -a form, for example, can imply that "he," "she" or "it" is the subject.
2. Except for the third person singular of certain tenses (cf. § 3-E, above) the personal endings for all verbs in Dari are as given here.
3. Since these endings indicating the subject are always suffixed to verbs, the subject pronouns--depending on the context--are frequently omitted.

3-G

Statements with the present tense of bUdan (to be)

ma	dAktar	astum	I am a doctor.
ma	Ashpaz	astum	I am a cook.
tU	shAgerd	astI	You are a student.
tU	nOkar	astI	You are a servant.
U	tefl	as	He/she is a baby.
U	kelkIn	as	It is a window.
U	zamIn	as	It is a floor (or, earth).
U	darwAze	s	It is a door.
mA	brAdar	astEm	We are brothers.
shumA	muallem	astEm	You are a teacher.
unA	amshIra	stan	They are nurses.
enA	amshIra	stan	She is a nurse (or, They are nurses).
U	kelyA	s	They are keys.
U	gula	s	They are flowers.
U	pardA	s	They are curtains.

1. The verb agrees with the subject in person and number except when the subject is non-human or inanimate, in which case the subject pronoun and the verb remain singular (cf. the examples above with kelyA, gula and pardA).
2. When a number is mentioned plural animate subjects take a singular verb since the subject is not pluralized (cf. § 3-C-1).

3. Note that in the sentences with "brothers" and "nurses" the words brAdar and amshIra in spoken Dari usually remain singular, even though in English they have to be translated as plurals. In these cases they function attributively, that is, as if one were to say, "We belong to the group known as (or, in the category of) 'brother', 'nurse'."
4. Contraction frequently--but not always-- occurs in Dari when a word ending in a vowel is immediately followed by a verb beginning with a vowel (as in the present tense of bUdan). In other words, one of the vowels is assimilated. So, darwAza + as = darwAzas, amshIra + astan = amshI-rastan, kelyA + as = kelyAs, gula + as = gulAs, pardA + as = pardAs.
5. When a word like tefel (baby) is followed by a vowel it drops the second short vowel. So, tefel + as = tefl as; tefel—teflA (babies).
6. Since the subject is included in the personal ending of the Dari verb anyway, subject pronouns are often omitted (as in some of the examples following). Foreigners have a tendency to use subject pronouns too much while Afghans, if the context is clear, normally omit them.
7. As in English, the pitch of the voice drops at the end of a simple statement. Thus,
U cherAgh as It is a light (or, lamp).
8. The usual Dari word order puts the verb at the end of the sentence.
9. The word kelkIn (window) ordinarily refers to one frame (of any size) serving as an opening in a wall, no matter how many smaller divisions it contains. Thus, a window with the shape



will be considered as yak kelkIn, not du kelkIn.

3-H

Questions and answers with the present tense of bUdan (to be)

(U)	<u>utAq</u>	<u>as?</u>	Is it a room?	
<u>bale,</u>	(U)	<u>utAq</u>	<u>as</u>	Yes, it's a room.
(unA)	<u>shAgerd</u>	<u>astan?</u>	Are they students?	
<u>bale,</u>	(unA)	<u>shAgerd</u>	<u>astan</u>	Yes, they are students.

1. Apart from the "yes" (or "no") answer, the form and word order of the simple question is the same as that of the simple statement. The difference is conveyed only by the pitch of the voice, rising for the question and falling for the answer.
2. If the answer is intended to be somewhat emphatic, as, for example, in clarifying a misunderstanding or uncertainty, the voice may be stressed

on the verb. This does in spoken language what italics would accomplish in written English. So, "Yes, he is."

3. Words given in parentheses in the above examples--and throughout the sentences of the course--may be omitted in actual speech. Here the subject is included in the personal endings of the verbs and references are specific enough without the subject pronouns.
4. bale (also, bale), "yes," with the voice rising and the accent falling on the second syllable, is also the usual response by Afghans when answering the telephone. It is thus equivalent to "Hello" or "Yes."

3-I

na (not) and nE (no) with the present tense of bUdan (to be)

In statements	U	anwArI	nEs	It isn't a cupboard.
	vnA	brAdar	nEstan	They aren't brothers.
In questions	tU	amshIra	nIstI?	Aren't you a nurse?
	shumA	shAgerd	nEstEn?	Aren't you (a) student(s)?
In answers	nE,	bacha	nEs--	No, it's not a boy--it's
		dukhtar	as	a girl.
	na-khair	na	dAktor	No, I'm not a doctor--
	nEstum--	muallem	astum	I'm a teacher.

1. The negative na (not), because of its final vowel coming just before the initial vowel of the present tense forms of bUdan (to be), is assimilated to that vowel, becoming nE; except in the case of the second person singular the second vowel commonly influences the first one and changes it from -E- to -I-.
2. The accent is put on the negative marker na when it is combined with the present tense forms of bUdan (to be).
3. The negative answer nE (no) comes at the beginning of replies. na-khair is a more polite way of saying "No," something like, "No, sir, I regret to say . . ."
4. The word bacha means "boy" or "son." It is misused--and generally also mispronounced--by foreigners to refer to a general "servant." The correct pronunciation is bacha, not bAcha.

3-J

Vocabulary for Lesson Three

-a (or, -__)	he/she/it (personal ending for verbs)
-A	(the sign of the plural, suffixed to nouns)
amsh <u>ra</u>	sister, (female) nurse
-an	they (personal ending for verbs)
anw <u>ArI</u> (alm <u>ArI</u>)*	cupboard, closet, shelf
ao <u>lAd</u>	offspring, child (of either sex)
Ash <u>paz</u>	cook [n.]
ba <u>cha</u>	boy, son
ba <u>le</u> (ba <u>lE</u>)	yes; "Hello" (on the telephone)
br <u>Adar</u> (by <u>Adar</u>)	brother
b <u>Udan</u>	to be
cha <u>okI</u>	chair, stool, seat, bench
che <u>rAgh</u>	light, lamp
da <u>ktar</u>	doctor
darw <u>Asa</u>	door
du (du)	two
dukht <u>ar</u>	girl, daughter
-Em	we (personal ending for verbs)
-En	you ([plur.] personal ending for verbs)
en <u>A</u>	they; he/she (for respect)
gul	flower
-I	you ([sing.] personal ending for verbs)
kach <u>AlU</u>	potato
ke <u>lI</u>	key

*In this and all subsequent vocabulary entries forms given in () are alternates which the student should be aware of since they do occur.

<u>kelkIn</u>	window
<u>khAna</u>	house, home, room
<u>ma</u>	I; my (§ 6-D); mine (§ 6-E); me (§ 8-B)
<u>mA</u>	we; our (§ 6-D); ours (§ 6-E); us (§ 8-B)
<u>mEz</u>	table, desk
<u>m(u)allem</u>	teacher
<u>na</u>	not
<u>na-khair</u>	"No, sir . . . "
<u>nE</u>	no
<u>nOkar</u>	servant
<u>parda</u>	curtain, drape, covering
<u>shAgerd</u>	student, apprentice, trainee
<u>shumA</u>	you (pl.); your (§ 6-D); yours (§ 6-E); you (§ 8-B)
<u>tefel</u>	baby, infant, youngster (of either sex)
<u>tU</u>	you (sg.); your (§ 6-D); yours (§ 6-E); you (§ 8-B)
<u>U</u>	he/she/it; they (for animals and things); his/her/its (§ 6-D); his/hers (§ 6-E); him/her/it (§ 8-B)
<u>-um</u>	I (personal ending for verbs)
<u>unA</u>	they (for persons); their (§ 6-D); theirs (§ 6-E); them (§ 8-B)
<u>utAq</u>	room (of a building)
<u>yak (yag)</u>	one; a, an
<u>zamIn</u>	floor, land, earth, soil

Exercises for Lesson Three

(to be written as well as practiced orally with the teacher)

Exercise 1 - Make the plural of the following nouns. E.g., aolAd aolAdA
.....

1. Ashpaz 2. brAdar 3. cherAgh 4. dAktar

- | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 5. <u>dukhtar</u> | 10. <u>nOkar</u> | 15. <u>amshIra</u> | 20. <u>anwArI</u> |
| 6. <u>gul</u> | 11. <u>shAgerd</u> | 16. <u>bacha</u> | 21. <u>chaokI</u> |
| 7. <u>kelkIn</u> | 12. <u>tefel</u> | 17. <u>darwAza</u> | 22. <u>kellI</u> |
| 8. <u>mEz</u> | 13. <u>utAg</u> | 18. <u>khAna</u> | 23. <u>kachAlU</u> |
| 9. <u>muallem</u> | 14. <u>zamIn</u> | 19. <u>parda</u> | |

Exercise 2 - Repeat each of the above nouns with the numeral yak (yag). E.g.,

aolAd yag aolAd

Exercise 3 - Repeat each of the above nouns with the numeral du (du). E.g.,

aolAd du aolAd

Exercise 4 - Use the correct form of the present tense of bUdan in each of the following sentences, including contractions where necessary. E.g.,

U keli U keli s

- | | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. ma <u>Ashpaz</u> | 4. <u>unA</u> brAdar | 7. <u>shumA</u> shAgerd |
| 2. tU <u>nOkar</u> | 5. enA muallem | 8. <u>unA</u> amshIra |
| 3. mA <u>dAktar</u> | 6. U <u>gula</u> | 9. U <u>kachAlU</u> |

Exercise 5 - Use the correct subject pronoun in each of the following. E.g.,

..... nOkar astum ma nOkar astum

- | | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. <u>bacha</u> s | 4. <u>brAdar</u> astEm | 7. <u>amshIra</u> stan |
| 2. <u>muallem</u> astan | 5. <u>kelkInA</u> s | 8. <u>tefel</u> as |
| 3. <u>gul</u> as | 6. <u>dAktar</u> astEn? | 9. <u>shAgerd</u> astI |

Exercise 6 - Pronounce each of the following statements as a question. E.g.,

U cherAgh as U cherAgh as?

- | | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. U <u>darwAza</u> s | 3. <u>shumA</u> <u>amshIra</u> stEn | 5. enA <u>dAktar</u> astan |
| 2. tU <u>shAgerd</u> astI | 4. U <u>anwArI</u> s | 6. <u>unA</u> <u>byAdar</u> astan |

Exercise 7 - Answer each of the following questions in both the affirmative (with bale) and negative (two ways, with nE and na-khair). E.g.,

U dAktor as? bale, dAktor as nE, U dAktor nEs

na-khair, (U) dAktor nEs

- | | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. tU <u>Ashpaz astI</u> ? | 3. <u>enA muallem astan</u> ? | 5. U <u>kelyA s</u> ? |
| 2. <u>unA amshIra stan</u> ? | 4. <u>shumA nOkar astEn</u> ? | 6. U <u>gul as</u> ? |

Exercise 8 - Turn these affirmative statements into negative ones. E.g.,

U Ashpaz as U Ashpaz nEs

- | | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. ma <u>dAktor astum</u> | 5. U <u>anwAryA s</u> | 9. U <u>nOkar as</u> |
| 2. <u>mA shAgerd astEm</u> | 6. <u>mA byAdar astEm</u> | 10. U <u>kellI s</u> |
| 3. <u>unA muallem astan</u> | 7. <u>unA bacha stan</u> | 11. <u>shumA amshIra stEn</u> |
| 4. tU <u>shAgerd astI</u> | 8. U <u>gulA s</u> | |

Exercise 9 - Substitute each of the words given below for the appropriate word in the sentence: Ashpaz astum.

1. dAktor 2. muallem 3. nOkar 4. shAgerd 5. amshIra

Exercise 10 - Repeat Exercise 9 for the following sentence: brAdar astEm.

Exercise 11 - Substitute each of the words given below for the appropriate word in the sentence: tU nOkar astI?

1. shAgerd 2. Ashpaz 3. amshIra

Exercise 12 - Substitute each of the words given below for the appropriate word in the sentence: shumA nOkar astEn?

1. shAgerd 2. Ashpaz 3. amshIra 4. dAktor 5. muallem

Exercise 13 - Substitute each of the words given below for the appropriate word in the sentence: (U) tefel as.

1. cherAgh 2. gul 3. mEz 4. utAq 5. dAktor

6. zamIn 8. kachAlU 10. darwAzA 12. pardA 14. anwAryA
 7. keII 9. shAgerd 11. khAnA 13. muallem 15. chaokyA

Exercise 14 - Substitute each of the words given below for the appropriate word in the sentence: enA dAktor astan.

1. muallem 2. amshIra

Exercise 15 - Repeat Exercise 14 for the following sentence: unA dAktor astan.

LESSON FOUR

4-A

Pronunciation drill (to be done only with the teacher)

1. Contrasting /l/ and /r/

mAnA e lab chI s? (What does 'lab' mean? [lip])
mAnA e rab chI s? (What does 'rab' mean? [Lord])

bAl na dArA (It doesn't have a wing)
bAr na dArA (He/she/it doesn't have a load)

I tufang asLI s (This gun is original. [or, genuine])
I tufang asrI s (This gun is modern)

lang besyAr shOkh as (The cripple is very 'naughty')
rang besyAr shOkh as (The color is very bright)

U dAl as (That's the letter 'd' [or, lentils])
U dAr as (That's a hangman's scaffold)

aolI dArEn? (Do you have a yard [or, house]?)
aorI dArEn? (Do you have 'aorI' [a kind of seed used for seasoning]?)

2. Contrasting /I/ and /e/

U sIr dArA (He/she/it has garlic)
U ser dArA (He/she has a secret)
ser e kabAb da sIr as (The secret of a [good] kabob is in the garlic)

shukur ke bInA shud (Thank God that he/she got his/her sight back)
shukur ke benA shud (Thank God that it got started)

3. Illustrating /rs/

az dars tars na dArA (He/she isn't afraid of the lesson)

farshA burs kO (Brush the floor)

charsa na kashEn (Don't smoke hashish)

4. Illustrating /rt/

I shart nEs (This isn't necessary [or, a condition])

kArt e ArUsIsh barem rasId (I received his/her wedding card)

4-B

The cardinal numbers three to ten

3	۳	4	۴	۴	5	۵	6	۶
	sE		chAr		panj		shash	
7	۷	8	۸	۸	9	۹	10	۱۰
	aft		asht		nO		da (dA)	

1. When transcribed in Dari script (which is written from right to left) numbers are given in the same order as they are in English, i.e., from left to right. So, 10 in Dari is not ۰۱ but ۱۰.
2. The cipher (or, zero) in Dari is represented by a dot (.).
3. The number 4 in Dari is commonly written in two ways, as shown. Thus, the student should learn to recognize either form.
4. The final /j/ of panj (five) is sometimes omitted in rapid speech.
5. Both da and dA occur as alternate forms.

4-C

The demonstrative pronouns I (this),
yA (these), U (that) and wA (those)

I	<u>mEz</u>	as
I	<u>chAi</u>	as
I	<u>Ashpaz</u>	as
yA	<u>shAgerd</u>	astan
yA	<u>brAdar</u>	astan
yA	<u>ketAb(A)</u>	(a) <u>s</u>
U	<u>chaokI</u>	<u>s</u>
U	<u>dukhtar</u>	as
wA	<u>dAktar</u>	astan

This is a table.

This is tea.

This is a (or, the) cook.

These are students.

These are brothers.

These are books.

That is a (or, the) chair.

That is a (or, the) girl.

Those are doctors.

wA	nOkar	astan	Those are servants.
wA	qalam(A)	(a)s	Those are pens.

1. I (this) is the near demonstrative pronoun in Dari, with the plural form yA (actually, I + A [plural indicator] = yA). It may refer to people, animals and things.
2. U (that) is the remote demonstrative pronoun in Dari, with the plural form wA (actually, U + A [plural indicator] = wA). It too may refer to people, animals and things.
3. The singular U (that) is indistinguishable from the third person singular subject pronoun U (he/she/it).
4. The plural wA (those) may be substituted for the third person plural subject pronoun unA, except that wA can refer to persons, animals and things while unA is normally only used for persons. (Cf. § 3-D-6.)
5. As is the case with subject pronouns, demonstrative pronouns are also generally overworked by foreigners. Where the context is clear Afghans usually omit them.

4-D

The demonstrative adjectives I (this/these) and U (that/those)

Near the speaker

I mard	this man	I zan	this woman
I mardA	these men	I zanA	these women
I chAinak	this teapot	I mAdar	this mother
I chAinakA	these teapots	I mAdarA	these mothers

Farther away from the speaker

U sAlUn	that living room	U padar	that father
U sAlUnA	those living rooms	U padarA	those fathers
U tashnAb	that bathroom	U khwAr	that sister
U tashnAbA	those bathrooms	U khwArA	those sisters

1. As demonstrative adjectives I and U do not use the plural forms yA and wA. The singular forms serve both purposes.
2. They may be used with people, animals or things.

3. For charts showing kinship terminology in Dari (father, mother, brother, sister, etc.) see Appendix III.

4-E The present tense of the verb dAshtan (to have)

		<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
1	First person	<u>dArum</u> (I have)	<u>dArEm</u> (we have)
2	Second "	<u>dArI</u> (you have)	<u>dArEn</u> (you have)
3	Third "	<u>dAra</u> (he/she/ it has)	<u>dAran</u> (they have)

1. The accent in this verb falls on the first (not the last) syllable.
2. This is probably the second most important verb in Dari. It is conjugated in the present tense with the normal personal endings (mentioned in § 3-F).

4-F Statements with the present tense of dAshtan (to have)

ma	<u>pensel</u>	dArum	I have a pencil.
ma O tU	<u>qalam</u> O <u>kAghaz</u>	dArEm	You and I [lit., I and you] have pen and paper.
mA O shumA	<u>kAr</u>	dArEm	You and I have work (to do).
I utAq	<u>panj</u> <u>kelkIn</u>	dAra	This room has five windows.
shAr	<u>bAzAr</u>	dAra	The city has a marketplace.
mA	<u>rAdyO</u>	dArEm	We have a radio.
WA	<u>wakht</u>	dAran	They <u>do</u> have time.

1. The verb agrees with the subject in person and number.
2. dAshtan can be used personally or impersonally, wherever one would convey the sense of "to have," meaning "to possess."
3. The order of persons in Dari compounds follows numerical order--that is, first, second and third person--whereas in English the first person is put last.
4. The expression mA O shumA (lit., "we and you") is almost a formula in Dari and may refer to only one person in each number, even though plural.

5. If the answer is intended to be somewhat emphatic, as, for example, in clarifying a misunderstanding or uncertainty, the voice may be stressed on the verb. This does in spoken language what italics would accomplish in written English. So, "Yes, it has."

4-G

Questions and answers with the present tense of dAshtan (to have)

	(tU)	kAghaz	<u>dArI?</u>	Do you have (any) paper?
<u>bale,</u>	(ma)	(kAghaz)	<u>dArum</u>	Yes, I have (some paper).
	utAq	cherAgh	<u>dAra?</u>	Does the room have a light?
<u>bale,</u>	(U)	(cherAgh)	<u>dAra</u>	Yes, it has (a light).
	shumA	aolAd	<u>dArEn?</u>	Do you have (any) children?
<u>bale,</u>	(ma)	sE bacha 0		Yes, I have three boys
		yag dukhtar	dArum	and a girl.

1. Apart from the "yes" (or "no") answer, the form and word order of the simple question is the same as that of the simple statement. The difference is conveyed only by the pitch of the voice, rising for the question and falling for the answer.
2. The words given in parentheses may be omitted since the context makes their meaning clear. It should be remembered that subject and demonstrative pronouns are regularly omitted by Afghans in their speech. They are, however, frequently given in this course both to teach familiarity with the forms and to supply "context" which random sentences generally lack.

4-H

na (not) and nE (no) with the present tense of dAshtan (to have)

In statements	ma	nAn	<u>na</u>	dArum	I don't have bread (or, food).
	tashnAb	ao	<u>na</u>	dAra	The bathroom doesn't have (any) water.
		parwA	<u>na</u>	dAra	It doesn't matter.
	U	khatar	<u>na</u>	dAra	It's not dangerous.
	U dE	bAzAr	<u>na</u>	dAra	That village doesn't have a marketplace.

In questions	unA	kAr	<u>na</u>	dAran?	Don't they have work (to do)?	
	Otal	jAi	<u>na</u>	dAra?	Doesn't the hotel have room?	
	shumA	mOtar	<u>na</u>	dArEn?	Don't you have a car?	
In answers	<u>nE,</u>	khAn <u>a</u>	zInA	<u>na</u>	dAra	No, the house doesn't have stairs.
	<u>nE,</u>	(mA)	dAlEz	<u>na</u>	dArEm	No, we don't have a hall.

1. In the example, "It doesn't matter"--which is literally, "It doesn't have a care (or, concern)"--it should be noted that foreigners frequently use parwA nEs (It is not a care) instead of the idiomatic rendering as found here. Another common (and equivalent) expression meaning "It doesn't matter" or "It's all right" is

khair | as

2. "It's not dangerous" is literally "It does not have danger."
 3. With regard to the example "Don't they have work?" it should be pointed out that this sentence, unA kAr na dAran? actually means, "Aren't they busy?" In other words, "Don't they have some work to do just now?" One could also use this idiom positively as well. So,

ma | kAr | dArum

I'm busy (i.e., I have work [to do]).

4. The accent is put on the negative particle na when combined with the present tense forms of dAshtan (to have), and the position of the negative is just before the verb.
 5. In the example mentioning "the house" note that definiteness or indefiniteness are determined by the context since Dari has no definite article (though it can indicate definiteness in other ways, e.g., by word order).
 6. dE (village) is one of the few nouns used in this course which forms its plural irregularly. Hence, "villages" is dE(H)At.

4-I

The negative Ech (none, not any)

khAnum	<u>Ech</u>	wakht	na	dAra
ma	<u>Ech</u>	paisa	na	dArum

The lady doesn't have any time.

I don't have any money.

1. The pronoun Ech (not any, none) may be used alone and in compounds (to be introduced later).

2. Even though itself a negative, Ech also takes the negative form of the verb that it occurs with; in other words, a double negative with only an emphatically negative (not positive) signification.
3. The word khAnum (lady, housewife) is the proper word to use in Afghanistan for the "lady-of-the-house." Occasionally one may hear servants use the expression mEm-sAeb in place of khAnum, but this is a carryover from India and Pakistan and is not indigenous to Dari.
4. The word khAnum may also be used in the sense of "Mrs." when combined with a proper surname, as

U	khAnum	jAnsan	as	That's (or, she's) Mrs. Johnson.
---	--------	--------	----	----------------------------------

This, however, is a comparatively modern usage.

5. Sometimes the word khAnum may be heard for single ladies as well as for those who are married, although in written Dari a special term, pEghla (from the Pashto language), is more commonly used for women who are unmarried.

4-J

The suffix -Am (too, also, either)

UAm	Ashpaz	as	He/she is a cook, too.	
shumAm	wakht	na	dArEn?	Don't <u>you</u> have time, either?
nOkar	sE	brAdarAm	dAra	The servant has <u>three</u> brothers, too.

But note--

U	dukhtar	ketAbAm	dAra	That girl has a <u>book</u> , <u>too</u> (as well as something else).
U	dukhtarAm	ketAb	dAra	That girl (as well as someone else) <u>also</u> has a book.

1. When the suffix -Am is added to a word it means one additional, in the sense of "too, also" when positive and "either" when negative. It is important to observe which element of the sentence is receiving the additional emphasis.
2. When adding -Am to words ending in vowel sounds the phonological rules noted with regard to the plural marker (cf. § 3-C-3) are generally observed:
 - (a) -a or -A + -Am becomes -Am; so, bacha--bachAm, mA--mAm.
 - (b) -i or -i (of diphthongs) + -Am become -yAm; so, chaokI--chaokyAm, chAi--chAyAm.
 - (c) -o (of diphthongs) + -Am becomes -wAm; so, ao--awAm.

(d) Words ending in any other vowel sound (e.g., -E, -O, -U) merely add -Am; so, dE--dEAm.

3. In fast speech it may be difficult to distinguish between ma + -Am and mA + -Am (both = mA^m) or between U + -Am and wA + -Am (both = wA^m), but the verb ending will give the clue to the subject.

4-K

The question word chI (what?)

U	<u>chI</u>	s?
U	<u>mEz</u>	as
U	<u>pyAJe</u>	s
I	<u>chI</u>	s?
I	<u>dEwAl</u>	as
I	<u>keI</u>	s
unA	<u>chI</u>	dAran?
unA	<u>chAi</u>	dAran
wA	<u>mOtar</u>	dAran
(shumA)	<u>chI Al</u>	dArEn?

What's that?

It's a table.

It's a cup.

What's this?

It's a wall.

It's a key.

What do they have?

They have tea.

They have a car.

How are you? (lit., What condition do you have?)

- The interrogative chI (what?), because it ends in a vowel, is subject to contraction and thus is assimilated into the initial vowel of the following verb (present tense of bUdan). So, chI + as = chI s?
- In the "How are you?" example above, the pronoun shumA (you)--unless it is desired to emphasize it--is generally omitted. This is one of the most common forms of inquiring about a person's state of health or welfare. It may just as well occur with the singular form of the verb--chI Al dArI?--if the person being addressed is a familiar friend or a child. Depending upon the circumstances and the mood of the speaker the accent (or stress) in this formula may come on chI or Al. (A similar variation in stress may occur in the other sentences given above.)
- Note the difference that stress makes in the following two sentences:

shumA	<u>chI</u>	<u>kAr</u>	dArEn?
shumA	<u>chI</u>	kAr	dArEn?

What work do you have (to do)?What do you need?

In the first example given here the inquiry refers to what a person has

to do, i.e., What are you busy with? The second example, translated "need," reveals yet another idiomatic usage of kAr with dAshtan in which kAr (work) functions in the sense of "need, requirement." Foreigners-- and shopkeepers, children or others who have been "conditioned" by them-- are more likely to use the unidiomatic expression lAzem (necessary, essential) than this perfectly good idiom. Thus, they may frequently be heard to say something like gul lAzem nEs (Flowers are not necessary) instead of gul kAr na dArun (I don't need flowers).

4-L

Vocabulary for Lesson Four

aft	seven
-Am	too, also, either
ao	water
asht	eight
<u>bAzAr</u>	marketplace
chAi	tea
<u>chAinak</u>	teapot
chAr	four
chI?	what?
<u>chI</u> Al dArEn?	How are you?
da (dA)	ten
<u>dAlEz</u>	hall(way)
<u>dAshtan</u>	to have
dE	village
<u>dEwAl</u>	wall
Ech	not any, none, no-_____ (in compounds); at all
I	(pron.) this; (adj.) this, these
jAi	place, point, location, space
<u>kAghaz</u> (<u>qAghaz</u>)	paper
kAr	work, job, assignment; need, requirement

<u>khAr dAshtan</u>	to have work, be busy; to need, require
<u>ketAb</u>	book
<u>khair</u> as!	It's all right (or, O. K.)
<u>khAnum</u>	lady, wife; Mrs. (when used with a surname)
<u>khatar</u>	danger
<u>khwAr</u>	sister
<u>lAzem</u>	necessary, essential
<u>mAdar</u>	mother
<u>mard</u>	man
<u>mOtar</u>	car, automobile
<u>nAn</u>	food; bread (of various sorts, to be defined)
<u>nO</u>	nine
<u>O</u>	and
<u>Otal</u>	hotel
<u>padar</u>	father
<u>paisa</u>	money
<u>pan(j)</u>	five
<u>parwA na dAra!</u>	It doesn't matter (lit., have a care, concern)
<u>pEghla</u>	Miss (title for an unmarried woman)
<u>pensel</u>	pencil
<u>pyAla</u>	cup
<u>qalam</u>	pen (also, occasionally "pencil")
<u>rAdyO</u>	radio
<u>sAlUn</u>	living room, parlor
<u>sE</u>	three
<u>shAr</u>	city, town

shash	six
tashnAb	bathroom; bath
U	(pron.) that; (adj.) that, those
wa	those (pron.)
wakht	time
yA	these (pron.)
zan	woman
zIna (zInA)	stairs, ladder

Exercises for Lesson Four

(to be written as well as practiced orally with the teacher)

Exercise 16 - Make the following plural. E.g., I sAlUn I sAlUnA

- | | | | |
|------------|-------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. I dEwAl | 3. I jAi | 5. I kAr | 7. I khAnum |
| 2. I dE | 4. I kAghaz | 6. I ketAb | 8. I mOtar |

Exercise 17 - Make the following plural. E.g., U Otal U Otala

- | | | | |
|-------------|------------|------------|--------------|
| 1. U pensel | 3. U qalam | 5. U bAzAr | 7. U chAinak |
| 2. U pyAla | 4. U rAdvO | 6. U shAr | 8. U bacha |

Exercise 18 - Complete each of the following with the correct form of dAshtan.

E.g., ma mOtar ma mOtar dArum

- | | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. U chAi | 6. mA ketAb | 11. khAna sAlUn ? |
| 2. tU paisa ? | 7. unA pyAla | 12. unA kAr |
| 3. wa pensel | 8. shAgerdA qalam | 13. dAlEz zInA |
| 4. shAr bAzAr ? | 9. enA wakht | 14. U byAdar |
| 5. shumA rAdvO ? | 10. mA nAn | 15. wa kAghaz na ... |

Exercise 19 - Complete each of the following with the correct form of dAshtan.

E.g., tU wakht ? tU wakht dArI?

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. chA <u>in</u> ak chAi <u>na</u> | 4. I kAr khatar |
| 2. shum <u>A</u> wakht <u>na</u> ? | 5. tU paisa <u>na</u> ? |
| 3. mA 0 shum <u>A</u> aol <u>Ad</u> | 6. tashn <u>Ab</u> ao <u>na</u> |

Exercise 20 - Complete each of the following with the correct form of dAshtan.

E.g., ma aft ketAb ma aft ketAb dArum

- | | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. mA n <u>0</u> ut <u>Aq</u> | 4. U m <u>0</u> tar <u>na</u> | 7. ma ch <u>Ar</u> kh <u>W</u> Ar |
| 2. tU Ech paisa <u>na</u> ... | 5. shum <u>A</u> j <u>ai</u> ? | 8. I dE Ech <u>O</u> tal <u>na</u> .. |
| 3. I sh <u>Ar</u> s <u>E</u> <u>O</u> tal | 6. un <u>A</u> shash pensel ... | 9. w <u>A</u> asht aol <u>Ad</u> |

Exercise 21 - Complete each of the following with the correct form of dAshtan.

E.g., mAm kAr mAm kAr dArum/dArEm

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. t <u>U</u> Am wakht <u>na</u> ? | 6. ma k <u>Aghaz</u> Am <u>na</u> |
| 2. kh <u>Ana</u> d <u>AlEz</u> Am | 7. I <u>O</u> tal <u>Am</u> ut <u>Aq</u> <u>na</u> |
| 3. <u>U</u> Am khatar | 8. U ut <u>Aq</u> Am asht chaokI |
| 4. w <u>Am</u> khatar | 9. shum <u>Am</u> j <u>ai</u> <u>na</u> ? |
| 5. kh <u>Anu</u> Am k <u>Ar</u> | 10. w <u>Am</u> m <u>0</u> tar |

Exercise 22 - Change ma to U in each of the following sentences. E.g.,

ma kAghaz dArum U kAghaz dAra

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. ma wakht <u>na</u> dArum | 3. ma k <u>Ar</u> <u>na</u> dArum |
| 2. ma s <u>E</u> py <u>Ala</u> dArum | 4. ma dukht <u>ar</u> dArum |

Exercise 23 - Change tU to unA/wA in each of the following sentences. E.g.,

tU jai dArI unA/wA jai dAran

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. tU r <u>Ady</u> 0 d <u>Ar</u> I? | 3. tU ch <u>I</u> d <u>Ar</u> I? |
| 2. tU py <u>Ala</u> d <u>Ar</u> I? | 4. tU k <u>Ar</u> d <u>Ar</u> I? |

Exercise 24 - Change mA to shumA and the statement to a question in each of the following. E.g., mA panj chAinak dArEm shumA panj chAinak dArEn?

- | | |
|----------------------------|---|
| 1. mA wakht d <u>Ar</u> Em | 2. mA qalam 0 k <u>Aghaz</u> d <u>Ar</u> Em |
|----------------------------|---|

3. mA mOtar na dArEm

4. mA paisa na dArEm

Exercise 25 - Change the subject and verb (when necessary) of each of the following sentences in order to make them plural. E.g.,
dAktar kAr dara dAktarA kAr dAran

1. I mOtar jAi na dAra

6. khAnum wakht dAra

2. U bacha da qalam dAra

7. I kAr khatar dAra

3. Ashpaz paisa na dAra

8. U utAq kelkIn na dAra

4. U shAgerd kAghaz dAra

9. I utAq parda dAra

5. sAlUn gul dAra

Exercise 26 - Use the following nouns in separate replies to the question:
I chI s? E.g., kelkIn I kelkIn as

1. darwAza

3. paisa

5. chaokI

7. parda

2. chAi

4. ketAb

6. qalam

8. cherAgh

Exercise 27 - Use the following nouns in separate replies to the question:
U chI s? E.g., nAn U nAn as

1. anwArI

3. mEz

5. gul

7. dEwAl

2. pensel

4. zInA

6. kAghaz

8. zamIn

Exercise 28 - Use the following nouns in separate replies to the question:
unA chI dAran? E.g., Otal unA Otal dAran

1. chAi

3. chAInak

5. khAna

7. rAdyO

2. mOtar

4. bAzAr

6. utAq

8. jAi

LESSON FIVE

5-A

Pronunciation drill (to be done only with the teacher)

1. Contrasting /k/ and /q/

kAresh myAya (He/she can use it)
qAresh myAya (He/she will become angry)

I kamar as (This is the waist)
I qamar as (This is the moon)

kAf talafuz kunEn (Pronounce "k")
qAf talafuz kunEn (Pronounce "q")

angUr da tAk as (The grapes are on the vine)
angUr da tAq as (The grapes are on the shelf)

tAkchara biBI (Look at the little vine)
tAqchara biBI (Look at the little shelf)

andAza kad lAken qad na dAd (He/she measured it, but it was too short)

2. Contrasting /E/ and /e/

sEr shud (He/she got full)
ser shud (He/she was found out [= exposed])

dEga byArEn (Bring the kettle)
dega byArEn (Bring another [one])

3. Illustrating /rk/

maktaba tark kad (He/she has dropped out of [= given up] school)

kAlA cherk shuda (The clothes are [or, have gotten] dirty)

4. Illustrating /py/, /by/, /khy/, /sy/, /zy/ and /my/

pyAlE syA maghbUl as (The black cup is pretty)

besyAr pyAz myAra (He/she is bringing a lot of onions)

aga byAfa, myAra (If he/she finds [it], he'll/she'll bring [it])

ba-khyAlem emrOz na myAyan (I don't think they are coming today)

byAEn ke tayAra myAya (Come [here, because] the airplane is coming)

az I zyAtar na myAfEn (You won't [be able to] find more like this)

5-B

The question word kuja (where?)

dOk <u>An</u>	<u>kuja</u>	<u>s?</u>	Where is the shop?
gOger <u>d</u>	<u>kuja</u>	<u>s?</u>	Where are the matches (i.e., the match box)?
kely <u>A</u>	<u>kuja</u>	<u>s?</u>	Where are the keys?
bach <u>A</u>	<u>kuja</u>	<u>stan?</u>	Where are the boys?

1. The usual position of the question word is just before the final verb.
2. Because the question word kuja ends in a vowel sound, it is subject to contraction and is thus assimilated into the initial vowel of the following verb. So, kuja + as = kuja s? kuja + astan = kuja stan?
3. dOkAn (shop) may also be heard as dukAn.
4. Although the word keli (key) is used here in the plural, kelyA, the verb remains singular since the plural subject is inanimate.

5-C

The adverbs Inja (here) and unja/Unja (there), showing location

In statements	no	<u>Inja</u>	<u>s</u>	Here is (the) water.
	shafA-kh <u>Ana</u>	<u>unja</u>	<u>s</u>	The hospital is there.
In simple questions	sAt	<u>Inja</u>	<u>s?</u>	Is the clock here?
	tAwil-kh <u>Ana</u>	<u>unja</u>	<u>s?</u>	Is the storeroom there?
With negatives	Ashpaz	<u>Inja</u>	<u>nEs</u>	The cook isn't here.
	<u>unA</u>	<u>unja</u>	<u>nEstan</u>	They aren't there.
In reply to <u>kuja</u> ?	py <u>Ala</u>	<u>kuja</u>	<u>s?</u> <u>Inja</u>	Where's the cup? It's here.
	shAger <u>dA</u>	<u>kuja</u>	<u>stan?</u>	Where are the students?
	<u>unja</u>	<u>stan</u>		They're (over) there.

1. The usual position of these adverbs showing location or position is just before the verb.
2. As noted before with other words ending in a vowel, the final vowel of these and the following first vowel of the verbs are contracted.
3. Inja derives from the literary In + ja (this place) while unja comes from the literary An + ja (that place).
4. Context alone will indicate whether the definite article is required in the example above with ao (water). (Cf. § 4-H-5.)
5. The last two examples (in reply to kuja?) are abbreviated. Since the question makes it clear enough who or what is being asked about, the answer may omit this and simply convey the subject (it, they) through the personal endings of the verb.
6. The word khAna (house, home, room), already learned, occurs not only alone but in combination with other nouns--as a suffix, -khAna--to indicate the "room (or, place)" of something. So, in the above examples, "place of healing" = hospital, and tAWIl-khAna (storeroom, warehouse).

5-D

The prepositions da (in, on), sar-e (on), zEr-e (under) and az (from)

<u>pOsta-khAna</u>	<u>da</u>	<u>shAr</u>	<u>as</u>	The post office is <u>in</u> the city.			
<u>chAinAk</u>	<u>da</u>	<u>Ashpaz-khAna</u>	<u>s</u>	The teapot is <u>in</u> the kitchen.			
<u>chaokI</u>	<u>da</u>	<u>sAlUn</u>	<u>as</u>	The chair is <u>in</u> the living room.			
<u>da</u>	<u>sAlUn</u>	<u>chaokI</u>	<u>s</u>	There's a chair <u>in</u> the living room.			
<u>bAlapOsh</u>	<u>da</u>	<u>dAlEz</u>	<u>as</u>	The overcoat is <u>in</u> the hall.			
<u>tashnAb</u>	(<u>da</u>)	<u>kujA</u>	<u>s?</u>	Where's the bathroom?			
<u>da</u>	<u>I</u>	<u>khAna</u>	<u>gul-khAna</u>	<u>nEs</u>	There's no flower-room <u>in</u> this house.		
<u>da</u>	<u>I</u>	<u>safa</u>		<u>nEs</u>	It's not <u>on</u> this page.		
<u>da</u>	<u>aoI</u>	<u>chI</u>		<u>s?</u>	What's <u>in</u> the yard?		
<u>da</u>	<u>U</u>	<u>anwArI</u>	<u>panj</u>	<u>jOra</u>	<u>jerAb</u>	<u>as</u>	There are five pairs of socks <u>in</u> that cupboard.

1. Note the additional compounds with the suffix -khAna: room (or, place) of mail (post office) = pOsta-khAna; the cook's room (kitchen) = Ashpaz-

khAna; flower room = gul-khAna, a sunroom or sunporch, common in many Afghan homes.

2. The two examples given with chaokI (chair) show how word order can indicate definiteness. If the subject comes at the beginning of the sentence it is definite (= the); if it follows the prepositional phrase it is indefinite (= a, an). (Cf. § 4-H-5.)
3. In the example with tashnAb (bathroom) the word da may or may not occur; sometimes it is used with kuja (where?), which is construed as equivalent to "what place?" So, "in what place . . . ?" Cf. a similar redundancy in the English expression, "Where is it (at)?"

dawA	(da)	sar-e	mEz	as	The medicine is <u>on</u> the table.
bUtA	(da)	sar-e	zInA	s	The shoes are <u>on</u> the stairs.
gulf	(da)	sar-e	anwArI	s	The lock is <u>on</u> the cupboard.

4. Again, da (in, on) may or may not occur with sar-e. Either is correct.
5. Because bUtA (shoes) is plural but inanimate the verb is singular.
6. "On the stairs" here means on any stair, not necessarily at the top of the stairs.

ao	(da)	zEr-e	mEz	as	The water is <u>under</u> the table.	
da	zEr-e	mEz	ao	as	There's some water <u>under</u> the table.	
qalam	(da)	zEr-e	chaokI	s	The pen is <u>under</u> the chair.	
da	zEr-e	chaokI	yak	qalam	as	There's a pen <u>under</u> the chair.

7. "There" as an impersonal function word (in which the real subject follows the verb) does not occur in Dari. It has to be inferred, if needed.

shumA	az	kuja	stEn?	Where are you <u>from</u> ?
ma	az	amrIkA	stum	I'm from America.

8. kuja is construed as "what place?" in these examples with az (from).
9. The final vowels of kuja and amrIkA are assimilated by contraction into the first vowel of the following verbs. For a list of many foreign place names as they are pronounced in Dari see Appendix II.

5-E

The positive form of adjectives

<u>kAbul</u>	(yak)	shAr	e	besyAr	<u>ka</u> lan	as	Kabul is a very large city.
<u>U</u>	(yag)	Adam	e		<u>khU</u> b	as	He's a fine man (or, person).
<u>O</u> tal		aw	e		<u>pa</u> k	dArA	The hotel has clean water.
<u>un</u> A	(yak)	khAnE		besyAr	<u>khur</u> d	dArAn	They have a very small house.
<u>m</u> A		chaokI			<u>ka</u> lan	<u>na</u> dArEm	We don't have a big chair.
est <u>A</u> lef	(yag)	jAi			<u>maghb</u> Ul	as	Istalif is a pretty place.

- In Dari the adjective usually follows the noun that it modifies and is joined to it by the connector -e- (called ezAfI). As the examples above indicate, a "large city" is not kalan shAr (the English order) but shAr e kalan; etc.
- When adding -e- (ezAfI) to words ending in vowel sounds the following phonological rules are observed:
 - a + -e- becomes -E; so, khAna--khAnE khurd (small house).
 - I, -i (of diphthongs) or -E + -e- ignore the -e- since the sound of ezAfI is already included in these; so, chaokI kalan (big chair), jAi maghbUl (pretty place) and dE khurd (small village).
 - o (of diphthongs) + -e- becomes -w + -e-; so ao--aw e pak (clean water).
 - Words ending in any other vowel sound (e.g., -A, -O, -U) merely add ezAfI (-e-); so, kachAlU e kalan (large potato).
- When the intensifier besyAr (much, very) is used it immediately precedes the adjective. It could be used, depending on the meaning one wanted to convey, in any, all or none of the examples given above.
- Adam (man) is also used for a servant (when he is present and while talking about him to another) in preference to nOkar (servant). Adam may even on rare occasions refer to a human being of either sex, in the sense of "person, individual."
- For a map of Afghanistan giving important place names as they are pronounced in Dari see Appendix V.
- In some positions the adjective does not require ezAfI (-e-), though it still follows (rather than precedes) the noun it modifies. So,

darwAza	basta	nEs	The door is not closed.
sAlUn	pAk	nEs	The living room is not clean.
InjAm	pAk	nEs	This place isn't clean, either.
kelkIn	wAz	as	The window is open
U kulla	maghbUl	as	That hat is pretty.

7. Observe the contraction: Inja + -Am = InjAm.
8. Note also the distinction that ezAfI (-e-) makes in the following:

I	kAghaz		safEd	as	This paper is white.
I	kAghaz	e	safEd	as	This is white paper.

9. An adjective has only one form for the singular and plural and for all genders; in other words, it does not change. So,

dukhtar	khUb	as	The girl is fine (or, well).
khAna	khUb	as	The house is fine (or, good).
AshpazA	khUb	astan	The cooks are fine (or, well).

5-F

Nouns made into adjectives

utAq	e	khao	Bedroom (lit., room of sleep).
utAq	e	nAn	Dining room (lit., room of food).
sefArat	e	amrIkA	American Embassy (lit., Embassy of America).

1. A noun is frequently made into an adjective in Dari by putting it in construction with ezAfI (= "of") following another noun.
2. In such constructions the second noun--following ezAfI--functions as an adjective and may be so translated. Thus, -e-khao (sleeping), -e-nAn (eating, dining) and -e-amrIkA (American).
3. The main (or, head) noun only is pluralized, not the descriptive noun which follows. So,

utAqA	e	khao	Bedrooms (lit. rooms of sleep).
-------	---	------	---------------------------------

4. The construction utAq-e- is not used with rooms which have their own special names: e.g., Ashpaz-khAna (kitchen), tashnAb (bathroom), dAlEz (hall[way]), sAlUn (living room).

5-G

Greetings and courtesies

	sa <u>l</u> Am	Hello!
or	sa <u>l</u> Am Al <u>E</u> kum	Hello, there!
	wa <u>l</u> E <u>k</u> um asa <u>l</u> Am	Hello (to you)! [in response]

1. salAm (from the Arabic language) means literally "peace," and is the common Eastern greeting, usually for "hello" but occasionally also for "goodbye."
2. AlEkum, like salAm, is Arabic and means literally, "to (or, upon) you." wa before AlEkum--the -a or wa and the A- of AlEkum are assimilated--is the Arabic conjunction "and". In the response the a- before salAm is the definite article in Arabic, "the" (actually then, as + salAm = asalAm).

ch <u>I</u> Al d <u>A</u> r <u>E</u> n?	How are you?
kh <u>U</u> b astum, tash <u>A</u> kur	I'm fine (or, well), thank you.
chet <u>O</u> r ast <u>E</u> n?	How are you?
kh <u>A</u> na khair(Iy) <u>a</u> t as?	Is everything all right at home?
bad n <u>E</u> s, tash <u>A</u> kur	Not bad, thank you.
sh <u>U</u> kur (as)	Thanks to God (it is).
fazl e khud <u>A</u>	(By) the grace of God [it is].
shum <u>A</u> kh <u>U</u> b ast <u>E</u> n?	[And, in response,] Are you well?

3. In the above responses shUkur means literally "thanks [to God]"--since it is only used for God--while tashAkur means "thank you" (to men).
4. It may be noted that although Westerners are often reluctant to talk about their personal faith this reticence does not extend to the people of Afghanistan. Muslims are not embarrassed to reveal their religious attitudes and references to "God" are a commonplace occurrence in their daily speech.
5. Greetings in Dari actually amount to quite a routine. It is common for people when greeting each other, either in person or on the telephone, to use any or all of the above forms--in varied order--and even more, alternating the form of inquiry and response until it would seem that there is nothing more to be asked. A shortcutting of these formalities may be regarded as boorishness.

6. Whether the form of the verbs dAshtan (to have) and bUdan (to be) is singular or plural depends upon how well you know the person being spoken to. (Cf. § 4-K-2.)

<u>tashakur</u>			Thank you.
az	shumA	<u>tashakur</u>	Thank you.
az	shumAm	<u>tashakur</u>	Thank you, too.

7. tashakur is the general expression of appreciation in Dari. It may be used alone, with az shumA (unstressed) or with az shumAm, depending on the circumstances. There is no commonly used equivalent to the English response, "You're welcome" (or, "Don't mention it"), which absolves the giver of thanks from any obligation to do so.

5-H Vocabulary for Lesson Five

<u>Adam</u>	a man; a servant; a person, one (as, "one ought...")
<u>aolI</u>	yard, courtyard, garden (attached to a house)
<u>Ashpaz-khAna</u>	kitchen
<u>az</u>	from, by, with, belonging to, like
<u>bad</u>	bad
<u>bAlapOsh</u>	overcoat
<u>basta</u>	closed, shut, locked
<u>besyAr</u>	very, very much, extremely, quite, many, too
<u>bUt</u>	shoe
<u>chetOr?</u> (<u>chutOr?</u>)	how? (lit., in what manner [or, way]?)
<u>da</u>	in, on, at, to
<u>dawA</u>	medicine
<u>dOkAn</u> (<u>dukAn</u>)	shop, store
<u>-e-</u>	(<u>ezAfI</u> , a connector used with nouns and adjectives, often in the sense of "of")
<u>fazl-e-khuda</u>	(By) the grace of God (a response to a greeting, indicating that one, or his family, is fine)

<u>gOgerd</u>	matches, box of matches
<u>gul-khAna</u>	flower-room, sunroom (enclosed)
<u>I(n)ja</u>	here (lit., this place)
<u>jerAb</u>	sock, stocking
<u>jOra</u>	pair
<u>kaLAn</u>	big, large, "important", older, oldest
<u>khair(Iy)at</u>	all right, well, in good condition, O. K. (of persons)
<u>khUb</u>	good, well, fine (adj.); very (adv.)
<u>khudA</u>	God
<u>khurd</u>	little, small
<u>kujA?</u>	where?
<u>kullA</u>	hat, cap
<u>maghbUl</u>	pretty, beautiful
<u>pAk</u>	clean
<u>pOsta-khAna</u>	post office
<u>qulf</u>	lock [n.]
<u>safa</u>	page [n.]
<u>safEd</u>	white, pale
<u>salAm (AlEkum)</u>	hello; (occasionally, also) goodbye (?rOjudo)
<u>sar e</u>	on, on top of
<u>sAt</u>	clock, watch, period, hour; while (e.g., a while)
<u>sefArat</u>	embassy
<u>shafA-khAna</u>	hospital
<u>shukur</u>	thanks (to God)
<u>tashakur</u>	thank you (to men)
<u>tAwil-khAna</u>	storeroom, warehouse, "godown"

<u>u(n)ja</u> (<u>U[n]ja</u>)	there (lit., that place)
utAq e <u>khao</u>	bedroom
utAq e <u>nAn</u>	dining room
wAlEkum asa <u>Am</u>	hello to you (in response)
wAz	open
zEr e	under, underneath

Exercises for Lesson Five

(to be written as well as practiced orally with the teacher)

Exercise 29 - Substitute each of the words given below for the appropriate word in the sentence: mEz kuja s?

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|----------------|------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Ashpaz-kh <u>Ana</u> | 4. <u>qulf</u> | 7. utAq e <u>nAn</u> | 10. sef <u>Arat</u> |
| 2. bAlap <u>0sh</u> | 5. s <u>At</u> | 8. shafA-kh <u>Ana</u> | 11. <u>qalam</u> |
| 3. d <u>0kAn</u> | 6. <u>kell</u> | 9. <u>bacha</u> | 12. <u>Otal</u> |

Exercise 30 - Answer each of the questions in Exercise 29 with the word Inja.
E.g., mEz kuja s? mEz Inja s
.....

Exercise 31 - Answer each of the questions in Exercise 29 with the word unja.
E.g., mEz kuja s? mEz unja s
.....

Exercise 32 - Replace successively each of the words given below for the appropriate word in the sentence, dAktor Inja s, making only one change each time. E.g., muallemA muallemA Inja stan
.....

- | | | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|------------------|---------------|
| 1. <u>unja</u> | 3. <u>kuja</u> | 5. <u>kell</u> | 7. d <u>0kAn</u> | 9. <u>unA</u> |
| 2. <u>padar</u> | 4. <u>astEn</u> | 6. <u>Inja</u> | 8. <u>unja</u> | |

Exercise 33 - Substitute the following pairs of words in the sentence, bAlap0sh da anwArI s. E.g., sAlUn--kuja sAlUn (da) kuja s?
.....

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. <u>gula</u> -- <u>aolI</u> | 4. <u>gOgerd</u> -- <u>Ashpaz-khAnA</u> | 7. <u>qulf</u> -- <u>darwAZa</u> |
| 2. <u>ma</u> -- <u>shAr</u> | 5. <u>kulla</u> -- <u>utAq e khao</u> | 8. <u>sAt</u> -- <u>dEwAl</u> |
| 3. <u>dawA</u> -- <u>kuja</u> | 6. <u>nOkar</u> -- <u>pOsta-khAnA</u> | 9. <u>butA</u> -- <u>anwArI</u> |

Exercise 34 - Substitute each of the following words in the sentence, (da) sar e mEz chI s? E.g., kullA (da) sar e mEz kullA s

1. ketAb 3. nAn 5. cherAgh 7. rAdyO 9. pyAla
2. kAghaz 4. pensel 6. kellI 8. ao

Exercise 35 - Repeat each of the words in Exercise 34 by substituting them in the sentence, (da) sar e zAmIn chI s? E.g., kullA (da) sar e zAmIn kullA s

Exercise 36 - Substitute the following pairs of words in the sentence, ao (da) zEr e mEz as. E.g., bUtA--chaokI bUtA (da) zEr e chaokI s

1. nAn--mEz 2. yak ketAb--anwArI 3. pensel--chaokI 4. pyAla--mEz

Exercise 37 - Replace successively each of the words given below for the appropriate word in the sentence, ma az amrIkA stum, making only one change each time. E.g., shumA shumA az amrIkA stEn

1. kujA 3. kAbul 5. dAktar 7. mA 9. Inja
2. shAr 4. unA 6. ostAlef 8. astI

Exercise 38 - Substitute each of the words given below for the appropriate word in the sentence, U (yak) khAnE khurd dAra.

1. kalAn 2. pAk 3. maghbUl 4. safEd 5. khUb

Exercise 39 - Repeat each of the above sentences in Exercise 38 with the intensifier besyAr added.

Exercise 40 - Substitute each of the words given below for the appropriate word in the sentence, U yak (/yag) jAi maghbUl as.

1. gul 3. pensel 5. mEz 7. sAt 9. bAlapOsh
2. tefel 4. qalam 6. rAdyO 8. kullA 10. shafA-khAna

Exercise 41 - Repeat each of the sentences in Exercise 40 with the intensifier besyAr added.

Exercise 42 - Replace successively each of the words given below for the appropriate word in the sentence, I utAq pAk as, making only one change each time. E.g., mEz I mEz pAk as

- | | | | | |
|-----------------|----------|----------|-------------|------------|
| 1. nEs | 4. kalAn | 7. khurd | 10. safEd | 13. kelkIn |
| 2. U | 5. as | 8. khUb | 11. darwAza | 14. wAz |
| 3. Ashpaz-khAna | 6. bacha | 9. utAq | 12. basta | 15. nEs |

Exercise 43 - Put the following pairs of short sentences together to form one sentence each. E.g., shafA-khAna dawa dAra. dawa khUb as.
shafA-khAna dawa e khUb dAra

1. dOkAn bAlapOsh dAra. bAlapOsh maghbUl as.
2. muallem (yag) mEz dAra. mEz kalAn as.
3. dE (yag) bAzAr dAra. bAzAr khurd as.
4. khAnum (yak) khAna dAra. khAna besyAr pAk as.
5. dAktar (yag) mOtar dAra. mOtar besyAr kalAn as.
6. U bacha sE jOra jerAb dAra. jerAbA safEd as.

Exercise 44 - Practice the greetings and courtesies many times with your teacher, varying them when there are options. E.g.,

1. salAm (or) salAm AlEkum
2. wAlEkum asalAm (or) salAm AlEkum
3. chI Al dArEn?
4. khUb astum, tashakur
5. shumA chetOr astEn?
6. khAna khair(Iy)at as?
7. bad nEs, tashakur.
8. shukur (as)
9. fazl e khudA

LESSON SIX

6-A

Pronunciation drill (to be done only with the teacher)

1. Contrasting /g/ and /q/

barg sabz shud (The leaf became green)

barq sabz shud (The [traffic-]light turned green)

gAf neweshta kad (He/she wrote 'gAf' [the letter 'g'])

qAf neweshta kad (He/she wrote 'qAf' [the letter 'q'])

I gerAn as (It's expensive)

I qerAn as (It's a one-half Afghani coin)

2. Illustrating /Ai/

ar jAi lai as (There is mud everywhere)

chAi da chAinak as (The tea is in the teapot)

Aina kuJA s? (Where is the mirror?)

pAesh shekest (His/her/its foot [or, leg] broke) [pAi + esh = pAesh]

3. Illustrating /rɔ/

barq nAmad (The electricity didn't come on) [na + Amad = nAmad]

IsU sharɔ as (East is this way)

farq na mEkuna (It doesn't make any difference)

mashreq 0 sharɔ farq na dAra (There is no difference between 'mashreq'
and 'sharɔ' [i.e., they both mean
'east'])

4. Illustrating /ai/

khair as--aib na dAra (It's all right--there's no harm done)

mAbainesh paisa na bUd (There was no money in it [anyway])

6-B Personal pronouns (attached)

		<u>Singular</u>		<u>Plural</u>	
1	First person	-em	my; me	-emA	our; us
2	Second "	-ot	your; you	-etAn	your; you
3	Third "	-esh	his/her/its; him/her/it	-eshAn	their; them

1. These personal pronouns (in contrast to those of § 3-D) are always attached as suffixes to other words.
2. They may function as ordinary possessive adjectives or as object pronouns. (Cf. § 7-D-4, § 8-2-2-a and § 12-E.)

6-C Ordinary possessive adjectives

<u>Singular</u>		<u>Plural</u>	
dukhtare <u>m</u>	my daughter	dukhtar <u>Aem</u>	my daughters
dukhtar <u>ot</u>	your daughter	dukhtar <u>Aet</u>	your daughters
dukhtar <u>esh</u>	his/her daughter	dukhtar <u>Aesh</u>	his/her daughters
dukhtar <u>emA</u>	our daughter	dukhtar <u>AemA</u>	our daughters
dukhtar <u>etAn</u>	your daughter	dukhtar <u>AetAn</u>	your daughters
dukhtar <u>eshAn</u>	their daughter	dukhtar <u>AeshAn</u>	their daughters

1. When attached personal pronouns are added to nouns--as dukhtar, above--they function as ordinary possessive adjectives.
2. If the noun is plural, the plural indicator (-A) is put on the word first before the personal pronoun is attached to show possession. So, dukhtarA- (_____ daughters).
3. When adding attached personal pronouns to words ending in vowel sounds the phonological rules noted with regard to ezAfI (-e-) are generally followed (cf. § 5-E-2):
 - (a) -a + -e__ = -E__ ; so, khana (house)--khAnEshAn (their house).
 - (b) -I or -E + -e__ ignore the -e- since its sound is already included in these; so, chaokI (chair)--chaokIm (my chair), dE (village)--dEsh (his/her village).
 - (c) -i (of diphthongs) + -e__ drops the -i before adding the suffix -e__ ; so, jai (place)--jAetAn (your place).

- (d) -o (of diphthongs) + -e__ becomes -w + -e__; so, utAq e khao--utAq e khawesh (his/her bedroom).
- (e) Words ending in any other vowel sound (e.g., -A, -O, -U) merely add the -e__ suffix; so, dukhtarA--dukhtarAem (my daughters).
4. When the possessive adjective is used with the word khAna in the sense of "house, home" the suffix usually--but not always--occurs in the plural, the plural being possibly regarded as less pretentious (since it is assumed that more than one person lives in a khAna). Thus, probably khAnEma (our [rather than "my"] house) and khAnEshAn (their [rather than "his/her"] house).
5. In compounds the possessive ending is added only to the last member; so,

padar	O	m <u>Adaresh</u>		kh <u>Ana</u>		n <u>E</u> stan	His/her parents aren't home..
-------	---	------------------	--	---------------	--	-----------------	-------------------------------

6. With the word kAr (work) the possessive adjective can convey the idea of need, requirement. Thus,

k <u>Ar</u> et		n <u>E</u> s?	Don't you need it (lit., Isn't it your 'work')?		
n <u>E</u> ,		k <u>Ar</u> em		n <u>E</u> s	No, I don't need it (lit., No , it's not my 'work').

6-D

Emphatic possessive adjectivesSingularPlural

maktUb e <u>ma</u>		<u>my</u> letter	maktUbA e <u>ma</u>		<u>my</u> letters
maktUb e <u>tU</u>		<u>your</u> letter	maktUbA e <u>tU</u>		<u>your</u> letters
maktUb e <u>U</u>		<u>his/her</u> letter	maktUbA e <u>U</u>		<u>his/her</u> letters
maktUb e <u>mA</u>		<u>our</u> letter	maktUbA e <u>mA</u>		<u>our</u> letters
maktUb e <u>shumA</u>		<u>your</u> letter	maktUbA e <u>shumA</u>		<u>your</u> letters
maktUb e <u>unA</u>		<u>their</u> letter	maktUbA e <u>unA</u>		<u>their</u> letters

1. The ordinary personal pronouns of § 3-D can also be used as possessive adjectives when constructed with ezAfI (-e-) following the word they modify.
2. When so used they indicate a special stress or emphasis on the word, such as might be conveyed in English with a raised voice (in speaking) or italics (in writing). So,

I		k <u>Ar</u>		e		<u>ma</u>		n <u>E</u> s,		k <u>Ar</u>		e		<u>tU</u>		g	This isn't <u>my</u> job; it's <u>your</u> job.
---	--	-------------	--	---	--	-----------	--	---------------	--	-------------	--	---	--	-----------	--	---	---

yA	qAshuqA	e	U	nEs
	qAshuqA	e	shumA	s

These aren't his/her spoons;
they're your spoons.

- Except for those cases where emphasis is required or it is desired to make a special distinction, the attached possessive forms given in § 6-C, above, are preferred in Dari. Foreigners have a tendency to overwork the emphatic forms--to say, for example, maktUb e shumA (your letter) when maktUbetAn (your letter) would be more normal.
- Besides the usual contractions above--tU + as = tUs, shumA + as = shumAs, and unja + astan = unjastan--note that the verb in the example with qAshuqA (spoons) is singular because the subject (even though plural) is inanimate.

6-E

The possessive preposition az (of) with nouns and pronouns

U	baks	az	dAktar sAeb	as
I	rAdyO	az	tU	s?
U	beshqAb e khurd	az	ma	s
I	mOtar	az	mA	nEs
U	daftar	az	AghA e azIz	as
I	chAijOshA	az	unA	s
U	qAwa	az	shumA	s

That briefcase is the doctor's.

Is this radio yours?

That small plate is mine.

This car is not ours.

That office is Mr. Aziz's.

These teakettles are theirs.

That coffee is yours (i.e., for you).

- Unattached personal pronouns (of § 3-D) and nouns are used with az (in the sense of "of") to show possession, with the pronoun or noun functioning independently as possessive pronouns do in English.
- Instead of saying U daftaresh as (That's his/her office)--a perfectly normal and legitimate construction--it is also very natural and common in Dari to say, U daftar az U s, or, U daftar e U s (That office is his/hers [in contrast to somebody else's]). In fact, if the context warrants it--as for example, when a question has been asked--the answer may be briefly put as simply: az U s (his/hers), az ma s (mine), az shumA s (yours), etc.
- This form is especially desirable to use when one wishes to avoid ambiguity--with too many pronouns coming in the sentence--or to emphasize

possession.

4. Since the "az" form of possession emphasizes personal ownership, it is not usually proper to use it with persons but rather with impersonal objects only. For possession of persons use the constructions found in § 6-C, D; e.g., bachEm (my son) or bachEma (my son), but not bacha az ma.
5. sAeb (gentleman) is frequently used as a suffix of respect after nouns of designation or position, but not personal names; e.g., officers, teachers, doctors. Occasionally it is synonymous with the form of address "sir"; so, bale, sAeb (Yes, sir).
6. AghA, besides being a title equivalent to "Mister" (Mr.), is also used by children when addressing their father--in the sense of "Daddy." For more information of Afghan proper names and titles as used in Dari see Appendix VIII.

6-F

The possessive form of nouns

U	ketAb	e	byAd <u>are</u> m	as
I	pOsta-khAn <u>E</u>	kArt <u>E</u>	<u>chAr</u>	as
U	maktab	e	aolAd <u>ae</u> mA	s
kO <u>A</u>	e	afghAnest <u>An</u>	besy <u>Ar</u>	
	maghb <u>U</u>	as		
nAm	e	shaw <u>a</u> resh	chI	s?
U	khAnum	e	mestar	jAn <u>s</u> an as
khAnum	e	AghA e kar <u>I</u> m	khAna	<u>nE</u> s

That's my brother's book.

This is the Karte Char post office.

That's our children's school.

The mountains of Afghanistan are very beautiful.

What's her husband's name?

That's (or, she's) the wife of Mr. Johnson (i.e., Mrs. Johnson).

Mrs. Karim (lit., the wife of Mr. Karim) is not at home.

1. The ezAfI (-e-) construction occurs with nouns in the sense of "of." So, in the above examples we have: "book of my brother," "post office of Karte Char," "school of our children," "mountains of Afghanistan," "name of her husband," "wife of Mr. Johnson" and "wife of Mr. Karim."
2. Possessive adjectives (as in § 6-C, D) can, of course, be added to nouns which are also used possessively. So, in the above examples with byAdarem (my brother's), aolAdAemA (our children's) and shawaresh (her husband's).

3. While the English word "mestar" (as pronounced in Dari) is commonly used with foreign names, AghA is preferred with Afghan names.
4. The form of the sentence given above for "Mrs. Johnson" is somewhat older and possibly more commonly understood than the more modern style introduced previously in § 4-I-4. The example with "Mrs. Karim" likewise follows an older, more established pattern.
5. For maps of Kabul City, with names of streets, intersections and noteworthy locations as used in Dari see Appendix VII.

6-G

The question word kI (who?)

bukhArI		kI	dAra?	Who has a stove (or, heater)?		
rang		kI	dAra?	Who has (some) ink (or, paint)?		
qalam	e	ranga	kI	dAra?	Who has a colored pen?	
sAeb	e	I	khAna	kI	s?	Who's the owner of this house?
da		darwAza	kI	s?	Who's at the <u>door</u> ?	

But also,

kI		bukhArI	dAra?	Who has the stove (or, heater)?
kI		rang	dAra?	Who has the ink (or, paint)?
kI		shernI	dAra?	Who has (some) candy?
kI	da	darwAza	s?	<u>Who's</u> at the door?

1. The order of words as found in the first box, with the question word kI coming immediately before the verb, is more normal; but the second can also occur. Word order may also hint at definiteness or indefiniteness (cf. § 5-D-2).
2. The accent in the above sentences may vary according to the emphasis desired, whether it is on kI (who?) or on the object.
3. sAeb as a noun may also mean "owner, possessor." Here the question does not mean who lives in the house but who owns it.

6-H

Expressing the question "Whose?" (-e-kI, az kI)

I	ketAb	e	kI	s?	Whose book is this?
---	-------	---	----	----	---------------------

U	bachE		<u>kI</u>	<u>s?</u>	Whose son is that (or, he)?
U	gElAs	e	<u>kI</u>	<u>s?</u>	Whose glass is that?
tU	dukhtar	e	<u>kI</u>	<u>stI?</u>	Whose daughter are you?
shumA	aolAdA	e	<u>kI</u>	<u>stEn?</u>	Whose children are you?
I	khAna	az	<u>kI</u>	<u>s?</u>	Whose house is this?
I	kAlA	az	<u>kI</u>	<u>s?</u>	Whose clothes are these?
U	sag	az	<u>kI</u>	<u>s?</u>	Whose dog is that?
U	zarfA	az	<u>kI</u>	<u>s?</u>	Whose dishes are those?
U	sE ketAb	az	<u>kI</u>	<u>s?</u>	Whose three books are those?
I	beshqAb e kalAn	az	<u>kI</u>	<u>s?</u>	Whose big plate is this?

1. The construction in this idiom with az is the same as that for the possessive preposition (cf. § 6-E) with the question word kI taking the place of the noun or pronoun used with az.
2. The az construction is reserved for impersonal (i.e., non-human) objects (cf. § 6-E-4) while the ezAfI construction may be used for persons, animals and things.
3. The question "I khAna az kI s?" as given here is ambiguous. It could mean "Who lives in this house?" or "Who owns this house?" For specific ownership see § 6-G-3, above.
4. In the example with sE ketAb (three books) the subject remains unchanged for the plural since it is qualified by the number "three" and the verb also remains singular since the subject is inanimate.

6-I

The cardinal numbers eleven to twenty

11	۱۱	12	۱۲	13	۱۳	14	۱۴ ۱۴ ^۲	15	۱۵
yAzda		duwAzda		sEzda		chArda		pAnzda	
16	۱۶	17	۱۷	18	۱۸	19	۱۹	20	۲۰
shAnzda		abda		azhda		nuzda		bIst	

1. As noted before (cf. § 4-B-3) the digit "4" is written in two ways in Dari. Likewise, the number "14" (and other combinations with "4" in them) may occur in two forms as shown above. The student should be familiar with both of them.

2. The numbers from eleven to nineteen in Dari all include the number ten (da), combined with some form of the digits one to nine. The stress is put on the da syllable. Cf. the English series from thirteen to nineteen.

6-J

Forms of leave-taking

bAmAn	e	khudA
khudA	(H)Afez	

"With the peace of God"--i.e., God be with you.

"[May] God [be] the Protector"--i.e., God look after you.

1. To the Muslim, religion is a part of life and his speech is liberally garnished with references to "God" (cf. § 5-G-3, 4). Even in English the commonplace "Goodbye" is regarded as a contraction of an original "God-be-with-you."
2. salAm is also occasionally used as "Goodbye" (cf. § 5-G-1).

6-K

Vocabulary for Lesson Six

abda	seventeen (17 - ١٧)
AghA	(a title equivalent to) Mister; Mr.; also, "Daddy"
az	of (indicating possession)
az kI?	whose?
aahda	eighteen (18 - ١٨)
baks	briefcase, suitcase
bAmAn e khudA	goodbye
beshgAb	plate (for food)
bIs't	twenty (20 - ٢٠)
bukhArI	heater, stove
chAi,jOsh	teakettle
chArda	fourteen (14 - ١٤ - ١٤')
daftar	office
duwAzda	twelve (12 - ١٢)

-em	my; me
-emA	our; us
-esh	his/her/its; him/her/it
-eshAn	their; them
-et	your; you (sing.)
-etAn	your; you (plur.)
gE <u>l</u> As	(drinking) glass
kA <u>l</u> A	clothes
kAr__ bU <u>d</u> an	to need, require, be useful (with a possessive adjective suffixed)
khudA (H)A <u>f</u> ez	goodbye
kI?	who?
kO	mountain
mak <u>t</u> ab	school
mak <u>t</u> Ub	letter (official or businesslike)
mest <u>a</u> r	Mister; Mr. (used with foreign names)
n <u>A</u> m	name
nuz <u>d</u> a	nineteen (19 - 19)
padar O m <u>A</u> dar	parents
pAnz <u>d</u> a	fifteen (15 - 15)
qA <u>sh</u> ug	spoon
qA <u>w</u> a	coffee
rang	ink; paint; color
rang <u>a</u>	colored
sA <u>e</u> b	sir, gentleman; owner, possessor; (also, suffix of respect)
sag	dog

<u>sEzda</u>	thirteen (13 - ۱۳)
<u>shAnzda</u>	sixteen (16 - ۱۶)
<u>shawar</u>	husband
<u>shernI</u>	candy; dessert
<u>yAza</u>	eleven (11 - ۱۱)
<u>zarf</u>	dish, utensil (general term)

Exercises for Lesson Six

(to be written as well as practiced orally with the teacher)

Exercise 45 - Add the suffix -esh to the singular of each of the following nouns. E.g., baks baksesh
.....

- | | | | |
|--------------------|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. <u>bashqAb</u> | 5. <u>kAlA</u> | 9. <u>qAshuq</u> | 13. <u>parda</u> |
| 2. <u>bukhArI</u> | 6. <u>maktab</u> | 10. <u>sag</u> | 14. <u>chaokI</u> |
| 3. <u>chAijOsh</u> | 7. <u>nAm</u> | 11. <u>shawar</u> | 15. <u>maktUb</u> |
| 4. <u>gElAs</u> | 8. <u>rang</u> | 12. <u>khAna</u> | 16. <u>sAt</u> |

Exercise 46 - Add the suffix -etAn to the singular of each of the nouns given in Exercise 45. E.g., baks baksetAn
.....

Exercise 47 - Add the suffix -em to the plural of each of the following nouns. E.g., baks baksAem
.....

- | | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. <u>bashqAb</u> | 5. <u>maktab</u> | 9. <u>qAshuq</u> | 13. <u>parda</u> |
| 2. <u>bukhArI</u> | 6. <u>bUt</u> | 10. <u>sag</u> | 14. <u>chaokI</u> |
| 3. <u>chAijOsh</u> | 7. <u>kelI</u> | 11. <u>cherAgh</u> | 15. <u>maktUb</u> |
| 4. <u>gElAs</u> | 8. <u>utAq e khao</u> | 12. <u>ketAb</u> | 16. <u>kAghaz</u> |

Exercise 48 - Add the suffix -eshAn to the plural of each of the nouns given in Exercise 47. E.g., baks baksAeshAn
.....

Exercise 49 - Make each of the following emphatic. E.g., baksem baksema
.....

- | | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. beshq <u>Abet</u> | 4. gEl <u>Asesh</u> | 7. maktU <u>bAem</u> |
| 2. bukhAr <u>ImA</u> | 5. kAl <u>AemA</u> | 8. n <u>Amet</u> |
| 3. chAijO <u>shetAn</u> | 6. khAn <u>EshAn</u> | 9. pard <u>AemA</u> |

Exercise 50 - Turn each of the following emphatic phrases into ordinary ones.

E.g., sag e ma sagem
.....

- | | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. shawar e <u>U</u> | 4. qAshuqA e <u>U</u> | 7. qalam e <u>ma</u> |
| 2. pyAlA e <u>unA</u> | 5. balapOsh e <u>tU</u> | 8. khAnE <u>mA</u> |
| 3. chaokI <u>shumA</u> | 6. saLU <u>n</u> e <u>shumA</u> | 9. baks e <u>wa</u> |

Exercise 51 - Substitute each of the phrases below for the appropriate words in the sentence: I beshqAb e khurd az kI s?

- | | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. baks e <u>safEd</u> | 4. shash q <u>Ashuq</u> | 7. pAnzda beshq <u>Ab</u> |
| 2. daftar e <u>kaLAn</u> | 5. chaokI <u>khUb</u> | 8. gulA e maghb <u>Ul</u> |
| 3. chAnak e maghb <u>Ul</u> | 6. pardA e <u>safEd</u> | 9. khAnE <u>khUb</u> |

Exercise 52 - Substitute each of the words below for the appropriate word in the sentence: U dukhtar e kI s?

- | | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|------------------|------------------|
| 1. <u>bacha</u> | 4. <u>shAgerd</u> | 7. <u>khAna</u> | 10. <u>gElAs</u> |
| 2. <u>brAdar</u> | 5. <u>nOkar</u> | 8. <u>zamInA</u> | 11. <u>kellI</u> |
| 3. <u>khAnum</u> | 6. <u>aolAdA</u> | 9. <u>mEz</u> | 12. <u>sat</u> |

Exercise 53 - Give the questions for which the following would be the answers.

E.g., I dukhtar e dAktor sAeb as I dukhtar e kI s?
.....

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. I utAq e khao e <u>ma s</u> | 6. U byAdar e <u>ma s</u> |
| 2. U pensel az <u>tU s</u> | 7. U khAnum e <u>U s</u> |
| 3. U kAghazA az <u>shumA s</u> | 8. <u>unA aolAdAemA</u> stan |
| 4. I mOtar e AghA e <u>karIm</u> as | 9. <u>enA shAgerdA</u> e AghA e <u>azIz</u> astan |
| 5. I khAna az <u>unA s</u> | 10. U Ashpaz e khAnum <u>grIn</u> as |

Exercise 54 - Answer the following questions briefly in your own words, using the possessive form of nouns (cf. § 6-E). E.g., I mEzA e kI s?
I mEzA e brAdarem as
.....

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 1. U pyAla az <u>kI s</u> ? | 7. I bUtA e <u>kI s</u> ? |
| 2. U ketAbA e <u>kI s</u> ? | 8. U Ashpaz e <u>kI s</u> ? |
| 3. shumA bachE <u>kI s</u> tEn? | 9. I bAlapOsh e khUb az <u>kI s</u> ? |
| 4. I dawA az <u>kI s</u> ? | 10. U dOkAn e <u>khurd</u> az <u>kI s</u> ? |
| 5. U paisE <u>kI s</u> ? | 11. I sAt e maghbUl e <u>kI s</u> ? |
| 6. U bukhArI az <u>kI s</u> ? | 12. U khAnum e <u>kI s</u> ? |

Exercise 55 - Substitute each of the following words for the appropriate word in the sentence: rang kI dAra?

1. pyAla 2. dawA 3. paisa 4. chAijOsh 5. gElAs

Exercise 56 - Substitute each of the following words for the appropriate word in the sentence: kI rang dAra?

1. pyAla 2. dawA 3. paisa 4. chAijOsh 5. gElAs

Exercise 57 -- Using the following sentence as a model, substitute each of the numbers given below: AghA e karIm panj qalam dAra.

1. yAzda 2. duwAzda 3. azhda 4. ruzda 5. pAnzda

Exercise 58 - Using the following sentence as a model, substitute each of the numbers given below: dAktor sAeb shash ketAb dAra.

1. sEzda 2. bIst 3. shAnzda 4. chArda 5. abda

Exercise 59 - Answer the question "da darwAza kI s?" with each of the following.

- | | | |
|--------------------|--------------|----------------------|
| 1. brAdaretAn | 5. aolAdAet | 9. shawar e amshIrEm |
| 2. dAktor sAeb | 6. khAnumesh | 10. muallemeshAn |
| 3. shAgerdem | 7. khwAremA | 11. nOkarem |
| 4. padar O mAdareh | 8. Ashpaz | 12. amshIra |

LESSON SEVEN

7-A

Pronunciation drill (to be done only with the teacher)

1. Contrasting /k/ and /kh/

U kar as (He/she is deaf)

U khar as (That's a donkey)

shAyad khar kar bAsha (The donkey may be deaf)

muallem sAeb keshtI guft (The teacher said 'keshtI' [boat])

muallem sAeb kheshtI guft (The teacher said 'kheshtI' [of brick])

U kurd as (That is a plot of land)

U khurd as (He/she/it is small)

kurd e khurd khushk as (The small plot of land is dry)

kAk na dAra (He/she/it doesn't have a cork)

khAk na dAra (It's not dirty [or, dusty])

kai myAya? (When is he/she/it coming?)

khai, myAya (Then, he/she/it is coming)

darakhtA kam shuda (The trees have gotten less [in number])

darakhtA kham shuda (The trees have bent over)

guft kO (He/she said, 'kO' [mountain])

guft khO (He/she said, 'khO' [O.K.])

maida (bu)kO (Make it small [or, change it; i.e., the money])

maida bukhO (Eat it broken [i.e., crushed in pieces])

I jAi tArIkI s (There's darkness here)

I jAi tArIkhi s (This place is historical)

malak Amad (An angel came)

malakh Amad (A grasshopper came)

shak nEs (There's no doubt [about it])

shakh nEs (It's not tight)

shak nEs ke gardanem shakh shuda (There's no doubt about it that
my neck has gotten stiff)

2. Illustrating /rkh/

charkh e gAdI kharAb bUd (The cart wheel was bad)
 qalam e surkha kharId (He/she bought the red pen)

7-B

The formation of the present tense

With kadan (to do, make ___)

"-ing"	stem	subj.	Singular	
1 } 2 mE } 3 }	+ { kun }	+ { um I a }	= <u>mEkunum</u>	I am doing; I do
			= <u>mEkunI</u>	you are doing; you do
			= <u>mEkuna</u>	he/she/it is doing; he/she/it does

Plural				
1 } 2 mE } 3 }	+ { kun }	+ { Em En an }	= <u>mEkunEm</u>	we are doing; we do
			= <u>mEkunEn</u>	you are doing; you do
			= <u>mEkunan</u>	they are doing; they do

With shudan (to become)

"-ing"	stem	subj.	Singular	
1 } 2 mE } 3 }	+ { sh }	+ { um I a }	= <u>mEshum</u>	I am becoming; I become
			= <u>mIshI</u>	you are becoming; you become
			= <u>mEsha</u>	he/she/it is becoming; he/she/it becomes

Plural				
1 } 2 mE } 3 }	+ { sh }	+ { Em En an }	= <u>mEshEm</u>	we are becoming; we become
			= <u>mEshEn</u>	you are becoming; you become
			= <u>mEshan</u>	they are becoming; they become

With raftan (to go)

"-ing"	stem	subj.		S i n g u l a r	
1	} + { r }	} + {	um	= <u>mEr</u> um	I am going; I go
2			I	= <u>mIr</u> I	you are going; you go
3			a	= <u>mEr</u> a	he/she/it is going; he/she/it goes

				P l u r a l	
1	} + { r }	} + {	Em	= <u>mEr</u> Em	we are going; we go
2			En	= <u>mEr</u> En	you are going; you go
3			an	= <u>mEr</u> an	they are going; they go

1. The progressive indicator mE- (= -ing) comes at the beginning of the verb; the basic stem of the verb (carrying the dictionary meaning as well as the tense) follows this; and the personal endings (indicating the subject) come at the end of the verb.
2. The accent in this tense falls on the first (or mE-) syllable.
3. Frequently (as here) the basic or tense-indicating form of the verb appears as quite different from the dictionary or infinitive form. Thus, kadan--kun, shudan--sh and raftan--r. It is therefore necessary to learn the various tense/mood forms of a verb when learning the infinitive as a vocabulary item. The third person singular (he/she/it) form is included with the vocabulary at the end of each lesson. A table giving these forms for all verbs (except compounds) used in this course is included as Appendix XI.
4. The personal pronouns may occur as subjects of these verbs in the present tense although since they are included in the personal endings anyway they are regularly omitted, especially if the subject has just been referred to (as in a question). (Cf. § 3-G-6, 4-C-5 and 4-G-2.)
5. Notice that the personal ending -I for the second person singular (you) occasionally influences the vowel of the progressive indicator mE- (e.g., in shudan [to become] and raftan [to go]); thus, mIshI (instead of mEshI) and mIrI (instead of mErI). The vowel of the progressive marker mE- also in some verbs changes to -e- (so, me-) or to the semi-vowel -y- (so, my-).
6. A simplified chart of the verb system for colloquial Dari is given in Appendix X.

7-C

The uses of the present tense

bachAem	maktab	e	(H)abIbya	mEran	My boys go to Habibia School.
(+U)	Ale		kuja	mIrI?	Where are you going now?
			maktab	mErum	I'm going to school
na	(Ale)	bAlapOsh	na	mEkharum	I'm not going to buy an overcoat (just now).
shawaresh		kulla		mEkhara	Her husband is buying a hat.
Ashpas	pani	pao	kachALU	myAra	The cook is bringing five 'pau's of potatoes.
U	Ale	sar e kAr	na	myAya	He/she is not coming to work just now.
unA	Ale	as	sar e kAr	myAyan	They are coming from work now.
kI	fardA	mazAr		mEra?	Who is going (= will go) to Mazar tomorrow?

1. The forms learned in § 7-B may be used for the simple present tense, frequently indicating something which happens regularly or habitually.
2. These forms may also serve as the present progressive tense to show action going on at the moment.
3. There is even a suggestion of intention or purpose (whether present or future) in the use of this tense.
4. These forms may likewise, when used with the proper time words (e.g., fardA [tomorrow]), act as a future tense. Literally, "They are going (or, go) to Mazar tomorrow" = "They will go . . ."
5. Note that with the verb raftan (to go) the preposition da (in, to) is not **always** needed to show place since the idea is included in the verb anyway. Hence, just maktab mErum, not, da maktab mErum.
6. sar e kAr is an idiomatic way of saying "at work," "working" or "on the job." It may be used with Amadan (to come), raftan (to go)--and, if needed, with az (from)--as well as with bUdan (to be). For example,

U	Ale	sar e kAr	as	He/she is at work now.
---	-----	-----------	----	------------------------

7. See Appendix XII for a summary of measurements as used in Dari (including the 'pao' which is slightly less than one pound; actually, .97 lb.).

7-D

The idiomatic use of ar (each, every, all)

ma	ar	rOz	sar e	kAr	mErUm
ar	du	gElAs	yak	chiz	as
ar	chAretAn	fardA		mErEn?	
ar	dUemA	ketAb	na	dArEm	
ar	panjesh	kArem		as	

I go to work every day (= daily).

Both glasses are alike (lit., are one [or, the same] thing).

Are all four of you going tomorrow?

Neither of us has a book.

I need all five of them.

1. ar may be prefixed to a noun to indicate "each, every."
2. The expression ar du (lit., all two) is common for the idea of "both." In the negative it becomes "neither" instead of "both." Because it is a number, the noun it occurs with is not pluralized. (Cf. § 3-C-1.)
3. When prefixed to numbers ar suggests inclusiveness and may be rendered as "all" + _____ (the number).
4. Attached personal pronouns (of § 6-B) may be suffixed to these compounds as their objects. So, ar chAretAn, ar dUemA and ar panjesh, above.
5. The attached personal pronoun -esh(An) is added to the number when it does not qualify a following noun. When the things referred to are inanimate (even though plural) the -esh form is used and the verb remains singular. The plural -eshAn (with a corresponding plural verb) occurs only when the reference is to people, not things, although the -esh form may also be heard [with a plural significance] even for people.

7-E

Compound verbs

fardA	yag	maktUb	neweshta	mEkunUm	
da	U	dOkAn	gOgerd	yAf(t)	mEsha?
shurA	da	kujA	kAr	mEkunEn?	
unA	Ale	da	aoll	kAr	mEkunan
I	dawA	besyAr	fAida	dArA	
teflA	Ale	khao	na	mEkunan	
U	Ale	tashnAb		mEkuna	

I'll write a letter tomorrow.

Can you get matches in that shop (lit., Will they be available . . .)?

Where do you work?

They are working in the yard now.

This medicine is very beneficial.

The children aren't sleeping now.

He/she is bathing (just) now.

besyAr	nafarA	Inja	ta	mEshan
se	nafar	Inja	ta	mEsha
kArem	ale	khalAs		mEsha

Lots of people are getting off
(or, down) here.

Three people are getting off
(or, down) here.

I'll be free in a minute (lit.,
My work is just becoming finished).

1. Dari is replete with compound verbs, generally made up of a noun, an adjective or an adverb plus any of certain other common verbs to convey what in English would be done by a single word. Thus, the English verb "to work" in Dari is made up of the noun kAr (work) + kadan (to do). The most common verbs used in such compounds are kadan (to do) for the transitive idea, and shudan (to become) or bUdan (to be) for the intransitive. Other verbs which commonly combine to form compound verbs will be introduced as needed throughout the course.
2. In compound verbs inflection occurs in the verbal member only which is conjugated to agree with its subject in person and number (except where otherwise restricted). The examples given above with nafar (person) and nafarA (persons) illustrate clearly the principles of agreement mentioned in § 3-G-1 and 3-G-2.
3. Note that the final /t/ in yAft may sometimes not be pronounced.
4. When a compound verb is put in the negative, the negative is placed between the noun, adjective or adverb and the verb; in other words, it comes just before the verbal member of the compound.
5. kAr dAshtan (to need, require) and kAr bUdan (to need, require), introduced in Lessons 4 and 6 respectively, are actually compound verbs.

7-F

The object marker -a/-ra (to show definiteness in objects of verbs)

khAnumem	pardA	e	sAlUna	tabdIl	mEkuna
dukhtarem	pyAlA	o	nAlbakYara		mEshOya
(H)abIb ulla	kujAra		jarU		mEkuna?
muallem sAeb	kelkIna		wAz		mEkuna
nOkar	ar du	mEza	sAfI		mEkuna

My wife is going to
change the living
room curtains.

My daughter is washing
the cups and saucers.

Where is Habib Ullah sweeping?

The teacher is opening the window.

The servant is dusting (or, will
dust) both tables.

Ashpaz Ale nAna tayAr mEkuna	The cook is preparing the food now.
U darwAzara basta mEkuna	He/she is closing the door.
Ale utAq e khawa pAk mEkunI?	Are you going to clean the bedroom now?
karIm ar panjesha kAr dAra	Karim needs all five of them.
bAlapOshetAna mEpOshEn?	Will you (or, are you going to) wear (i.e., put on) your overcoat?
chAya myArum	I'm bringing the tea.

But,

aw e jOsh dAra lAken	He/she has <u>boiling</u> water but not <u>boiled</u> water.
aw e jOsh-dAdagI na dAra	
nasIm-jAn sE pensel myAra	Nasim is bringing three pencils.

- The sign of a specific verbal object in Dari is -a or -ra suffixed to the object in accordance with the following phonological rules:
 - When words end in consonant sounds the suffix -a is added. So, mEz (table)--mEza.
 - When words end in -Ai, -ai, -Oi and -Ui the second member of the diphthong (-i) is taken as a -y- before adding the object marker -a. So, chAi (tea)--chAya.
 - When words end in -ao the second member of the diphthong (-o) is taken as a -w- before adding the object marker -a. So, utAq e khaw (bedroom)--utAq e khawa.
 - When words end in vowel sounds the suffix -ra is added. So, kuJA (where?)--kujAra.
- The object marker is used with objects of verbs, not of prepositions, and has the effect of adding definiteness to the object. For example, in § 7-C the words bAlapOsh (overcoat) and kullA (hat) did not require the object marker since they were not specific; they were understood in a general sense of any coat, any hat. But in the example just above "overcoat" is specific and has the object marker to show this.
- Possessive adjectives added to words automatically make them specific and thus demand the object marker. So, the example above is not just of "any coat"--though this, too, could be expressed--but "your coat," the -etAn making it definite and requiring the object marker.
- With numbers the object marker may or may not occur, depending on the degree of definiteness involved. So, it occurs with "ar du mEza" because two particular tables (known to the speaker or previously mentioned) are

in view. It also occurs with "ar panjasha" because five particular items (made specific by the -esh) are in mind as the object of this compound verb. However, it is not used with "se pensel" since the reference is to three (of many possible) pencils which are being brought, rather than three particular pencils.

5. The object marker is always put at the very end of a word, following anything that might be suffixed to the word. So, nalbakyA (saucers) + ra, panjesh (five of them) + a, and balapOshetAn (your overcoat) + a.
6. With a series (e.g., pardA e saUna [living room curtains], utAq e khwa [bedroom]) or in compounds (e.g., pyAlA O nalbakyAra [cups and saucers]) the object marker is added only to the last member of the series or compound.
7. pUshIdan (to wear, put on) indicates the initial action of "putting on" something but not the continuing state of "having on" something. This latter idea would be expressed as

bAlapOsh	da	jAnem	as	I'm wearing an overcoat (lit., The/an overcoat is <u>on</u> my body).
----------	----	-------	----	---

8. -jAn attached to a name (as nasIm-jAn, above) is a suffix of respect or endearment. For comments on Afghan names and titles--three of which ([H]abIb ulla, karIm and nasIm-jAn) are given above--see Appendix VIII.
9. The example given with "boiling" and "boiled" water did not need the object marker--even though they are objects--since "any" rather than some specific water is in view.

7-G

The object marker used to make object pronouns

dAktar	sAeb	Ale	shumAra	mIbIna	The doctor will see you now.
unA	mAra	da	nOtar	myAran	They will bring us in the car.
shumA	kIra	ejAza	mEtEn?		Who(m) do you give permission to?
ma	Ura	paisa	na	mEtum	I won't give him/her (any) money.
ma	fardA	unAra	mIbInum		I'll see them tomorrow.
mara	gOgerda	mEtEn?			Will you give me the matches?
tUra	kI	myAra?			Who is bringing <u>you</u> ?

1. The object marker when used with pronouns (personal or interrogative) turns them into object pronouns (unattached).
2. If there are two objects (as in the examples with ejAza [permission],

paisa [money] and gOgerda [matches]) the object indicator is attached to the indirect object--the pronoun rather than the noun--unless the direct object is also specific (as with gOgerda [matches]), in which case the object indicator occurs with both words. In the nature of the case, object pronouns are always specific and therefore take the object marker.

3. If the object is regarded as indefinite, the object marker would be omitted. For example, mara gOgerd mEtEn? "Will you give me a match?" (i.e., a light) while the example above refers to a particular box of matches.
4. With regard to the verb dIdan (to see) the progressive indicator mE- is influenced by the vowel following the consonant /b/ and turns the sound into mI-. (Cf. § 7-B-5.)

7-H

Vocabulary for Lesson Seven

-a, -ra	(the sign of the object)
<u>Ale</u>	now, just now
<u>Amadan</u>	to come [pres., <u>myAya</u>]
ar	each, every, all-_____
ar <u>dU</u>	both; (in negative) neither
aw e <u>jOsh</u>	boiling water
aw e <u>jOsh-dAdagI</u>	boiled water
<u>Awurdan</u>	to bring [pres., <u>myAra</u>]
<u>basta kadan*</u>	to close, shut, lock
<u>chIz</u>	thing
<u>dAdan</u>	to give [pres., <u>mEtA</u>]
<u>dIdan</u>	to see; to visit [pres., <u>mIbIna</u>]
<u>ejAza</u>	permission
<u>fAida</u>	benefit, value, use
(-) <u>fardA</u> (-)	tomorrow (used alone and in compounds)
(-) <u>jAn</u>	body; (also, a suffix of respect or endearment, attached to names or titles)
<u>jArU kadan</u>	to sweep

*From this point onward in the vocabulary listings wherever compound verbs occur the accent of the non-verbal member is given--so as to avoid making a separate vocabulary entry to show the accent of that word when found alone--although in combination with an infinitive the compound itself is always accented on the -an syllable of the infinitive.

<u>kadan</u>	to do [pres., <u>mEkuna</u>]
<u>kAr kadan</u>	to work
<u>khalaS</u>	finished, completed
<u>khao kadan</u>	to sleep, go to sleep; to lie down
<u>khariDan</u>	to buy, purchase [pres., <u>mEkhara</u>]
<u>kira?</u>	whom?
<u>lAken</u>	but, nevertheless
<u>mara</u>	me
<u>mAra</u>	us
<u>nafar</u>	person, individual; servant
<u>nAlbaki</u>	saucer
<u>neweshta (naveshta)</u> <u>kadan</u>	to write
<u>paK kadan</u>	to clean, erase
<u>paO</u>	one "pau" (a measure, slightly less than one pound)
<u>pUshidan</u>	to put on, wear [pres., <u>mEpOsha</u>]
<u>raftan</u>	to go, leave [pres., <u>mEra</u>]
<u>roZ</u>	day
<u>sAfI kadan</u>	to dust, tidy up, clean (by wiping)
<u>sar e kAr</u>	on the job, at work, working
<u>shudan</u>	to become; (occasionally also) to be [pres., <u>mEsha</u>]
<u>shumAra</u>	you (plur.) [object pronoun]
<u>shushtan</u>	to wash [pres., <u>mEshOya</u>]
<u>ta shudan</u>	to get down, alight, get off (as from a bus)
<u>tabdIl kadan</u>	to change, alter
<u>tashnAb kadan</u>	to bathe, take a bath

<u>tayAr</u> kadan	to prepare, make ready
<u>tura</u>	you (sing.) [object pronoun]
<u>unAra</u>	them
<u>Ura</u>	him, her, it (object pronoun)
<u>wAra</u>	them
<u>wAz</u> kadan	to open
<u>yAf(t)</u> shudan	to be found, gotten, obtained

Exercises for Lesson Seven

(to be written as well as practiced orally with the teacher)

Exercise 60 - Make the following subjects and verbs plural. E.g.,
bachEsh maktAb mEra .. bachAesh maktAb mEran ..

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1. (tU) <u>kuJA</u> mIrI? | 6. (ma) <u>kachALU</u> myArum |
| 2. (ma) mOtar <u>na</u> mEkharum | 7. <u>dukhtaretAn</u> (da) <u>kuJA</u> kAr mEkuna? |
| 3. (U) <u>fardA</u> sar e kAr mEra | 8. <u>I</u> Otal sAlUn e <u>kalAn</u> <u>na</u> dAra |
| 4. nOkaretAn <u>kullA</u> mEpOsha? | 9. (tU) <u>maktUb</u> neweshta mEkunI? |
| 5. dAktar <u>fardA</u> shumAra mIbIna | |

Exercise 61 - Turn the following into negatives. E.g., ar rOz sar e kAr mErum
.. ar rOz sar e kAr na mErum ..

- | | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| 1. ar <u>chAresh</u> kArem as | 6. utAq e <u>nAna</u> pAk mEkunEn? |
| 2. teflAesh Ale <u>khao</u> mEkunan | 7. aolAdAeta da mOtar myArI? |
| 3. dAktar sAeb mara eJAza mEta | 8. zarfAra da aw e jOsh mEshOya |
| 4. <u>kAretAn</u> Ale <u>khalAs</u> mEsha | 9. Ale bAlapOsh mEpOshum |
| 5. utAqA e <u>khawa</u> jArU mEkuna | 10. ar <u>sEsha</u> kAr dArum |

Exercise 62 - Change the following subjects from the first person singular to the third person singular (as contained in the verb ending).
E.g., fardA ketAba myArum .. fardA ketAba myARA ..

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. kelk <u>Ina</u> basta mEkunum | 6. <u>khao</u> mEkunum |
| 2. shum <u>Ara</u> eJaza <u>na</u> mEtum | 7. yag rAdyO e <u>khUb</u> mEkharum |
| 3. Ale brAd <u>aresha</u> mIbInum | 8. <u>du</u> maktUb neweshta mEkunum |
| 4. kh <u>Anara</u> j <u>ArU</u> mEkunum | 9. Ale m <u>Otara</u> sAfI mEkunum |
| 5. fard <u>A</u> k <u>Ar</u> <u>na</u> mEkunum | |

Exercise 63 - Change the following subjects from the third person singular to the third person plural (as contained in the verb ending).

E.g., ar rOz bAlapOsh mEpOsha ar rOz bAlapOsh mEpOshan

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 1. mEzA O chaok <u>yAra</u> sAfI mEkuna | 6. Ale tashn <u>Ab</u> mEkuna |
| 2. Ale az sar e <u>kAr</u> myAya? | 7. <u>chAi</u> tayAr mEkuna |
| 3. da aol <u>I</u> kAl <u>Ara</u> mEshOya | 8. darwAz <u>ara</u> wAz mEkuna |
| 4. <u>Inja</u> tA mEsha? | 9. daft <u>ar</u> mEra? |
| 5. ket <u>Abet</u> Ana tabd <u>I</u> l mEkuna | |

Exercise 64 - Complete each of the following sentences with an adjective (chosen from these: khUb, pAk, safEd, maghbUl, kalAn, khurd, basta, wAz).

E.g., ar du ketAb as ar du ketAb khUb as

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. ar <u>sE</u> darwAzA as | 6. ar <u>du</u> kelkIn as |
| 2. ar <u>chA</u> resh as | 7. ar <u>shash</u> qalam as |
| 3. ar <u>da</u> gElAs as | 8. ar <u>dU</u> esh nEs |
| 4. ar <u>pani</u> utAq as | 9. ar <u>sE</u> pyAla as |
| 5. ar <u>aft</u> esh as | 10. ar <u>du</u> anwArI as |

Exercise 65 - Replace consecutively each of the words given below for the appropriate word in the sentence, ki Ura pAk mEkuna? Make only one change each time. E.g., nOkar nOkar Ura pAk mEkuna

- | | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. sAfI | 4. mEkunan | 7. shum <u>A</u> |
| 2. kelkIn <u>Ara</u> | 5. wAz | 8. p <u>Ak</u> |
| 3. kh <u>Anum</u> | 6. darwAz <u>Ara</u> | 9. tashn <u>Aba</u> |

Exercise 66 - Use chI or kI in the following sentences, as required.

1. shumA kAr dArEn?
2. jeLALAbAd mEra?
3. dAktar sAeb unAra mEta?
4. wakht dArA?
5. tU stI?
6. maktUb neweshta mEkuna?
7. byAdareh Ale mEpOsha?
8. sAlUna pAk mEkuna?
9. da maktUb neweshta mEkuna?
10. darwAza o kelkIna basta mEkuna?
11. unA mEkharan?

Exercise 67 - Use chIra or kIra in the following sentences, as required.

1. brAdareh Ale mEpOsha?
2. unA mEkharan?
3. shumA kAr dArEn?
4. tU tayAr mEkunI?
5. mAdareh mEshOya?

LESSON EIGHT

8-A

Pronunciation drill (to be done only with the teacher)

1. Contrasting /k/ and /gh/

besyAr kam khOrdEn (You ate very little)
 besyAr gham khOrdEn (You worried a lot)

kurtI dakIra Awurd (He/she brought the mailman's jacket)
 kurtI daghIra Awurd (He/she brought the stained jacket)

bAk na dArum (I don't worry [or, care])
 bAgh na dArum (I don't have an orchard [i.e., large garden])

da unja yak kar as (There's some job [to do] over there)
 da unja yag ghar as (There's a hole over there)

U chAk shud (It got cracked)
 U chAgh shud (He/she got fat)

nEk bugO (Say, 'nEk' [good])
nEgh bugO (Say, 'nEgh' [a projection, protrusion])
nEk mesl e nEgh talafuz na mEsha ('nEk' isn't pronounced like 'nEgh')

2. Illustrating /rg/

I barg zard as (This leaf is yellow)

ar kas marg dAra (Everyone is mortal [i.e., will die])

8-B

The prepositions amrAe (with), katI (with),
 bare (for) and rAjEba (about, concerning)

rafiqem	katIm	kOmak	mEkuna	
ma	fardA	amrAet	kOmak	mEkunum
yag	dukhtarAm	katIsh	myAya	
bachA	amrAe	mAdareshan	myAyan	

My friend is helping me.

I'll help you tomorrow.

A girl is coming with him/her too.

The boys are coming with their mother.

katI chAi <u>shIr</u> <u>myAra?</u>	Is he/she bringing milk <u>with</u> the tea?
katItAn <u>mErum</u>	I'll go with you.
amrAe <u>shumA</u> <u>mErum</u>	I'll go with <u>you</u> .

- The words amrAe and katI (= with) are synonymous and are used interchangeably.
- Prepositions may take pronouns as objects in either of the following ways:
 - The attached personal pronouns (§ 6-B) may be suffixed to the preposition in accordance with the phonological rules noted in § 6-C-3. This is the common way observed in colloquial Dari. So, katIm, amrAet, katIsh and katItAn in the examples above.
 - The ordinary personal pronouns (§ 3-D) can also follow the preposition, serving as unattached objects. (Cf. § 6-D-1 for a similar phenomenon.) This form, however, is more literary or polite and may even convey an element of emphasis or special stress. So, amrAe shumA mErum, "I'll go with you" (instead of with someone else). (Cf. also § 6-D-2.)
- Besides its use with amrAe or katI (= with) plus the person being assisted, kOmak kadan (to help) may on occasion be used without a preposition, as, "ma fardA tUra kOmak mEkunum," I'll help you tomorrow.

tU bare <u>dOstet</u> <u>telefUn</u> <u>mEkunI?</u>	Are you telephoning your friend?
<u>U</u> <u>kAr</u> <u>baresh</u> <u>besyAr</u> <u>AsAn</u> <u>as</u>	That work is very easy <u>for</u> him/her.
<u>I</u> <u>kAr</u> <u>bareshAn</u> <u>mushkel</u> <u>as</u>	This work is hard <u>for</u> them.
<u>I</u> <u>nAn</u> <u>bare</u> <u>ma</u> <u>bas</u> <u>as</u>	This is plenty of (i.e., too much) food <u>for</u> me.
<u>U</u> <u>bare</u> <u>shumA</u> <u>myAra</u>	He/she is bringing (it) <u>for</u> you.
<u>shumA</u> <u>bare</u> <u>nAn e</u> <u>chAsht</u>	Are you going to a restaurant <u>for</u>
<u>rastUrAr</u> <u>mErEn?</u>	lunch?
<u>amrAem</u> <u>bare</u> <u>yak</u> <u>sAt</u>	Will you go with me to the marketplace
<u>bAzAr</u> <u>mErEn?</u>	<u>for</u> a while (lit., an hour)?
<u>U</u> <u>bare</u> <u>chI</u> <u>myAya?</u>	Why (lit., <u>for</u> what) is he/she coming?

- The word "friend" as used so commonly and innocuously by English speakers does not have an easy Dari equivalent. dOst is a more formal designation while rafiq indicates a closer, more intimate friend. Until very

recent times neither word would have been used for a person of the opposite sex, though nowadays one may occasionally hear "dOst" so used in the sense of an acquaintance. However, among the less-western-oriented people it may still be offensive to use it in this way as it may imply an "intimacy" which is not intended. When speaking of an acquaintance of the opposite sex it is safer to use some sort of circumlocution, as: khAnum e (wife of...), shawar e (husband of...), khwAr e (sister of...), mAdar e (mother of...), etc.

5. Both the attached personal pronouns (§ 6-B) and ordinary unattached personal pronouns (§ 3-B) can occur with bare (for). The same distinctions as noted in # 2, above, apply in this case.
6. The word rafiq (friend) may also mean "friendly," as, U besyAr rafiq as (or, rafiq Adam as) -- He is very friendly (or, a friendly person).

ma	rAjEba	I	rAdyO	Ech	na	mEfAnum
shawaresh						
	rAjEba	mOtar	chI	mEga?		

I don't know anything about this radio.

What does her husband say about the car?

wA	rAjEba	afghAnestAn
neweshta		mEkunan

They are writing about Afghanistan.

7. Ordinary personal pronouns (unattached, in object position) are used with rAjEba (about, concerning) instead of the attached personal pronouns. In other words, rAjEba I/U, "about this/that", not rAjEbEsh.
8. The verb guftan (to say), introduced here, is also idiomatically used for "to call," as in the expression (pointing at something):

Ira	chI	mEgan?
-----	-----	--------

What do they call this?

The subject is put in the third person plural, similar to the indefinite "They say" in English, and is equivalent to asking the name of something in Dari.

8-C

General time words (present and future)

shumA	yak	shao	khAnEma	myAEEn?
yag	afta	aft	rOz	as
da I	rOzA	besyAr	gul	
yAf(t)		mEsha		

Are you coming to our house some (lit., one) night?

A week has (lit., is) seven days.

Nowadays lots of flowers are available.

bAbEshAn shao 0 rOz kAr mEkana	Their daddy works <u>night and day</u> .
unA sE afta bAd mOtar e	They are buying a new car after <u>three weeks</u> .
nao mEkharan	
da mA e mArch pAkestAn mERum	I'm going to Pakistan in (the <u>month</u> of) March.
da yak sAl duwAzda mA s	There are twelve months in a <u>year</u> .
ghulAm aLI fardA pas myAya	Ghulam Ali is coming back <u>tomorrow</u> .
dOkAnesh Ale wAz as	His/her shop is open <u>now</u> .

1. Notice the two ways of indicating "has" in the sense of "includes," in the examples above: "A week is seven days" and "There are twelve months in a year." The two forms of expression are interchangeable.
2. The word bAbA may mean "an old man" (used in deference or respect), but it is also commonly used by children as an intimate way of addressing their father; so, "Daddy."
3. shao 0 rOz (night and day)--note the word order--means "continually," or "all the time." The connector 0 (and) may contract with the -o of shao.

8-D

The prefix -em (to-, this) with time words

emrOz kArem khalAs na mEsha	My work won't be finished <u>today</u> .
ma emrOz mERum; shumA chetOr?	I'm going <u>today</u> ; what about you?
emshao ketAbAra khAna mEbarI?	Are you taking the books home <u>tonight</u> ?
emshao rAdyOra meshnawEn?	Are you going to listen to the radio <u>tonight</u> ?
unA emsAl englestAn na mERan	They aren't going to England <u>this year</u> .
emsAl maktab na mERA	He/she doesn't go to school <u>this year</u> .
emdafa besyAr kOshesh mEkunum	I am trying (or, will try) very hard <u>this time</u> .

1. shumA chetOr? is a very idiomatic way of saying, "How about you?" or "What about you?" In the sentence above it means, "When are you going?"

2. bordan (to take [away]) is used in the sense of carrying from one place to another, not "taking" in the sense of "grabbing." It frequently omits the preposition da (to, in). (Cf. § 7-C-5.)
3. dafa (time, occasion) is used in combination (e.g., with this prefix em-, with numbers [as, se dafa, "three times"], or with an interrogative construction) rather than alone.

8-E

Commands, directions, requests and prohibitions (= imperative forms)

With kadan (to do) + wAz (open) = "to open"

Imperative sing.	darw <u>Azara</u>	<u>wAz</u>	kO	Open the door.
" plur.	darw <u>Azara</u>	<u>wAz</u>	kunEn	Open the door.
Negative sing.	darw <u>Azara</u>	<u>wAz</u>	<u>na</u> kO	Don't open the door.
" plur.	darw <u>Azara</u>	<u>wAz</u>	<u>na</u> kunEn	Don't open the door.
Polite	<u>lutfan</u>	+ any of the above forms		Please . . .

With raftan (to go, leave)

Imperative sing.	b <u>AzAr</u>	<u>burO</u>	Go to the marketplace.	
" plur.	b <u>AzAr</u>	<u>burEn</u>	Go to the marketplace.	
Negative sing.	b <u>AzAr</u>	<u>na</u> rO	Don't go to the marketplace.	
" plur.	b <u>AzAr</u>	<u>na</u> rEn	Don't go to the marketplace.	
Polite	<u>lutfan</u>	+ any of the above forms		Please . . .

With dAdan (to give)

Imperative sing.	pensela	<u>bete</u>	Give [me] the pencil.	
" plur.	pensela	<u>betEn</u>	Give [me] the pencil.	
Negative sing.	pensela	<u>na</u> te	Don't give [me] the pencil.	
" plur.	pensela	<u>na</u> tEn	Don't give [me] the pencil.	
Polite	<u>lutfan</u>	+ any of the above forms		Please . . .

With bOrdan (to take, carry)

Imperative sing.	yAra	unja	bubar	Take these (over) there.
" plur.	yAra	unja	bubarEn	Take these (over) there.
Negative sing.	yAra	unja	na bar	Don't take these (over) there.
" plur.	yAra	unja	na barEn	Don't take these (over) there.
Polite	<u>lutfan</u>	+ any of the above		Please . . .

1. Except for kadan (to do), bUdan (to be), shudan (to become) and dAshtan (to have)--which have highly irregular forms--the sign of the imperative is an initial b- sound, usually followed by the vowel sound -e- or -u-. Occasionally a "regular" form bakO (do) may be heard instead of the irregular (but more common) kO. The first (or b-) syllable is accented.
2. Because of variations in formation--although the plural form (with a few exceptions) usually only adds -En to the singular form--from this point on in the course imperative forms will be given in the vocabulary lists and should be learned when the infinitive (or dictionary) form is first introduced. All of these are, of course, included in Appendix XI.
3. Except for the irregular forms--only one of which, kadan (to do) is given above--when making the negative form of the imperative the b- prefix (with its accompanying vowel, -e-, -u-, etc.) is dropped and the negative prefix na is substituted. When the negative occurs the stress or accent falls on the na. In the case of compound verbs, as in wAz kadan (to open) the negative follows the non-verbal member of the compound.
4. Unless there is danger of ambiguity or a need for special emphasis, the subject pronouns tu and shumA are commonly omitted, the imperative endings themselves showing which subject is intended.
5. Politeness is normally conveyed by introducing the command, direction, request or prohibition with the adverb lutfan (please). While the word lutfan ordinarily would be used with the more formal (i.e., plural) imperative forms, it may also occur with the singular, especially if it is desired to "soften" what otherwise might appear harsh or critical. Note the following examples:

<u>lutfan</u>	<u>omrOz</u>	<u>kAreta</u>	<u>khalAs</u>	<u>kO</u>	Please finish your work today.
<u>lutfan</u>	<u>cherAgha</u>	<u>gul</u>	<u>kunEn</u>		Please turn off the light.
<u>lutfan</u>	<u>katIsh</u>	<u>yag</u>	<u>gUlAs</u>		Please bring a glass of cold water with it, too.
<u>aw</u>	<u>e</u>	<u>sardAm</u>	<u>byArEn</u>		
<u>lutfan</u>	<u>Ura</u>	<u>bugOEh</u>			Please tell him/her.

lutfan	amrAe	sAfI	pAk
mEza	sAfI	kO	
lutfan	sAfIra	bushOi	
lutfan	I	kAlAra	amrAe
aw	e	dAgh	na shOi

Please dust the table with a clean dustcloth.

Please wash the dustcloth.

Please don't wash these clothes with (i.e., in) hot water.

6. guftan in the sense of "to say (to), tell" takes the indirect object (with the object marker, of course) of the one(s) being addressed.
7. Note with amrAe sAfI (with a dustcloth) that the object marker is not added to objects of prepositions (but only to those of verbs). (Cf. § 7-F-2.)
8. Object markers are not added to non-verbal members of compound verbs. So, sAfI kO (dust [it]), not sAfIra kO. However, when such words are used independently of verbs as their specific objects then the object marker is required. So, sAfIra bushOi (wash the dustcloth).
9. Although the usual Dari word order puts the verb last, this order may be changed for the sake of style or emphasis. So,

<u>burO,</u>	<u>bAZAr!</u>
--------------	---------------

Get going to the marketplace!

8-F

Useful imperative expressions

<u>bufarmAEn</u>	
<u>bubakhshEn</u>	
<u>bufarmAEn,</u>	<u>da sarwEs</u>
<u>besyAr</u>	<u>jAi as</u>
<u>bubakhshEn,</u>	<u>emrOz</u>
<u>ErOgrAm</u>	<u>na dArEm</u>
<u>bubakhshEn,</u>	<u>Ale maktUb-</u>
<u>etAn</u>	<u>paidA na mEsha</u>
<u>nOsh</u>	<u>e jAn kunEn</u>

Please, you first . . .

I'm sorry (or, please excuse, pardon) me.

Please (or, by all means), there is plenty of room on the bus.

I'm sorry, we don't have air letters (or, aerogrammes) today.

I'm sorry, your letter can't be located (or, found) just now.

Please eat (or, have something to eat).

1. Two of these forms are from verbs (farmUdan and bakhshIdan) not otherwise commonly used in speech.

2. bufarmAEn (please, you first . . .) is often said with the hand stretched out (as in gesturing) and may apply to any number of actions that the situation warrants; e.g., sit down, start eating. On the telephone it might mean something like "Go ahead (and speak)." (Cf. § 3-H-4.)
3. The verb farmUdan (to say, speak)--from which bufarmAEn comes--is too formal or polite to use with intimates. In other words, it does not occur with those whom we would address by tU but only with the plural form (shumA) or when being formal.
4. The verb bakhshIdan (to forgive, offer as a favor)--from which bubakhshEn comes--can also be used in turning down requests (e.g., of beggars) in the sense of, "Please forgive me for not doing what you want" (whether giving money or doing any other favor).
5. nOsh e jAn kunEn is a very formal or polite way of inviting people to start eating or to eat more. Cf. the English idiom, "Help yourself."

8-G

Summary of verb formations introduced in the first eight lessons

I n f i n i t i v e	Present tense (3.p.s.)	Imperative singular		Imperative plural	
		Aff.	Neg.	Aff.	Neg.
<u>Amadan</u> to come	<u>myAya</u>	<u>byA</u>	<u>nayA</u>	<u>byAEn</u>	<u>nayAEn</u>
<u>Awurdan</u> to bring	<u>myAra</u>	<u>byAr</u>	<u>nayAr</u>	<u>byArEn</u>	<u>nayArEn</u>
<u>bOrdan</u> to take, carry	<u>mEbara</u>	<u>bubar</u>	<u>nabar</u>	<u>bubarEn</u>	<u>nabarEn</u>
<u>bUdan</u> to be	as	<u>bAsh</u>	<u>nabAsh</u>	<u>bAshEn</u>	<u>nabAshEn</u>
<u>dAdan</u> to give	<u>mEta</u>	<u>bete</u>	<u>nate</u>	<u>betEn</u>	<u>nateEn</u>
<u>dAshtan</u> to have	<u>dAra</u>				
<u>dIdan</u> to see	<u>mIbIna</u>	<u>bIbI</u>	<u>nabI</u>	<u>bIbInEn</u>	<u>nabInEn</u>
<u>fAmIdan</u> to understand	<u>mEfAma</u>				
<u>guftan</u> to say	<u>mEga</u>	<u>bugO</u>	<u>nagO</u>	<u>bugOEn</u>	<u>nagOEn</u>
<u>kadan</u> to do	<u>mEkuna</u>	<u>(bu)kO</u>	<u>nakO</u>	<u>(bu)kunEn</u>	<u>nakunEn</u>
<u>kharIdan</u> to buy	<u>mEkhara</u>	<u>bekhar</u>	<u>nakhar</u>	<u>bekharEn</u>	<u>nakharEn</u>
<u>pUshIdan</u> to wear, put on	<u>mEpOsha</u>	<u>bupOsh</u>	<u>napOsh</u>	<u>bupOshEn</u>	<u>napOshEn</u>

I n f i n i t i v e		Present tense (3.p.s.)	Imperative singular		Imperative plural	
			Aff.	Neg.	Aff.	Neg.
<u>raftan</u>	to go	<u>mE</u> ra	<u>bu</u> r0	<u>na</u> r0	<u>bu</u> rEn	<u>na</u> rEn
<u>shudan</u>	to become	<u>mE</u> sha	sh0	<u>na</u> sh0	<u>sha</u> wEn	<u>na</u> shEn
<u>shunIdan</u>	to hear	<u>me</u> shnawa	<u>be</u> shnao	<u>na</u> shnao	<u>be</u> shnawEn	<u>na</u> shnawEn
<u>shushtan</u>	to wash	<u>mE</u> shOya	<u>bu</u> sh0i	<u>na</u> sh0i	<u>bu</u> sh0En	<u>na</u> sh0En

1. The examples given for the present tense are in the third person singular (so, he/she/it) while those given for the imperatives are in the second person (you), whether singular or plural.
2. The imperatives of dAshtan (to have) and fAmIdan (to understand) are unlikely to occur in speech since logically they represent actions that cannot be commanded.

8-H

The vocative (or form of direct address)

<u>0</u>	bacha,	<u>In</u> ja	byA
<u>0</u>	bAba,	unja	<u>na</u> r0

O boy, come here!

O old man, don't go there!

1. When calling another person, the interjection "O" may be prefixed just before his/her name or designation, although it is more common just to use a person's name alone in calling him/her.
2. This form of direct address (with "O") is not too commonly used except for servants or those who are regarded as subservient (even if not one's personal servant)--in other words, menials--and for old people (in a condescending sort of way). The frequent use by Afghans of "0 bacha!" for adults not related to them formally as servants (and often even unknown to them by name) is similar to the informal (and somewhat rude) expression in English, "Hey, you . . . "

8-I

Vocabulary for Lesson Eight

<u>afta</u>	week
<u>amrAe</u>	with, along with (synonymous with <u>katI</u>)
<u>AsAn</u>	easy
<u>bAba</u>	old man (as a title of respect or condescension); "Daddy" (used by children for their fathers)

<u>bAd</u>	later, afterwards
<u>bare</u>	for
<u>bare chI?</u>	Why? What for?
<u>bas</u>	enough, sufficient, plenty
<u>bOrdan</u>	to carry, bear, take (from one place to another) [pres., <u>mEbara</u> ; impv., <u>bubar</u>]
<u>bubakhshEn</u>	Excuse me; pardon me; I'm sorry
<u>bufarmAEen</u>	Please, you first . . . (in deference)
<u>dafa</u>	time, occasion (in combination rather than alone)
<u>dAgh</u>	(very) hot
<u>dOst</u>	friend (formal, conventional)
<u>em-</u>	to-, this- (a prefix with time words like <u>dafa</u> , <u>rOz</u> , <u>sAl</u> , <u>shao</u>)
<u>ErOgrAm</u>	aerogramme, air letter
<u>fAmIdan</u>	to know, understand [pres., <u>mEfAma</u>]
<u>guftan</u>	to say; to call (something by a name), tell, ask [pres., <u>mEga</u> ; impv. <u>bugO</u>]
<u>gul kadan</u>	to put out, turn off, extinguish, erase; to bloom, blossom (of plants)
<u>katI</u>	with, along with (synonymous with <u>amrAe</u>)
<u>khalAs kadan</u>	to finish, complete
<u>kOmak kadan</u>	to help, aid, assist
<u>kOshesh kadan</u>	to try, attempt
<u>lutfan</u>	please, kindly . . . (with the imperative)
<u>mA</u>	month
<u>mushkel</u>	difficult, hard
<u>nAn e chAsht</u>	lunch (lit., noon-meal)
<u>nao</u>	new

nOsh e <u>jAn</u> (kunEn)	(Please) have something to eat; help yourself
O!	O . . . ! (occasionally used in calling people)
paidA shudan	to be found, located, available
pas	back; again; slow (of a clock or watch); afterwards
rafIq	friend (close, personal); friendly
rAjEba	about, concerning, with regard to
rastUrAn	restaurant
sAfI	dustcloth
sAl	year
sard	cold
sarwEs	bus
shao	night; evening (especially, when constructed with the following day [and ezAfI])
shIr	milk
shunIdan	to hear, listen to [pres., <u>meshnawa</u> ; impvs., <u>beshnao</u> , <u>beshnawEn</u>]
telefUn kadan	to telephone, call (by telephone)

Exercises for Lesson Eight

(to be written as well as practiced orally with the teacher)

Exercise 68 - Use amrAe or bare to complete these sentences.

1. muallem sAeb emshao m kOmak mEkuna
2. Ashpaz nAn chAyAm myAra
3. yak pao kachAlU emshao bas as
4. Ashpaz shumA chAi myAra
5. U ketAb shAn mushkel nEs
6. yag dOstesh sh myAra

7. ma tAn ErOgrAm mEkharum
8. chI az qandAr myAya?
9. luftan, fardA m telefUn kunEn
10. I kAr t AsAn as
11. Ale shAn na rEn
12. shumA du rOz estAlef mErEn?

Exercise 69 -- Use katI or raJEba to complete these sentences.

1. chAi chI myAra?
2. khAnE nao chI mEgan?
3. shumA mOtar chI mEfAmEn?
4. kI shAr mErEn?
5. padar O mAdarem qandAr mErum
6. I chaokyAra mEz unja bubar
7. I chIz Ech na mEfAma.
8. mA O shumA rafiqem mErEm.
9. lutfan, Ura aw e sard bushOEn
10. kullaem Ech chIz na gOEn!
11. aolAdaeshAn shAn kOmek mEkunan

Exercise 70 - Substitute each of the words or phrases given below for the appropriate word in the sentence, rafiqesh emrOz myAya.

E.g., fardA rafiqesh fardA myAya

- | | | |
|-------------------|------------------------|------------------|
| 1. <u>ar</u> afta | 4. <u>emsAl</u> | 7. <u>Ale</u> |
| 2. <u>emshao</u> | 5. da <u>I</u> afta | 8. <u>ar</u> sAl |
| 3. <u>ar</u> mA | 6. <u>panj</u> rOz bAd | 9. <u>emdafa</u> |

Exercise 71 - Substitute the following words for the underscored word in the sentence, emrOz gul-khAnara khalAs mEkunum.

1. sAfI 2. tayAr 3. pAk 4. tabdII 5. jArU

Exercise 72 - Substitute each of the following compound verbs for the under-scored words in the sentence, da I rOzA besyAr kOshesh mEkunan.

1. kOmak mEkuna 3. telefUn mEkunum 5. kAr mEkunI?
2. khao mEkunum 4. neweshta mEkunEn?

Exercise 73 - Use the verbs shown in () in the following sentences to make them commands or prohibitions in the singular form. E.g., maktUba neweshta (kadan). maktUba neweshta kO

1. kelkIna basta (kadan)
2. Ale baresh telefUn (na kadan)
3. emshao (Amadan)
4. fardA (na Amadan)
5. rAjEba I maktUb Ech chIz (na guftan)
6. paisara Ura (na dAdan)
7. du sAt bAd pas (Amadan)
8. kAlA e rangara amrAe aw e dAgH (na shushtan)
9. az Inja cherAgha (na bOrdan)
10. chAya Inja (na Awurdan)

Exercise 74 - Repeat each of the sentences in Exercise 73 with lutfan added.

Exercise 75 - Use the verbs shown in () in the following sentences to make them commands or prohibitions in the plural form. E.g., khAnara jArU (kadan) khAnara jArU kunEn

1. az bAZAr yak qulf e kalAn (Awurdan)
2. Ira shAr (bOrdan)
3. yag gElAs ao (dAdan)
4. gulA e maghbUla (dIdan)

5. bare shAgerdA (na Awurdan)
6. emrOz kachAlU (na kharIdan)
7. az bAzAr gOgerdAm (kharIdan)
8. emdafa (na raftan)
9. Ale zarfAra (shushtan)
10. emshao nAn tayAr (na kadan)

Exercise 76 - Repeat each of the sentences in Exercise 75 with lutfan added.

Exercise 77 - Reverse the subject and object in the following sentences. E.g.,
 ma Ura paisa mEtum. U mara paisa mEta

1. shumA Ura chI mEgEn?
2. ma rafiqema fardA mIbInum
3. unA mARA da mOtar mEbaran
4. U barem telefUn mEkuna
5. AghA e karIm tura paisa mEta?
6. bAbA unARA emrOz na mIbIna
7. U tura chI mEga?
8. bachA mara gul mEtan
9. shumA unARA da dE mEbarEn?
10. dAktor sAeb emshao mara mIbIna

LESSON NINE

9-A

Pronunciation drill (to be done only with the teacher)

1. Contrasting /g/ and /kh/

U gao as (That's a cow)

U khao as (He/she is asleep)

gum nEs (He/she/it is not lost)

khum nEs (It's not a clay storage container)

khum az kAbul gum shuda (They don't use clay storage containers in
Kabul anymore)

chI gap shud? (What happened?)

chI khap shud? (What became quiet?)

chera khap khap gap mEzanEn? (Why are you talking so quietly?)

Ale wakht e guftan nEs (This is not the time to talk)

Ale wakht e khuftan nEs (This is not the time to sleep)

I sang rag dAra (This stone has veins in it)

I sang rakh dAra (This stone has sharp corners)

bIgIra talafuz kunEn (Pronounce 'bIgI' [take it])

bIkhIra talafuz kunEn (Pronounce 'bIkhI' [absolutely])

bIkhI bIgIresh (Take it 'for good')

2. Contrasting /u/ and /U/

bUra bug0 (Say 'bUra' [sugar])

bura bug0 (Say 'bura' [he/she may go])

shAyad pas e bUra bura (Perhaps he/she might go for sugar)

sur na bUd (It wasn't in tune)

sUr na bUd (It wasn't a 'sUr' [golden-brown sheepskin])

pul na dAsht (There wasn't a bridge)

pUl na dAsht (He/she didn't have [any] money)

3. Illustrating /rgh/

gOshT e murgh besyAr mazadAr as (Chicken meat is very tasty)

9-B

fardA (tomorrow) in combination with other time words

fardA-shao rafIqAenA myAyan	<u>Tomorrow night</u> our friends are coming.
pas-fardA Ura myArum	I will bring (or, am bringing) it the <u>day after tomorrow</u> .
Ura pas-fardA myArum	I will bring (or, am bringing) it the <u>day after tomorrow</u> .

9-C

Aenda (coming, future) alone and as a suffix (next-)

Aenda etu(r) na mEkunum	I won't do it this way in the <u>future</u> .
sAl e Aenda wA jarmanI mEran	They're going to Germany <u>next year</u> .
aftE Aenda barem telefUn	He/she will phone me <u>next week</u> .
mEkuna	
mA e Aenda pArsaletAn az	Is your parcel coming from Iran
IrAn myAya?	<u>next month</u> ?

1. Aenda when used alone means "in the future," "after this."
2. As a suffix -Aenda is used in conjunction with ezAfI and general time words like afta (week), mA (month) and sAl (year) in the sense of "next-."
3. The final -r- in etur (as also in utur) is frequently not pronounced. Hence, it is shown in parentheses.

9-D

The cardinal numbers from 20 onward

20 ٢٠	21 ٢١	50 ٥٠	54 ٥٤ ٥٢
bIst	bIst O <u>yak</u>	pInjA (<u>penjA</u>)	pInjA O <u>chAr</u>
30 ٣٠	32 ٣٢	60 ٦٠	65 ٦٥
sI	sI O <u>dU</u>	shast	shast O <u>pani</u>
40 ٤٠ ٢٠	43 ٤٣ ٢٣	70 ٧٠	76 ٧٦
chel	chel O <u>sE</u>	aftAd	aftAd O <u>shash</u>

80 ۸۰	87 ۸۷
ashtAd	ashtAd 0 aft
90 ۹۰	98 ۹۸
nawad	nawad 0 asht
100 ۱۰۰	109 ۱۰۹
sad	yak sad 0 nO

200 ۲۰۰	210 ۲۱۰
du sad	du sad 0 da
1,000 ۱۰۰۰	3,011 ۳۰۱۱
(H)azAr	sE (H)azAr 0 yAzda
1,000,000 ۱۰۰۰۰۰۰	4,000,012 ۴۰۰۰۰۰۱۲
melyUn	chAr melyUn 0 duwAzda

1. The Dari number system from 20 onward is consistent and follows generally the pattern of English, with "0" (and) taking the place of the hyphen in English. Thus, twenty-one becomes twenty and one, twenty-two twenty and two, etc.
2. A long number, e.g., 22,531, would be read "bist 0 du (H)azAr 0 panj sad 0 si 0 yak," the 0 being repeated as often as necessary to join the segments. The 0 may be pronounced as -u- (in other words, interchanged with it), especially when speaking numbers quickly.
3. When the plural marker -A is added to sad (hundred) and (H)azAr (thousand)--i.e., sadA, (H)azArA--it conveys indefinite plurality, hundreds, thousands.

9-E

The words ba (in, on, to), mesl e (like), -wArI (like) and tA (up to, until)

ba utu(r) kAr delchaspI na dArum
maskE khUb ba mushkel paidA mEsha
ba khyAlem I qesm gula khush
na mEkuna
Ira ba darI chI mEgan?
ba dAktor bugOEn
burO ba khair

I'm not interested in that kind work.

Good butter is hard to find (lit., found with difficulty).

I don't think he/she will choose this kind of flower.

What do they call this in Dari?

Tell the doctor.

Go with [God's] mercy.

1. The preposition ba is used in a great variety of ways and has to be translated according to context. Thus, "in, on, to, by, with," etc., are all possibilities.
2. The final -a of maska (butter) followed by ezAfI (-e-) becomes -E.

3. The ba-khyAlem phrase above is very idiomatic to indicate one's own idea about something. It is literally "in my thought" but means "I think," "My idea is . . . ," etc. The first person singular form of the possessive adjective (-em) generally occurs in this idiom although one may on occasion hear it with other persons.

4. In the idiom "What do they call this in Dari?" (cf. § 8-B-8) the preposition da is interchangeable with ba.

5. With guftan (to say, tell) bare (for) is frequently used instead of ba (to). So, here it is also possible to say,

bare dAktor bugOEn

Tell the doctor.

Likewise, the simple object marker can be used with guftan (as in § 8-E-5, 6) without a preposition. So,

dAktara bugOEn

Tell the doctor.

The construction with the object marker is somewhat less formal than those with the prepositions.

6. ba in ba-khair is actually derived from bA (with)--cf. bAmAn e khudA--a different word from ba (in, on). It is only in pronunciation that they sound alike.

7. ba-khair may be heard in combination with kujA amongst friends or acquaintances, as

kujA ba khair?

Where are you going?

Such a question implies a wish for the well-being and safety of the one being inquired of.

shumA mesl e afghAnA darI

gap mEzanEn

You speak Dari like the Afghans.

mEz e nawAm mesl e mEz e

kOna pakhch as

The new table is also low like the old one.

mesl e az U kAr kO

Work as he/she does (i.e., like him/her).

I mesl e az U s

This is like that (one).

8. "Afghan" (and not "Afghani") is used of the people of this land.

9. For the names of foreign languages as they are pronounced in Dari see Appendix II.

10. When gap zadan (to speak, talk) is used with the person being addressed, it takes the preposition amrAe (or, katI). So,

amrAe dAktor gap bezanEn	Talk with the doctor.
--------------------------	-----------------------

11. If a noun is used in one member of the comparison it is normal to include it in the other for balance, even though in the English rendering the second occurrence of the noun may be replaced with the word "one."
12. Sometimes az is inserted after mesl e when immediately followed by a vowel sound in isolation. This appears to be added only for ease of pronunciation to make the transition from the -e- of mesl e to the following vowel (e.g., U, I) smoother. Cf. the "n" sound (in English) inserted between two vowel sounds; thus, "an egg," not "a egg."

U wArI kAr kO	Do it <u>like</u> him/her (= as he/she does).
U padaresh wArI s	He/she looks (or, acts; lit., is) <u>like</u> his/her father.
I kAghaz shIr wArI safEd as	This paper is white <u>like</u> milk (i.e., milkish [colored]).
(mesl e) gul wArI kAr	He/she does very nice work (lit., works <u>like</u> a flower).
mEkuna	
I hUt khurd wArI s	This/those shoe(s) is/are a little bit small (= smallish).
U kulla kam wArI kaAn as	That hat is a bit large.

13. -wArI (sometimes shortened to -wAre) as a suffix (or postposition) may be attached to nouns, pronouns and adjectives to indicate a comparison meaning "like, as" or even "-ish" (in the sense of "somewhat," "sort of").
14. Sometimes mesl e and wArI are both used even though either one by itself indicates that a comparison is being made.

tA panj baja (da) khAna bAsh	Stay (lit., be) at home <u>until</u> five o'clock.
tA afTE Aenda kAreta khalAs kO	Finish your work <u>by</u> next week.
sarwEs az kAbul tA qandAr mEra	The bus goes from Kabul to Kandahar.

15. The use of da (at) with khAna (home) is optional. In other words, in some contexts khAna by itself may mean "at home." (Cf. § 6-C-5, 6-F.)
16. tA as used in the above sentences is both temporal and local, referring

to both time and place.

17. baja (o'clock) is introduced here, but a more detailed explanation of ways of telling time follows in Lesson 12-H.

9-F

dAna and tA (piece, item) used with numbers

mesl e I ketAb chel 0	I need 44 books like this one.
chAr dAna kAr dArum	
lutfan du tA az I bete	Please give (me) two of (= like) these.
bubakhshEn, az U na dArum	I'm sorry, I don't have that kind (lit., of [= like] those).
bare shumA da dAna kAfI s?	Are ten enough for you?
panj tAesh az mA s	Five of them (lit., of it) are ours.
yakIsha Inja bAnEn	Put one of them (lit., of it) here.

- dAna and tA are used interchangeably for "pieces, items." They are not usually translatable since they refer quantitatively to the number of "items" already mentioned. Moreover, they need not always be used, if the reference is clear.
- dAna and tA are normally used for inanimate objects, although tA (but not dAna) may occasionally be heard for humans and animals. For example,

chand tA aolAd dArI?	How many children do you have?
sE tAesh dukhtar as	Three of them are girls.

On the last example--lit., three of it--see § 7-D-5.

- A third word, nafar (person, individual) is generally used for counting persons although, like dAna and tA, it too is optional. So,

da maktabemA chAr nafar	There are four teachers in our school.

muallem as	

- The phrase az I/U means literally "from this/that" and occurs idiomatically as we would use the expression "like this/that" (= of this/that sort or type), singling out certain kinds of items. This is to be distinguished from the etu(r)/utu(r) used in this lesson, sometimes rendered "like this/that", but more commonly equivalent to "in this/that way or manner."

5. yak (one) may be used with dAna but when it refers to tA it becomes yakI and the tA is not expressed. This is equivalent to "just one," "only one." (Cf. § 11-C-1.) The word yak tA is usually reserved by Afghans as an epithet for God, as "The One and Only."

9-G

The word chand (how many? how much? a few)

chand tAesha Inja mEmAnI?	How many of them will you leave here?
chand (dAna) beshqAb kAr as?	How many plates are needed?
yak chand (dAna) ErOgram	Give (me) a few aerogrammes.
betEn	
da khAna chand (tA) nOkar	How many servants do you have at (your) house?
dArEn?	
chand rOz mazAr mEran?	How many days are they going to Mazar for?
chand rOz mazAr mEran	They're going to Mazar for a few days.
chand baja myAya?	What time (lit., at how many o'clocks) is he/she coming?
numrE telefUnetAn chand as?	What is your telephone number?
chel 0 yag (H)azAr 0 du	41238.
sad 0 sI 0 asht	
da 0 panj chand mEsha?	How much are ten and five?
da 0 panj pAnzda mEsha	10 + 5 = 15.
da panj chand mEsha?	How much is ten times five?
da panj pInjA mEsha	10 x 5 = 50.

1. Because the word chand (sometimes pronounced without the final /d/, as chan) assumes plurality—even though an answer to it may be "one", or even "none"—its accompanying noun is not pluralized. (Cf. § 3-C-1.) So, chand beshqAb (not, beshqAbA), chand ErOgram (not, ErOgramA), chand nOkar (not, nOkarA) and chand rOz (not, rOza). It is used with things which can be counted.
2. chand is not only used interrogatively but also to indicate a small, indefinite number, "a few." The context (as here in the example with

Mazar) and a rise in the pitch of the voice--here with stress on chand or Mazar--indicate whether it is a question or an answer.

3. Another idiomatic way of expressing "a few" is with two consecutive numbers used without the connector "0". For example, du sE, sE chAr. Thus,

du sE rOz mazAr mEran	They're going to Mazar for a few days.
-----------------------	--

4. In the example above with "aerogrammes" the numeral yak (one) in the sense of an indefinite article is prefixed to the chand, making the idea of "a few" quite indefinite. This is the normal idiomatic way of asking for a quantity of things when the exact number is not too important. With some people yak is unconsciously prefixed to numbers (as, yag dA dAna), even though it adds nothing to the meaning. (Cf. such English speech mannerisms as "you know," "would you believe it?" without which the meaning is perfectly clear.)
5. A similar indefiniteness as to number may also be expressed in higher quantities with two consecutive digits, even though these digits are part of a larger number; thus, pInjA shast (50 or 60), sE chAr sad (three or four hundred). As in # 3 above, the connector "0" is omitted for this idiom of "indefiniteness."
6. With the word numra (number) the proper way to ask "what number" is with chand (how much), not with chI (what).
7. In giving telephone numbers it is customary to group the digits in thousands, hundreds and tens. Whereas in English we would say 4-1-2-3-8 in Dari it is read either as chel 0 yag (H)azAr 0 du sad 0 sI 0 asht (forty-one thousand and two hundred and thirty-eight) or as chel 0 yag -- du sad 0 sI 0 asht (omitting the word [H]azAr).
8. mEsha (becomes) is the Dari idiom for expressing the mathematical formula: "equals" or "makes." Note from the examples given that when the two numbers are joined with the connector "0", addition is called for, but that when the two numbers merely follow each other with no connector, then multiplication is required.

9-H

The question word chI (what?) in compounds

chI wakht nAn e shao	When will supper be ready?

tayAr mEsha?	

chI wakht az bAzAr pas	When are they returning from the marketplace?

myAyan?	

chI qesm kAghaz kAr dArEn?	What kind of paper do you need?

da aolItAn chI qesm ----- gul dArEn?	What kind of flowers do you have in your yard?
mA mErEm -- unA chetOr?	We're going -- How about them?
shumA chetOr maktab mErEn? ----- -- da/ba sarvEs	How do you go to school? By bus.
chetOr astI?	How are you?
bare chI emrOz daftar ----- basta s?	Why is the office closed today?
shumA bare chI deq astEn?	Why are you sad?
U (nafar) chIt(An) mEsha? ----- Echem(Δ) na mEsha	What relationship is that person to you? He/she isn't related to me (/us) at all.

1. For the expression unA chetOr? see the note in § 8-D-1.
2. The question about the relationship of a person is literally, That (person [or, he/she]) will be your what? In other words, How is he/she related to you? Sometimes bUdan (= as) may be heard instead of shudan (= mEsha), but the latter is much more common. See Appendix III for a chart of relationships as used in Dari.

9-I

Common words for direction (left, right, straight ahead, towards)

pOsta-khAna (da) (taraf e) ----- dest e chapetAn as	The post office is on your <u>left</u> .
(taraf e) dest e rAst begardEn	Turn to the <u>right</u> .
lutfan, rU ba rU burEn	Please go <u>straight ahead</u> .

1. dest e chap and dest e rAs(t) literally mean "left hand" and "right hand" respectively, dest (sometimes also dast) being the word for "hand." The final /t/ of rAst may sometimes not be pronounced.
2. The adjective rAst (right) has many meanings. It may mean "straight" as opposed to "crooked," "right" as opposed to "left" and also "right" in the sense of "correct, true." In the sense of "correct" it is commonly used with guftan (to say) to convey one's agreement. So,

rAst mEgEn

That's right (or, You're right; or, I agree with you).

3. taraf e is a preposition meaning "toward, towards, in the direction of," and is given in parentheses to show that it need not always occur.
4. Sometimes da (to, in, at) is used with these direction words although they are commonly found alone as well.

9-J

The word bAz (then, again, back)

utAq e nAna sAfI kO --
bAz bAzAr burO
fardA bAz byAEEn
lutfan, bAz bugOEn

Dust the dining room; then go to the marketplace.

Come back tomorrow.

Please say it again (i.e., once more).

9-K

Vocabulary for Lesson Nine

Aenda	coming, future, in the future; next-
afghAn	a citizen or inhabitant of Afghanistan
aftAd	seventy (70 - ٧٠)
ashtAd	eighty (80 - ٨٠)
az I/U	like this/that (kind or type)
(H)azAr	thousand (1,000 - ١٠٠٠)
ba	in, on, to, by, with
ba-khair	with (God's) mercy (or, care)
ba-khyAl	(I/you/we [depending on the subject]) think . . .
baJa	o'clock; hour
bAz	again, once more; back; then
chan(d)	how many? how much? a few
chap	left (opposite of "right")
chel	forty (40 - ٤٠)
chI wakht?	what time; when?

<u>dAna</u>	item, piece (synonymous with <u>tA</u> , and generally untranslatable)
<u>darI</u>	Afghan Persian (an official language of Afghanistan)
<u>delchaspI</u>	interest
<u>deq</u>	sad, unhappy; homesick; sorry
<u>dest (dast)</u>	hand
<u>etu(r)</u>	this way; in this manner
<u>gap zadan</u>	to talk, speak [pres., g. <u>mEzana</u> ; (impv.,) g. <u>bezan</u>]
<u>gashtan</u>	to turn [pres., <u>mEgarda</u> ; impv., <u>begard</u>]
<u>kAfI</u>	enough, sufficient
<u>khush kadan</u>	to choose, prefer
<u>kOna</u>	old (of things)
<u>mAndan</u>	to put, place, let, leave [pres., <u>mEmAna</u> ; impv., <u>bAn</u>]
<u>maska</u>	butter
<u>melyUn</u>	million (1,000,000 - ۱۰۰۰۰۰۰)
<u>mesl e</u>	like, similar to
<u>nAn e shao</u>	supper, dinner (lit., the night meal)
<u>nawad</u>	ninety (90 - ۹۰)
<u>numra</u>	number
<u>pakhch (pakhsh)</u>	low
<u>pArsal</u>	parcel, package
<u>pInjA (penjA)</u>	fifty (50 - ۵۰)
<u>qesm</u>	kind, sort, type
<u>rAs(t)</u>	true, correct, straight; right (opp. of "left")
<u>rU ba rU</u>	straight ahead
<u>sad</u>	hundred (100 - ۱۰۰)

shast	sixty (60 - ٦٠)
sI	thirty (30 - ٣٠)
tA	item, piece (synonymous with dAnā and generally untranslatable); until, to, up to; by (temporal)
taraf e	toward, towards, in the direction of
tayAr	ready, prepared
utu(r)	that way; in that manner
-wArI (-wArē)	like, as; -ish, somewhat, sort of (a postposition)

Exercises for Lesson Nine

(to be written as well as practiced orally with the teacher)

Exercise 78 - Replace progressively each of the words or phrases below for the appropriate word(s) in the sentence: sarwEs fardA mEra. E.g.,
aftE Aenda sarwEs aftE Aenda mEra
.....

- | | | |
|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. fardA-shao | 4. muallememA | 7. sAl e Aenda |
| 2. pas-fardA | 5. myAya | 8. da I afta |
| 3. na | 6. mA e Aenda | 9. dAktor |

Exercise 79 - Substitute each of the following for the underscored words in the sentence: I ketAb bIst O chAr safA dArA. E.g., aftAd O panj
.....
I ketAb aftAd O panj safA dArA
.....

- | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. pInjA O aft | 4. sI O sE | 7. yak sad O chel O chAr |
| 2. nawad O sE | 5. ashtAd O asht | 8. sE sad O duwAzda |
| 3. chel O shash | 6. shast O nO | 9. panj sad O aftAd O asht
(١٥٠) |

Exercise 80 - Use ba, mesl e, -wArI or tA in the following sentences.

E.g., burO khair burO ba khair
.....

- muallemetAn gap bezanEn
- chAr baja daftar astum
- ma kOshesh kunEn

4. ma kOshesh kunEn
5. I qesm kAr khush nEstum
6. I ketAb delchaspI dArI?
7. pas-fardA na rEn
8. sagetAn sagemA s
9. sagetAn sagemA s
10. I kArA ma bAnEn!
11. I qesm sAt mushkel yAf(t) mEsha
12. U rastUrAn az I nEs
13. I dawa U dawa s
14. az I yak qalam kAr dArum
15. I sarwEs jelALAbAd na mEra
16. khyAlem az I na dArA
17. afTE Aenda kAr na dArum

Exercise 81 - Use dAna in each of the following sentences.

1. mesl e I qalam panj kArem as
2. bare muallemetAn duwAzda kAFI s?
3. lutfan, asht ErOgrAm betEn
4. chand gul mEkharEn?
5. nOkarash da chaokI myAra
6. lutfan, shash az I qesm betEn
7. du Esh az mA s
8. sE Esh az unA s
9. pAnzda chaokI kAr dAran
10. chAr kAFI nEs

Exercise 82 - Repeat each of the sentences in Exercise 81 with tA instead of dAna.

Exercise 83 - Use chand in each of the following sentences and answer briefly in your own words those which are questions.

1. baja kAretAn khalAs mEsha?
2. brAdaretAn aolAd dAra?
3. yak dAna pensel mEkharum.
4. tAesha mara mEtEn?
5. I ketAb safa dAra?
6. dU 0 aft mEsha?
7. dU aft mEsha?
8. numrE telefUnetAn as?
9. bare rOz paghmAn mEra?
10. mAam rOz paghmAn mErum

Exercise 84 - Complete the following sentences with the appropriate present tense forms of the verbs given for each in (). E.g., ba khyAlem U Ale khAna (na bUdan) ba khyAlem U Ale khAna nEs

1. ba khyAlem dAktor sAeb du sAt bAd (Amadan)
2. ba khyAlem daftar tA panj baja wAz (bUdan)
3. ba khyAlem I qesm kAghaz unja paidA (na shudan)
4. ba khyAlem nOkar emrOz kAr e aolIra khalAs (kadan)

Exercise 85 - Give the questions--using chI wakht, chI qesm or chetOr--for which the following statements are the answers. E.g., khUb astum, tashakur chetOr astEn?

1. ma ba mOtar shafA-khAna mErum
2. asht baja maktab mEran
3. unA yak khAnE besyAr kalAn dAran
4. da I rOzA ar qesm gul paidA mEsha

5. aft baja nAn e shao tayAr mEsha
6. kAghaz e safEd mEkharum
7. dAktar emshao myAya
8. I bad nEs

Exercise 86 - Replace successively each of the words or phrases below for the appropriate words in the sentence: taraf e dest e chap begardEn.
 E.g., na taraf e dest e chap na gardEn

- | | | |
|------------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1. dest e rAs(t) | 3. burEn | 5. rU ba rU |
| 2. begardEn | 4. dest e chap | 6. na |

Exercise 87 - Complete the following with az I or az U.

- | | |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. na dArum | 4. da bAzAr as? |
| 2. paidA na mEsha | 5. mEkharEn? |
| 3. byAr | |

Exercise 88 - Use mesl e, -wArI, az I/U, etur or utur as required in order to complete the following sentences.

1. qesm yAf(t) na mEsha
2. kAr na kunEn
3. kAr kO
4. dOstem muallem gap mEzana
5. muallem gap mEzana
6. bugOEn
7. chand dAna kAr dArEn?
8. mEz O chaokyAra sAfI kO
9. Adam e khUb na mEkuna
10. U bugOEn

LESSON TEN

10-A

Pronunciation drill (to be done only with the teacher)

1. Contrasting /q/ and /kh/

cheqa? (How much?)

chekha! (Go away; or, get out [--said to a dog])

U qAr as (He/she is angry)

U khAr as (It's a thorn [or, bramble])

U qap shud (It was caught)

U khap shud (He/she became quiet)

Ura shaq kO' (Slice it)

Ura shakh kO' (Tighten it)

darakht laq shuda (The tree became shaky [or, loose])

darakht lakh shuda (The tree became bare)

Ura luq mEgan (They call it 'luq' [a throbbing headache])

Ura lukh mEgan (They call it 'lukh' [reed-powder])

ba khyAlem qao as (I think it's 'qao' [whole-lamb kabob])

ba khyAlem khao as (I think he/she is asleep)

2. Contrasting /e/ and /u/

eqa bas as (This much is enough)

uqa bas as (That much is enough)

etu(r) na kunEn (Don't do it this way)

utu(r) na kunEn (Don't do it that way)

3. Illustrating /khs/

byAdarem khAnE shakhsI dAra (My brother has [= owns] his own house)

U shakhs rakhsa khush dAra (That person likes dancing)

10-B

mEbAsha as a special present tense form of bUdan (to be)

tA chand baja khAna mEbAshEn?	How long will you be at home?
ma ar rOz Inja na mEbAshum	I'm not here every day.
emrOz da daftar mEbAsha?	Will he/she be at the office today?
chand sAl da afghAnestAn ----- mEbAshEn?	How long (i.e., for how many years) will you be in Afghanistan?

1. In addition to the usual present tense form astum (I am), etc., the verb bUdan (to be) has a special form, mEbAshum, etc., accented of course on the mE- syllable.
2. Because of the progressive prefix mE-, this form of the verb serves as both a kind of "habitual" tense and also as a future (since what is right now and continues to be automatically implies something future).
3. In all of the examples given above the simple present tense could also have been used; but the occurrence of this special form with mE- emphasizes the continuation of the state rather than the mere momentary mention of it.

(s)

10-C

Frequency words

estAlef amEsha awl e tAza dAra	Istalif <u>always</u> has fresh air (or, climate).
U amEsha khush as	He/she is <u>always</u> happy.
Adam e kArIgar umUman kAra zUt ----- khalAs mEkuna	A hard-working (i.e., industrious) person <u>usually</u> finishes (his) work quickly.
umUman chand baja daftar mIrI?	What time do you <u>usually</u> go to the office?
ma umUman nAn e dabal mEkharum	I <u>usually</u> buy western-style (i.e., "double," loaf-type) bread.
shumA yagAn dafa peshaoR mErEn?	Do you go to Peshawar <u>sometimes</u> (or, once in a while)?
yagAn wakht az U maghAza saodA ----- mEkharum	<u>Sometimes</u> (or, now and then) I shop (lit., buy supplies) at that store.
shumAra besyAr kam mIbInEm	We <u>seldom</u> see you.

U besyAr kam Inja myAya	He/she <u>seldom</u> comes here.
tU Ech wakht kulla na mEpOshI?	Don't you ever (= do you <u>never</u>) wear a hat?
I qesm qAlIn Ech wakht ----- arzAn na mEbAsha	This kind of rug (or, carpet) is <u>never</u> cheap.

1. Frequency words like the above and others introduced previously with ar (every)--such as ar rOz (daily, every day)--usually come in the sentence right after the subject (which should be mentioned unless it is included unambiguously in the verb).
2. awA (lit., air) is also used in the sense of climate or "weather."

10-D

Specific time words

ma ar rOz shash bajE sOb ----- az khao mEkhezum	I get up every day at six o'clock in the <u>morning</u> .
shumA chI wakht chAi-sOb(a) ----- mEkhurEn?	What time do you eat breakfast (lit., tea of the <u>morning</u>)?
tA chAsht pas myAyum	I'll be (lit., come) back by <u>noon</u> .
Ale tOp as	It's now <u>noon</u> .
teflA ar rOz plshIn khao ----- mEkunan	The children sleep every day in the <u>early afternoon</u> .
fardA plshIn byA	Come tomorrow in the <u>early afternoon</u> .
khAnumesh ar dIgar ----- bAzAr mEra	His wife goes to the marketplace every day in the <u>late afternoon</u> .
emrOz dIgar khAnEtAn myAyum	I'm coming to your house in the <u>late afternoon</u> today.

1. In the first example above the word baja (o'clock) is inflected to -E because of the following ezAfI (-e-), connecting it with sOb. It is literally "six o'clock of the morning."
2. While the noon and night meals are constructed with nAn + the appropriate time words (chAsht [rather than tOp] or shao), breakfast, being a "lighter" meal, is called "morning tea."

3. It should be noted that the verb khOrdan actually means "to consume by mouth" and is used for "eating," "drinking" and "taking" (e.g., dawA [medicine]), depending on the accompanying object.
4. The word tOp (ball, cannon) may refer either to a ball (such as a child plays with) or to the famous cannon in Kabul which is fired every day at exactly noon. Thus, the word tOp (cannon) has come to mean 12:00 o'clock noon in local Kabul usage.
5. chAsht is the usual word for "noon" and it, rather than tOp, is used in compounds (e.g., nAn e chAsht [lunch]).
6. Normally pIshIn and dIgar are used with words indicating the day of the afternoon being mentioned.
7. While emrOz sOb (today-morning) is common one may occasionally hear emsOb (this morning) and even less commonly emchAsht (this noon) and empIshIn (this afternoon).

10-E

The simple past tense

With bUdan (to be)

stem		subj.	S i n g u l a r		
1	bUd	+ {	um	= budum	I was
2			I	= budI	you were
3				= bUd	he/she/it was

				P l u r a l	
1	bUd	+ {	Em	= budEm	we were
2			En	= budEn	you were
3			an	= budan	they were

With kadan (to do, make ___)

stem		subj.	S i n g u l a r		
1	kad	+ {	um	= kadum	I did
2			I	= kadI	you did
3				= kad	he/she/it did

P l u r a l						
1	kad	}	+ {	Em	= <u>ka</u> dEm	we did
2				En	= <u>ka</u> dEn	you did
3				an	= <u>ka</u> dan	they did

- The simple past tense of verbs is formed regularly in the following way: when the -an ending is taken off of the infinitive of any verb the form remaining is the third person singular (= he/she/it) of the simple past tense. To this the personal endings are added to indicate the subject (cf. § 3-F), excepting that in this tense the third person singular personal ending is omitted (cf. § 3-F-2).
- Although the infinitive is accented on the final syllable, the accent moves forward one syllable in the past tense.
- While the third person singular form of the simple past tense of buDan is pronounced with a long vowel /U/ the remaining forms have the vowel shortened because of the following syllable; thus, /u/.
- The same rules about the agreement of the subject and the inclusion or omission of it are observed for the past tense as for the present tense of verbs. (Cf. 3-G-1, 6.)
- If the negative na occurs it is simply prefixed to the appropriate form of the verb and the accent is put on the na.

10-F

Statements, questions and negatives with the simple past tense

nAn e U rastUrAn kam-wArI	The food at that restaurant was a bit expensive.
----- qImat bUd	
mara yak sAt e qImatI dAd	He/she gave me a valuable watch.
I besyAr qImatI s lAken ma	It's very valuable but I bought it
----- arzAn kharIdum	cheap.
khush AmadEn!	Welcome!
khush shudum ke shumAra dIdum	I'm glad to see you.
yagAn shao ke wakht dAshtEn	Some evening when you have time come
----- khAnEmA byAEEn	to our house.
fAmIdI? -- bale, fAmIdum	Do you understand? Yes, I understand.

zarfAra az sar e mEz	Did you clear (lit., move back, remove the dishes from) the table?
pas kadEn?	
ba khyAlem (ke) khao bUd	I think (that) he/she was asleep.
kAlA cherk na bUd	The clothes weren't dirty.
emrOz Ech nAMad	He/she didn't come today at all (or, No one came today).
mA tA panj baja khAna	We didn't go home until five o'clock.
na raftEm	
chAinak besyAr qImat na bUd	The teapot wasn't too expensive.

1. kam-wArI is literally "like a little"; so, a little bit, somewhat, sort of.
2. The word qImat may be both an adjective as here (expensive) and a noun (cost, price [as in Lesson 11]). qImatI, also used here; means "valuable" and may be distinguished from qImat (the adjective) as "worth" or "value" is distinguished from actual "cost" or "price."
3. khush AmadEn! in the second person plural past tense is the idiomatic expression for "Welcome!" It means literally, "You came well (or, happy)," and is used not only to welcome a person upon his arrival but also (sometimes) as he is leaving to assure him of a renewed welcome whenever he can come back.
4. The sentence "khush shudum ke shumAra dIdum" is the standard form of greeting or response on the occasion of meeting someone. Note that the simple past tense is used; so, literally, "I became happy that I saw you," but rendered idiomatically in English as "I'm glad to see you."
5. ke (that) is one of the most common conjunctions occurring in Dari. Although frequently meaning "that"--and sometimes not even requiring to be translated--it may also mean "so that, when, because, since."
6. Note that Dari frequently uses the past tense when in English we would use the present. So, we have literally "I was glad that I saw . . .", "Some evening when you had time . . .", "Did you understand?" and "Yes, I understood."
7. Since yagAn (some) suggests that which happens occasionally (i.e., more than just once), the sentence here means "Come to our house now and then in the evenings when you have time."
8. Whereas in English we would use the present tense to inquire how well someone understands our meaning, in Dari the simple past tense is used.

Hence, not mEfAmI? (Do you understand?) but fAmIdI/fAmIdEn? (Did you understand?). The reply, "I understand," is also put in the past tense, as "I understood" (fAmIdum). Incidentally, this expression is very commonly used in conversation in the sense of "Do you follow me?" or "Are you getting my point?" Often as not, however, it is no more relevant than the repetitious (and almost unconscious) "You know" of some people's English speech.

9. The word cherk (dirty, soiled) suggests a gradual accumulation of dirt and is used especially for clothes. The general idea of "dirty" (unclean) is expressed in so many different ways that other appropriate words have to be learned in context.
10. When the negative na is combined with verbs like Amadan (to come) or Awurdan (to bring) the final vowel -a is influenced and lengthened by the initial long vowel of these verbs which in effect drops it out in favor of the long vowel. Thus, na + Amad = nAmad, na + Awurd = nAwurd.

10-G

The suffix -dAr, meaning possessor ("haver") of something

U Adam besyAr pUldAr as	That man is very rich.
bubakhshEn, ma dOkAndAr nEstum	Excuse me, I'm not the shopkeeper!
nAn e shumA amEsha mazadAr as	Your food is always tasty.

1. The -dAr suffix (from dAshtan, to have) indicates the possessor or haver of something specified in the word to which it is affixed.
2. The meanings of the words introduced here are literally: "haver of money" = rich, "haver of a shop" = shopkeeper, and "haver of taste" = tasty, delicious.
3. dOkAndAr may also be heard pronounced as dukAndAr.

10-H

Past time prefixes dI-, parI- and pAr (to show "last," "yester-")

dIrOz darsemA AsAn bUd	<u>Yesterday</u> our lesson was easy.
dIshao dafatan marIz shud	<u>Last night</u> he/she got suddenly ill.
parI-rOz jOr na budum	I didn't feel well the <u>day before yesterday</u> .
pAr-sAl yag dafAm jelAl-	<u>Last year</u> we didn't go to Jalalabad
AbAd na raftEm	even once.

tA pAr-sAl da Inja maktab ----- na dAshtEm
--

We didn't have a(ny) school here until
last year.

1. The above prefixes, though common, are limited in their use to the time words indicated. In other words, we cannot prefix dI- to other words such as week, month or year. sAl (year) has its own special prefix (pAr) plus (along with afta [week] and mA [month]) the additional special form for "last" mentioned in § 10-I, below.
2. The compounds with these prefixes may be treated as units and function as nouns after prepositions, as in the last example with tA (until).

10-I

The past-time words guzashta (past, last-) and pEsh (ago)

aftE guzashta marIz budum ----- lAken Ale jOr astum
mA e guzashta shAgerdA ----- kam budan
sAl e guzashta gula ----- besyAr bUd
chand afta pEsh IrAn raftan
chand rOz pEsh kerA e ----- khAnara baresh dAdum

Last week I was sick but now I am fine
 (lit., well).

There were less (i.e., few[er]) stu-
 dents last month.

Last year there were lots of flowers.

They went to Iran a few weeks ago.

I paid (lit., gave) him/her the house-
 rent a few days ago.

1. sAl e guzashta and pAr-sAl may be used interchangeably for "last year."
2. pEsh in the sense of "ago" may be used with any numbered time words; for example, yak sAl pEsh (a year ago), sE mA pEsh (three months ago).
3. Foreigners who do not wish to answer a commonly-put question about how much rent they pay can usually avoid it by mentioning that they do not personally pay it but that it is paid by their office or "project." So,

bubakhshEn, kerAesha ma na ----- mEtum - daftaremA mEta

Excuse me, I don't pay the (or, its) rent;
 our office pays (it).

10-J

ke as a relative pronoun, meaning "who, whom, which, that"

U Adam ke Amad kI bUd?

Who was the man who came?

U pArsala ke AwurdEn ----- az kI bUd?
qAlInAra ke dIdum besyAr ----- qImat bUd
U nafar ke marIz shud ----- rafiqetAn as?

Whose parcel did you bring? (Lit., That parcel which you brought, whose was it?)

The rugs (or, carpets) that I saw were very expensive.

Is the one who got sick a friend of yours?

1. Besides being a conjunction, ke (that) is also commonly used as a relative pronoun introducing subordinate clauses.
2. Although used here mainly to illustrate past tenses it may, of course, be found with any appropriate tense or mood, as required.

10-K

Vocabulary for Lesson Ten

amEsha	always
arzAn	cheap, inexpensive
awA	air, climate, weather
besyAr kam	seldom, rarely
chAi-sOb	breakfast
chAsht	noon, midday
cherk	dirty (esp., of clothes), soiled
dabal	thick
dafatan	suddenly
dars	lesson
dI-	yester-, last- (a prefix, combined with rOz [day] and shao [night])
dIgar	late afternoon
dOkAndAr (dukAndAr)	shopkeeper
Ech wakht	never, not ever

<u>guzashta</u>	past, last- (a suffix with time words; also, third person singular of <u>guzashtan</u> , in the sense of "after," used in telling time [cf. § 12-H])
<u>jOr</u>	well, healthy, fixed, repaired
<u>kam</u>	less, little, a few (repeated = "a little bit")
<u>kArIgar</u>	hard-working, industrious
<u>ke</u>	(conj.) that, when, so that, because, since; (rel. pron.) who, whom, which, that
<u>kerA</u>	rent
<u>khao</u>	sleep; (with <u>bUdan</u> , <u>shudan</u>) asleep
<u>khEstan</u>	to arise, get up [pres., <u>mEkhEza</u> ; impvs., <u>bekhe</u> , <u>bekhEzEn</u>]
<u>khOrdan</u>	to consume, partake of (by mouth); so, to eat, drink, take (with object expressed) [pres., <u>mEkhura</u> ; impvs., <u>bukhO</u> , <u>bukhurEn</u>]
<u>khush</u>	happy, pleasant
<u>khush AmadEn!</u>	Welcome!
<u>maghAza</u>	(department) <u>store</u> (larger than a <u>dOkAn</u> , shop)
<u>marIz</u>	(adj.) sick, ill; (noun) patient
<u>mazadAr</u>	tasty, delicious
<u>pAr-sAl</u>	last year
<u>parI-rOz</u>	the day before yesterday
<u>pas kadan</u>	to clear, take away, move back, remove
<u>pEsh</u>	ago; ahead, "fast" (of a clock or watch)
<u>pIshIn</u>	early afternoon
<u>pUl</u>	money; 1/100 of an Afghani
<u>pUldAr</u>	rich
<u>qAlIn</u>	rug, carpet
<u>qImat</u>	(adj.) expensive, costly; (noun) price, cost

qImatI	valuable; rising price(s), inflation
saodA	goods, supplies, shopping supplies, groceries
sOb	morning
tAza	fresh
tOp	ball; cannon; "noon" (in Kabul City)
umUman	usually, ordinarily
yagAn	some (an indefinite or unspecified number, quantity or degree)
zUt (zUd)	soon; fast, quickly (repeated = <u>very</u> fast)

Exercises for Lesson Ten

(to be written as well as practiced orally with the teacher)

Exercise 89 - Change each of the following verbs (now in the simple present tense of bUdan to the special (= habitual, futuristic) tense of bUdan.
E.g., tU ar rOz Inja stI? tU ar rOz Inja mEbAshI?
.....

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. dAktor sAeb fardA da shafA-khAna s | 4. AghA e rafIqI ar rOz Inja s |
| 2. dOkAndAr yagAn wakht da dOkAn nEs | 5. da I afta da daftar nEstum |
| 3. tA chand rOz da mazAr astEn? | 6. tA chand baja Inja stEn? |

Exercise 90 - Change the verbs in each sentence to the simple past tense.
E.g., U paisa dAra U paisa dAsht
.....

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 1. Ashpaz az sar e mEz zarfAra pas mEkuna? | 6. I dOkAn nAn e mazadAr dAra |
| 2. Adam e kArIgar besyAr kOshesh mEkuna | 7. asht baja az khao mEkhEzan |
| 3. bAresh yak qAlIn e qImatI mEta | 8. saodA e U dOkAn arzAn as |
| 4. az U maghAza saodA mEkharum | 9. dars e emrOz mushkel as |
| 5. tU chI wakht paghmAn mIrI? | 10. bAba jOr nEs |

Exercise 91 - Give the questions with kI, chI or chand baja (as required) for which the following statements are the answers. E.g., chAi khOrd.
chI khOrd?
.....

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1. brAdarem amrAem kOmak kad | 4. rafIQem dafatan jAlAlAbAd raft |
| 2. khAnumesh marIZ bUD | 5. AshpazeshAn baremA chAi Awurd |
| 3. masra Neh na guft | 6. barem yak pyAla qAWa Awurd |
| 7. nOkar dIrOz panj bajE shao kArA khalAs kad | |
| 8. shawaresh shash bajE shao az sar e kAr Amad | |

Exercise 92 - Change each of the following sentences to the simple past tense, substituting for both time words and verbs. E.g.,
 dukhtarem emrOz marIZ as dukhtarem dIrOz marIZ bUD

1. emsAl mOtar na mEkharEm
2. dOkAndAr da I afta maska na dArA
3. aolAdAemA da I mA maktab na mEran
4. dOstemA emshao bare nAn myAya
5. shumA emrOz wakht na dArEn?
6. nOkar Ale gulArA ba khAnE khAnum e mestar jAnsan mEbara
7. chAr rOz bAd kerA e khAnara mEtEm
8. emrOz kAlArA mEshOyun
9. sAl e Aenda landan mErum
10. aftE Aenda aolAdAemA az amrIkA myAyan

Exercise 93 - Turn the following affirmatives (whether statements or questions) into negatives. E.g., nAn e chAsht duwAzda baja tayAr shud
 nAn e chAsht duwAzda baja tayAr na shud

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 1. bachEsh aft baja maktab raft | 6. emrOz sOb shash baja az khao khEstum |
| 2. qAlIn besyAr qImat bUD | 7. shumA az unja saoda kharIdEn? |
| 3. (tU) Ura paisa dAdI? | 8. mA dIshao besyAr nAn khOrdEm |
| 4. U Adam besyAr pUldAr bUD | 9. shAgerdAem dIrOz da maktab budan |
| 5. emrOz dars dAshtEn? | 10. amshIra marIZArA da baja dId |

Exercise 94 - Replace progressively (making only one change at a time) each of

the words or phrases below for the appropriate words in the sentence, dIrOz dukhtarem marIz bUd. E.g., khush
dIrOz dukhtarem khush bUd
.....

- | | | |
|------------------|-----------|-------------|
| 1. parI-rOz | 4. marIz | 7. da kAbul |
| 2. deq | 5. jOr | 8. pAr-sAl |
| 3. aftE guzashta | 6. dIshao | 9. na |

Exercise 95 - Change the subject of the following sentences from the first person singular to the third person singular, making the verbs agree accordingly. E.g., yag rAdyO e arzAn kharIdum
..... yag rAdyO e arzAn kharId
.....

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| 1. nAn e dabal Awurdum | 6. emrOz bachARA maktab bOrdum |
| 2. kAlA e cherka shushtum | 7. aftE guzashta yak sAt e nao kharIdum |
| 3. panj bajE sOb az khao khEstum | 8. dIshao khAnE AghA e rafIqI raftum |
| 4. emrOz sOb chAi na khOrdum | 9. emrOz dIgar katIshAn kOmak kadum |
| 5. da amrIkA a(H)mada dIdum | 10. dIshao yAzda baja khao kadum |

Exercise 96 - Change the subject of the following sentences from the third person singular to the third person plural, making the verbs agree accordingly. E.g., pAr-sAl mazAr raft pAr-sAl mazAr raftan
.....

- | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. emrOz-chAsht nAn na khOrd | 6. mA e guzashta maktUba neweshta kad |
| 2. kelIra da anwArI na mAnd | 7. marIza parI-rOz shafA-khAna Awurd |
| 3. khAnE kOnara khush na kad | 8. dars e dIrOza ba mushkel fAmId |
| 4. chI guft? | 9. bUtA e arzAn na dAsht |
| 5. zUt jOr shud | 10. panj sAl pEsh pUldAr na bUd |

LESSON ELEVEN

11-A

Pronunciation drill (to be done only with the teacher)

1. Contrasting /g/ and /gh/

gao zad (The cow butted)
ghao zad (It barked)

2. Contrasting /q/ and /gh/

U qar as (He/she is angry)
U ghar as (That is a hole)

aftE Aenda qaos myAya ('Qaos' [the ninth month] starts next week)
aftE Aenda ghaos myAya ('Ghaos' [a person's name] comes next week)

bAcI bAghI nEs ('Baqi' [a person's name] is not rebellious)

3. Contrasting /a/ and /A/

tar na bUd (It wasn't damp)
tAr na bUd (There wasn't any thread)

khara dId (He/she saw the donkey)
khArA dId (He/she saw the thorn)

U zar dAra (He/she has money [i.e., is rich])
U zAr dAra (It is poisonous)

kar Amad (The deaf person came)
kAr Amad (It was useful)

shar chI mAaA dAra? (What does 'shar' mean? [evil])
shAr chI mAaA dAra? (What does 'shAr' mean? [city])

shar 0 shOr da shAr zyAt as (There is too much trouble and noise in the city)

sham da shAm rOshan mEsha (The candle is lit in the evening)

U kham as (He/she/it is bent over)
U khAm as (It's not ripe)

kAmem kam kam dard mEkuna (The roof of my mouth hurts a little bit)

I utAq nam na dAra (This room isn't damp)

I utAq nAm na dAra (This room doesn't have a name)

Ale bad nEs (Now it's not bad)

Ale bAd nEs (Now there's no wind)

mAnA e darI chI s? (What does 'darI' mean? [the Afghan Persian language])

mAnA e dArI chI s? (What does 'dArI' mean? [you have])

11-B

Cost or price

Inquiring

qImat e I chaparkat chand as?	How much is this bed?
qImat e I baizekel chand ----- afgnAnI mEsha?	How many Afghans will (the price of) this bicycle be?
I chand mEsha?	How much will this be?
(qImat e) Akheresh chand ----- mEsha?	What would its final price be?
U chand as?	How much is that?
da I roSA qImat e dAlar ----- chand as?	How much [in Afghans] is a dollar worth nowadays?
I bU't chand qImat dAra?	How much is this (pair of) shoe(s)?

1. The word qImat, learned previously as an adjective meaning "expensive," is also used as a noun in the sense of "cost" or "price." As such, it is constructed with chand (how many?) when inquiring about cost, since it is assumed that the price (in Afghans) is countable. (Cf. § 9-G-1.)
2. chand (how many? how much?) by itself can also be used to ask about price.
3. The questions above with mEsha (become, be) are used more in bargaining than in simply asking a price. mEsha implies that something has already been referred to or a price already quoted.
4. Akher (final, last) is frequently used (with the suffix as here) to mean the lowest price at which the shopkeeper will sell. However, "fixed prices" are becoming more and more common in Kabul and one must not ex-

pect to be able to bargain and obtain a "final price" on everything he wants.

5. In summary, the four usual ways of asking the cost of something are:
- I chand as?
 - chand afghAnI s?
 - qImatesh chand as?
 - chand qImat dAra?

Answering

qImat e U cherAgh yak sad

0 pInjA afghAnI s
shast 0 panj afghAnI

The price of that lamp is one hundred and fifty (150) Afghanis.

Sixty-five Afghanis.

6. A short reply to indicate the cost of something is commonly no more than the number alone with the word afghAnI (which is not pluralized [cf. § 3-C-1]).
7. The word afghAnI is the usual term applied by Afghans to the unit of currency in Afghanistan. Traces of the past, however, show up in some people (e.g., shopkeepers) who use rup(ey)a (rupee) interchangeably with afghAnI. So, here it might also be heard as shast 0 panj rup(ey)a.
8. The Afghani is divided into one hundred parts, each being called a pUl (which word also occurs in the general sense of "money" [cf. § 10-G-2]). Coins are issued in quarter (25 pUl), half (50 pUl), one, two and five Afghani denominations. Under the old system of reckoning, sometimes still heard in the marketplace, the quarter Afghani (or 25 pUl) coin was called a shAnzda-pULI (i.e., "16 puls") and the half Afghani (or 50 pUl) coin a yak-gerAn (i.e., "a qerAn" [cf. the English word "crown"]). In fact, one-and-a-half Afghanis is still usually referred to as sE qerAn (i.e., "three qerAn"s). The word pUl in the general sense of money might be heard in some such statement as

ma Ech pUl na dArum

I don't have any money (at all).

9. The word afghAnI (as a noun) refers to the unit of currency. Otherwise, it is treated as an adjective in construction with ezAfI, as nAn e afghAnI, "Afghan food."
10. Occasionally it is also heard as a synonym for the Pashto language in contrast to Dari; in other words, afghAnI, "the language of the Afghans."
11. An alternate pronunciation heard for afghAnI is aoghAnI.
12. As noted previously (in § 9-E-8) afghAnI should not be used as an adjective to describe the people of the land; they are Afghans rather than Afghanis.

11-C

The -I suffix to specify currency units

yag dUI bete
shumA (yag) daI dArEn?
ma Ech bIstI na dArum
U du (tA) pan(j)sadI dAra

Give me a two-Afghani coin.

Do you have a ten-Afghani note (or, bill)?

I don't have a single twenty-Afghani note.

He/she has two five-hundred-Afghani notes.

1. By adding the suffix -I to standard units of money (coins or paper) one can convey that particular denomination in the same way that we would use the number alone to refer to a unit of currency in English; as, "I have one five and two tens." This suffix can be added to two, five, ten, twenty, fifty, one hundred, five hundred and one thousand Afghani units of currency, but not to one (yak). So, dUI, panjI, daI, bIstI, pInjAI (penjAI), sadI, pan(j)sadI and (H)azArI.
2. As previously noted, sometimes the yak/yag (one, a) is omitted, the context alone being sufficient to convey the idea of "one."
3. The object marker is not used with the example with pan(j)sadI--not because of the number but--because specific five hundred Afghani notes are not in view but any two such notes. (Cf. § 7-F-4.)

11-D

Making change

pUl e syA dArI?
bubakhshEn, tanA yak
pan(j)sadI dArum --
maida na dArum
lutfan, Ira maida kunEn
I pInjAIra pUl e syA betEn

Do you have small change?

I'm sorry, I only have a five-hundred Afghani note -- I don't have change.

Please change this.

Give me change for this fifty-Afghani note.

1. The adjective syA (black)--presumably from the original "black"- [i.e., copper-] colored coins in circulation--is used in combination with pUl (money) to indicate small change. Today it is used for paper money as well as for coins.
2. The word maida, which literally means "broken" and is applied to small pieces of things, is also used as the normal word for change in paper (i.e., larger) money. Cf. the English, "Can you break (i.e., change) a ten-dollar bill?"

3. tanA (only, just) is frequently used in Dari to show some kind of limitation, as here and in the example:

U tanA shumAra kAr dAra

He/she only needs you (i.e., not someone else, too).

11-B

Quantity and size

(yag) du pao zardak 0

Give (me) two 'pao' of carrots and one 'pao' of onions.

yak pao pyAz bete

yak sEr bUra kAr dArum

I need a 'seer' of sugar.

(yag) bIst 0 panj dAna

We need twenty-five eggs.

tukhum kAr dArEm

lutfan, panj kIlO

Please give (me) five kilo(gram)s of rice.

berenj betEn

mesl e az I sE meter

I'll take three meters of cloth like this.

tekka nIGIrum

1. A pao, weighing slightly less than one pound (actually, .97 lb.), is 1/16 of a sEr (in the Kabul area).
2. A sEr, being 16 pao or slightly less than 16 pounds (actually, 15.6 lbs.), is a Kabul measure which is not to be confused with the sEr in India and Pakistan (which is only 1/8 as large). It furthermore needs to be distinguished from the sEr in Mazar e Sharif which is twice as large as the Kabul sEr and from the sEr in Kandahar and Herat which is only 1/64 as large as the Kabul sEr (and, in other words, is equal to 1/4 of a pao in Kabul). To summarize, 1/4 of a pao in Kabul is equal to a sEr in Kandahar and Herat while a sEr in Kabul is equal to 64 sEr in Kandahar and Herat and only half a sEr in Mazar e Sharif!! It is thus obvious that the measures used in Afghanistan have to be learned separately for each area. A table of "Measurements", particularly as used in the Kabul area (although in some cases applicable to the whole country) may be found in Appendix XII.
3. In addition to local Afghan measures the metric system is also used in Afghanistan. Cloth is sold by the meter--pronounced meter in contrast to nitar which is used for a measuring instrument of any sort--while distance is measured by the kilometer. The kilogram (= 2.2 lbs.) is also commonly used in the marketplace, and abbreviated kIlO.
4. greftan (to take) is also regularly used in the sense of "to buy."

11-F

The suffix -e to indicate "per" when applied to price or time

tukhum dAnE chand as?	How much are eggs apiece?
zardak pawe sE qerAn as	Carrots are three 'qerAn's (= Afs. 1½) per 'pao'.
gOsht e gao pawe chand as?	How much a 'pao' is beef?
gOsht e gOspand kIl0e	How much per 'kilo' is mutton?

chand as?	
I kEk pawe chand as?	How much a 'pao' is this (kind of) cake?
chOb sEre chand as?	How much is wood a 'seer'?
U tekka metere chand as?	How much is that cloth per meter?
I dawAra rOze sE dafa	Take this medicine three times a day.

bukhurEn	
shawe chand sAt khao	How many hours do you sleep a night?

mEkunEn?	
sAle yag dafa kAbul myAya	He/she comes to Kabul once a year.
mAe du dafa maktUb	He/she writes a letter twice a month.

neweshta mEkuna	

aftE dA sAt dars dArEm	We have lessons for ten hours a week.

1. The suffix -e is added to common words of measure, quantity or time to convey the idea of "per" (e.g., apiece, a pound, per meter, per day).
2. Note that eggs are sold by the piece in Afghanistan, not by the dozen. When asking for eggs it is better to use bUdan (to be) than dAshtan (to have); thus, tukhum ag? (Are there [any] eggs?) and to say you "need" (kar dAshtan) a certain number rather than asking the shopkeeper to "give" eggs, since tukhum dAdan may also mean "to lay eggs."
3. A Dari word darjan (usually translated "dozen") does not necessarily mean twelve. It may refer to a "bunch" or collection of small items (e.g., cups, saucers) in quantities of, say, six or twelve.
4. It is even possible, when needed, to attach this -e suffix to words which are not commonly used as measures; so, gElase (per glass), pyAle (per cup), beshqAbe (per plate).

11-G

Days of the week

English day	Day number	Afghan day	Day number
Saturday	7	shambE	1
Sunday	1	yakshambE	2
Monday	2	dushambE	3
Tuesday	3	sEshambE	4
Wednesday	4	chArshambE	5
Thursday	5	pan(j)shambE	6
Friday	6	jumma	7

- There are really only two basic words used by Afghans for the days of the week: shambE (Saturday, the first day) and jumma (Friday, the last day). All other days are numbered serially with shambE, as one-shambE, two-shambE, etc., up to five. Depending on the speaker's emphasis, the accent may fall on the number with shambE; thus, dushambE instead of dushambE. The /j/ of panj is frequently omitted in fast speech.
- Friday is the official and also religious holiday in Afghanistan. Government offices and many places of business close on Thursday afternoons as well as Fridays.

11-H

The use of weekdays in construction

emrOz chand shambE s?
rOz e shambE maktab mIRI?
I darsa rOz e chArshambE

tekrAr mEkunEm
rOz e dushambE amrAesh

gap mEzanum
rOz e chArshambE se(H)aten

khUp na bUd
shaw e jumma kujA raftEn?

What day is today?

Are you going to school on Saturday?We'll review this lesson on Wednesday.I'll talk with him/her on Monday.I didn't feel well (lit., my health wasn't good) on Wednesday.Where did you go Thursday night?

tA rOz e jumma saresh ----- feker mEkunum	I'll think about it until <u>Friday</u> .
dOkAndAr rOz e sEshambE ----- zardak na dAsht	The shopkeeper didn't have carrots on <u>Tuesday</u> .
rOz e yakshambE aqalan ----- chAr mEmAn myAya	At least four guests are coming on <u>Sunday</u> .
mArkEt rOzA e pan(j)- ----- shambEAm wAz mEbAsha	The market is open on <u>Thursdays</u> , too.
rOzA e yakshambE unUman ----- chand nafar (da) ----- kallIsA myAya?	How many people usually come to church on <u>Sundays</u> .
rOzA e jumma da I masjed ----- besyAr mardum myAyan	Many people come to this mosque on <u>Fridays</u> .

1. Days of the week are frequently constructed with the phrase rOz-e (lit., "day of," but = "on") or shaw-e (evening of), as the need may require, although rOz-e may be omitted if the context is clear.
2. chand (how much?) is commonly used in asking what day it is since days take their names from numbers prefixed to shambE; in other words, which--or, how much of a number is added to--shambE?
3. The word shaw (night, evening) is always constructed with the day which follows it. In other words, Thursday night would be expressed in Dari as shaw e jumma (lit., the evening of Friday) and Sunday night as shaw e dushambE (lit., the evening of [i.e., before] Monday. (Cf. the English use of "Christmas Eve" and "New Year's Eve", both referring to the evenings before the special day mentioned.)
4. By making "day" plural, as in rOzA, above, all days of that name are included; so, Thursdays, Fridays and Sundays.

11-I

Vocabulary for Lesson Eleven

afghAnI (aoghAnI)

(noun) Afghani (the unit of currency in Afghani-
stan); the Pashto language; (adj.) AfghanAkher

(noun) end; (adj.) final, last

<u>aqalan</u>	at least
<u>bAisekel</u>	bicycle
<u>berenj</u>	rice
<u>bUra</u>	(granulated) sugar
<u>chaparkat</u>	bed (western-style)
<u>chArshambE</u>	Wednesday
<u>chOb</u>	wood
<u>dAlar</u>	dollar
<u>darjan</u>	bunch, "dozen" (6, 12), batch
<u>dushambE</u>	Monday
<u>-e</u>	per, a- (a suffix, for price or time)
<u>feker kadan</u>	to consider, think
<u>gOsht e gao</u>	beef (lit., cow-meat)
<u>gOsht e gOspand</u>	mutton (lit., sheep-meat)
<u>greftan</u>	to take, grab, lay hold of (without moving from one place to another, such as <u>bOrdan</u> [to take away] implies); to buy [pres., <u>mIgrum</u> ; impvs., <u>bIgrI</u> , <u>bIgrEn</u>]
<u>-I</u>	(a suffix to change a number into a coin or note/ bill of that denomination)
<u>jumma</u>	Friday
<u>kallIsA</u>	church
<u>kEk</u>	cake
<u>kILO</u>	kilogram (a common unit of measurement)
<u>maida</u>	change, small money
<u>maida kadan</u>	to make change, "break," break into small pieces
<u>mardum</u>	people
<u>mArket</u>	market, shopping center (for foodstuffs)

<u>masjed</u> (mAjed)	mosque
<u>mEjAn</u>	guest, company
<u>meter</u>	meter (39.37 inches)
<u>mItar</u>	meter, gauge, measuring instrument
<u>pan(j)shambE</u>	Thursday
<u>pUl e syA</u>	small change (coins or currency)
<u>pyAz</u>	onion
<u>qerAn</u>	one-half Afghani coin (= 50 pUl)
<u>rup(ev)a</u>	rupee (used interchangeably with afghAnI)
<u>se(H)at</u>	health
<u>sEr</u>	seer (a unit of measure = slightly less than 16 pounds [in Kabul]; = 16 pao [in Kabul])
<u>sEshambE</u>	Tuesday
<u>syA</u>	black
<u>shambE</u>	Saturday
<u>shAnzja-pUlI</u>	one-fourth Afghani coin (= 25 pUl)
<u>tanA</u>	only, just; alone
<u>tekka</u>	cloth, material, piece
<u>tekAr kadan</u>	to review, repeat
<u>talKhun</u>	egg, seed
<u>yakshambE</u>	Sunday
<u>zardak</u>	carrot

Exercises for Lesson Eleven

(to be written as well as practiced orally with the teacher)

Exercise 97 - Answer each of the following questions in your own words.

1. qImat e chAij0sh e kalAn chand as?
2. qImat e I gulf chand as?

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 3. qImat e U sAt chand as? | 8. I ketAb chand qImat dAra? |
| 4. qImat e I bukhArI chand as? | 9. U qAlIn chand qImat dAra? |
| 5. U qalam chand afghAnI s? | 10. U chAInak chand qImat dAra? |
| 6. I chaparkat chand afghAnI s? | 11. qImatesh chand bUd? |
| 7. qImat e U qAlIn chand as? | 12. pAr-sAl kera e khAnEtAn chand bUd? |

Exercise 98 - Replace progressively (making each change on the preceding sentence only) the following for the appropriate words or phrases in the sentence, dOkAndAr daI na dAra. E.g., pInjAI dOkAndAr pInjAI na dAra

- | | | | |
|----------|------------|----------------|------------------|
| 1. bIstI | 4. duI | 7. dArum | 10. Ech (H)azArI |
| 2. ma | 5. dAshtan | 8. panjsadI | 11. maida |
| 3. dAsht | 6. sadI | 9. du panjsadI | 12. dArEn? |

Exercise 99 - Substitute each of the following words or phrases for the under-scored word in the sentence, du pao kachALU betEn.

- | | | | | | |
|---------|-----------|-----------|----------|---------|--------|
| 1. pyAz | 2. zardak | 3. shernI | 4. maska | 5. shIr | 6. kEk |
|---------|-----------|-----------|----------|---------|--------|

Exercise 100 - Substitute each of the following words for the omitted word in the sentence, chAr dAna betEn.

- | | | | | | |
|-----------|----------|------------|----------|-----------|------------|
| 1. pensel | 2. qalam | 3. beshqAb | 4. pyAla | 5. qAshuq | 6. ErOgrAm |
|-----------|----------|------------|----------|-----------|------------|

Exercise 101 - Substitute each of the following words or phrases for the omitted word in the sentence, yak kIlO betEn.

- | | | |
|----------------|--------------------|---------|
| 1. gOsht e gao | 2. gOsht e gOspand | 3. bUra |
|----------------|--------------------|---------|

Exercise 102 - Use sEr, dAna or meter as needed to complete the following.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. yag da chOb kharIdum | 6. az U tekka panj kAr dArum |
| 2. chand gElAs dArEm? | 7. du tukhum bas as |
| 3. yak bUra kArem as | 8. sE az I tekke safEd betEn |
| 4. du berenj bekharEn | 9. panj shash ErOgrAm betEn |
| 5. I qAlIn chand as? | 10. yak gOsht e gao betEn |

Exercise 103 - Use *dAnE*, *pawe*, *sEre* and *metere* as required to complete these.

- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------|-------------------------|-----------|
| 1. zardak | chand as? | 8. gOsht e gao | chand as? |
| 2. kachAlU | chand as? | 9. berenj | chand as? |
| 3. I tekka | chand as? | 10. qalam | chand as? |
| 4. tukhum | chand as? | 11. U qesm shernI | chand as? |
| 5. U gul | chand as? | 12. maska | chand as? |
| 6. chOb | chand as? | 13. I qesm qAlIn | chand as? |
| 7. bUra | chand as? | 14. pensel | chand as? |

Exercise 104 - Rewrite the following sentences briefly using *rOze*, *shawe*, *aftE*, *mAc* and *sAle*, as required. E.g., *da yag rOz I dawAra du dafa bukhurEn*
I dawAra rOze du dafa bukhurEn

1. aolAdA da yag mA du dafa baremA maktUb neweshta mEkunan
2. ma da yag afta shash dafa sar e kAr mErum
3. unA da yak sAl du sE dafa jelAlAbAd mEran
4. da yag rOz aqalan bist maktUb bare mA myAya
5. shumA da yak shao chand sAt khao mEkunEn?
6. dOkAndAr da yag afta tana yag rOz dOkAna basta mEkuna
7. byAdaresh da yag mA du dafa myAya

Exercise 105 - Substitute consecutively each day of the week for the omitted word in the sentence, *shumA* *dars dAshtEn?*

Exercise 106 - Answer the question, *emrOz chand shambE s?* consecutively with each of the seven days of the week. E.g., *emrOz shambE s*

Exercise 107 - Substitute consecutively each evening of the week for the omitted words in the sentence, *dAktar sAeb* *chand marIza dId?*

Exercise 108 - Substitute consecutively the plural form of each day of the week (to show regularity of occurrence on that day each week) for the omitted words in the sentence, *mA* *aolAdAra da rastUrAn mEbarEm.*

LESSON TWELVE

12-A

Pronunciation drill (to be done only with the teacher)

1. Contrasting /kh/ and /gh/

da sar e sarak khAr as (There are thorns [or, brambles] on the road)
da sar e sarak ghAr as (There's a hole in the road)

ba khair e tU (for your own good)
ba ghair e tU (except [for] you)

az dest e gham pushtesh kham shuda (His/her back is [or, has gotten]
bent over due to grief)

sag da khao ghao-ghao na mEkuna (The dog doesn't bark in [his] sleep)

2. Illustrating /oi/

U az joi tEr shud (He/she/it passed by [or, over] the ditch)

sArandoi kOmakesh kad (The boy scout helped him/her)

dOkAn e khushka-shoi qulf as (The dry-cleaning shop is closed)

daftar e garzandoi kuja s? (Where is the Tourist Office?)

3. Illustrating /kht/

berenja sakht pukht (He/she cooked the rice hard)

gOshta wakht pukht (He/she cooked the meat early)

nEk-bakht Adam as (He's a fortunate fellow)

qAlInchara sar e takht andAkht (He/she put the small carpet on the
raised platform)

12-B

The formation of the past progressive tense

With kadan (to do, make ___)

"-ing"	stem	subj.	S i n g u l a r	
1	} + { kad }	um	= <u>mEkadum</u>	I was doing
2		I	= <u>mEkadI</u>	you were doing
3		-	<u>mEkad</u>	he/she/it was doing

P l u r a l				
1	} + { kad }	Em	= <u>mEkadEm</u>	we were doing
2		En	= <u>mEkadEn</u>	you were doing
3		an	= <u>mEkadan</u>	they were doing

1. The progressive indicator mE- (= -ing) is merely prefixed to the simple past tense (§ 10-E) of any verb to form a past progressive tense. Thus,

ma <u>kadum</u>	I did (it)	ma <u>mEkadum</u>	I was doing (it)
-----------------	------------	-------------------	------------------

2. The progressive indicator mE- (= -ing) comes at the beginning of the verb; the past stem of the verb (formed by dropping -an from the infinitive or dictionary form) follows this; and the personal endings (showing subject) come at the end of the verb. The mE- syllable is accented.

12-C

Statements, questions and negatives with the past progressive tense

unA chIra sail mEkadan?	What were they looking at?
chI qesm sAbUn estemAl	What kind of soap were they using?

mEkadan?	
sar e shumA khanda na mEkadum	I wasn't laughing at you.
mAnA e I lughata mEfAmIdEn?	Did you know (or, understand) the meaning of this word (before)?
mA da amrikAm ar rOz pIshIn	We used to have tea every afternoon even in America.

chAi mEkhOrdEm	
pAr-sAl az mArkEt mEwa O	We used to buy fruit and vegetable(s) from the market last year.

tarkArI mEkharIdEm	

bubakhshEn, amrAe amkAren ----- da telefUn gap mEzadum	Excuse me, I was talking to my col- league on the telephone.
az khAna mebrAmadum ke ----- bArAn shurO shud	I was just leaving the house when it started to rain.
pyAda taraf e khAna mEraftum ----- ke byAdareta dIdum	I was walking home (lit., going on foot) when I saw your brother.
AinE dALEza mEshushtum ----- ke shekest	As I was washing the hall mirror, it broke.
mestAr fAKsa dIdum ke taraf ----- e maidAn e awAI mEraft	I saw Mr. Fox going towards the airport.

1. Besides being a past progressive this tense may indicate a habitual or customary action in the past (cf. § 7-C-1) in the sense of "used to" if the time at which the action "used to" take place is specified.
2. Simultaneous or concurrent action may also be expressed by this tense as in the last four examples above. One action was in progress "when" (ke) or "at the same time that" another occurred.
3. sail kAdan, "to take a look at, glance at, view (something)," should be distinguished from dIdan, the ordinary verb for "to see." The first suggests looking at something with pleasure or interest while dIdan implies merely the reception of visual impressions. However, they are sometimes used interchangeably.
4. In the sentence with mEfamIdEn the past progressive indicates a continuous state (= were you familiar with) whereas the simple past tense would have shown merely a knowledge at a particular point of time. Either would be possible, depending on the emphasis desired. Because of the mE- form here, the word "before" is implied.
5. The word (i)am--which alone means "too, also" (= -Am in § 4-J)--also occurs as a prefix in the sense of "co-". Thus, amkAr (co-worker, colleague), amrAe (on the same path [= along with]) and amshIra (of the same milk [= sister]).

12-D

Idiomatic uses of chI (what?) alone and in combination with gap (talk)

kAghazAem chI shud?

Where are (lit., What became of) my
papers?

aksAra chI kadan?	What did they do with the pictures?
shumA da band e qargha	What did you do at Kargha Dam?
chI kadEn?	
chI kadI, qalamema?	What did you <u>do</u> with my pen?
chI gap as?	What's going on?
chI gap as? -- emrOz	What's the matter? You look rather sad today.
deq wArI stEn	
chI gap shud	What happened?
U ketAba ke sar e mEz	What became of (= where is) the book I left on the table?
mAndum chI shud?	

1. In the example with qalan (pen) note the reversal of the usual word order for the sake of emphasis or style. (Cf. § 8-E-9.)
2. The sentence with deq-wArI (sad-like) comes to mean something like: What's the reason that you look (or, seem) so sad today?
3. Since "gap" is literally "talk" the idioms with it are literally, "What is the talk?" and "What talk became?" and are rendered, "What's going on?" (or, happening), "What happened?" Cf. the English idiom, "What's up?" (that is, going on, or taking place).

12-E

Personal pronouns attached to verbs as objects

<u>Unattached</u>	<u>Attached</u>	
tUra mEguftum	mEguftumet(a)	I was saying to you . . .
shumAra kI guft?	kI guftetAn(a)?	Who told you?
Ura kI rawAn kad?	kI rawAn kadesh(a)?	Who sent it/him/her?
Ura bare ma bAn	bare ma bAnesh(a)	Leave it to me.
unAra (H)ukUmat	(H)ukUmat ejAza	Did the Government give them permission?
ejAza dAd?	dAdeshAn(a)?	
Ura kharAb na kO	kharAbesh na kO	Don't spoil it.
	kharAb na kunesh(a)	

<u>Unattached</u>	<u>Attached</u>	
emrOz Ura bekhAnEn	emrOz bekhAnEnesh(a)	Read it today.
unAra dAwat kadEm	dAwat kadEmeshAn(a)	We invited them.
Ura na zan	na zanesh(a)	Don't hit him/her/it.
-----	gumesh kO	Forget it! (= Let it go)
	gum kunesh(a)	

- Besides using the object pronouns introduced in § 7-G, it is possible to add the attached personal pronouns of § 6-B directly to the verb as objects of the verb. This is done in the second column of the sentences above. Thus, any form of a verb in any tense or mood (mode)--within, of course, the limits of reason--can be combined with any of the attached personal pronouns to make attached objects. The attached and unattached forms of each of the above sentences are the same in meaning.
- The attached objects may be suffixed to either member of a compound verb; kharAbesh na kO and kharAb na kunesh are both possible. Note on the verb kadan (to do) that the singular imperative is irregular and is actually "kun" which becomes kO when it has no suffix, but which retains the /n/ as a connective when it occurs with a suffix. Thus, kunesh, not kOesh. A similar phenomenon occurs with some other verbs, e.g., dIdan (to see), khOrdan (to consume, eat, drink) and greftan (to take). So we have bIbI--bIbInesh, bukhC--bukhuresh and bIglI--bIglIresh.
- In the above examples the object marker is not added to the non-verbal members of compound verbs; for example, not kharAbesha or gumesha, since they function as part of the verb rather than **independently** as objects of the verb (cf. § 8-E-8). The object indicator may, however, occur with the objects when they are attached to verbs (or the verbal member of compound verbs). Since this use is for special emphasis only, but is not obligatory (or even common) the object markers are shown in ().
- The verb khAndan means "to read, study, sing" and the exact sense has to be determined from the context.
- "gumesh kO" is the idiomatic way of urging a person not to press a point or make an issue of something, as we use "Forget it!" It is literally "make it lost" (lose it). The unattached form does not occur.

12-F

Ordinal numbers with the suffix -um (-wum, -yum)

1st	<u>awal</u>	3rd	<u>sEyum</u>	5th	<u>panjum</u>
2nd	<u>duwum</u>	4th	<u>chArum</u>	6th	<u>shashum</u>

7th	<u>aftum</u>	11th	yAzdawum	21st	bIst 0 yakum
8th	ashtum	12th	duwAzdawum	30th	sIyum
9th	nuwum	13th	sEzdawum	32nd	sI 0 duwum
10th	dawum	20th	bIstum	100th	sadum

1. With the exception of "first," which uses a different number entirely--although the normal pattern is followed when "one" occurs in a hyphenated series, as bIst 0 yakum (not bIst 0 awal)--ordinals are formed by suffixing -um (-wum or -yum) to the cardinal number.
2. When adding the ordinal suffix the following phonological rules are observed:
 - (a) If the cardinal number ends in a consonant sound the suffix is merely -um; e.g., chAr--chArum.
 - (b) If the cardinal number ends in -U or -O these are shortened and -wum is added; e.g., dU--duwum, nO--nuwum (occas. also nOwum).
 - (c) If the cardinal number ends in -a, merely add -wum; e.g., da--dawum.
 - (d) If the cardinal number ends in -I or -E it adds -yum; e.g., sE--sEyum, sI--sIyum).

12-G

The use of ordinal numbers (showing rank, order or succession)

chArshambE rOz e panjum	Wednesday is the <u>fifth</u> day of the [Afghan] week.
e afta s	
dars e ashtuma da	Open your books to the <u>eighth</u> lesson.
ketAbetAn wAz kunEn	
dars e chanduma?	<u>Which</u> lesson?
sAl e naw e afghAnestAn	The Afghan new year begins on the <u>twenty-first</u> of March.
da bIst 0 yakum e	
mArch shurO mEsha	
sawAl e chArum e emte(H)An	The <u>fourth</u> question of the examination was quite difficult.
khUb mushkel bUd	
sawAl e aftuma fAmIdEn?	Did you understand the <u>seventh</u> question?
I dukhtar e sEyumemA s	This is our <u>third</u> daughter.

1. Ordinals are constructed with ezAfI, just as other adjectives are.

2. Ordinals not only follow ezAff in construction but can also themselves be further followed by an ezAff construction, as in the examples above with "week," "March" and "examination."
3. When required, ordinals can have further suffixes attached to them, as in the example above with sEyumemA (our third . . .).
4. Object markers naturally occur with ordinal numbers as objects of verbs since they are clearly specific. So, dars e ashtuma (not, dars e ashtum) and sawAl e aftuma (not, sawAl e aftum). (Cf. § 7-F-4.)
5. Note that when asking about a number which will require the reply to be given as an ordinal number, the ordinal suffix -um is used with chand (= chandum) in the sense of "how much?" or "which?"
6. New Year's Day itself, as a proper name, is called nao-r0z (new day) in Afghanistan, a reversal of the usual position of adjective and noun.

12-H

Telling timeAsking the time of day

(Ale) sAt chand as?
(Ale) chand baja s?
sAtetAn chand as?

What time is it now? (Lit., How much is the hour?)

What time is it now? (Lit., What o'clock is it?)

What is your time? (Lit., How much is [it by] your clock [or, watch]?)

1. Any of these forms is acceptable to use when asking the time.
2. The adverb Ale (now) is, of course, optional and frequently omitted.

Answering an inquiry about time

sE daqIqa az panj guzashta
(sAtema) pAnzda daqa az ----- sE guzashta
sAt az n0 guzashta (s)
shash 0 nIm baja s

It's three minutes past five.

(By my watch) it's fifteen minutes after three.

It's after nine o'clock.

It's six-thirty.

yak 0 pAnzda	1:15.
dU nIm baja s	It's 2:30 (lit., two [and] one-half).
bIst 0 panj daqa ba chAr	It's twenty-five minutes to four (lit., Twenty-five minutes are left to four).
mAnda -- rAstI?	Really?
yak 0 pInjA	1:50.
da kam du baja s	It's ten minutes until two o'clock.
du daqIqa ba tOp mAnda	It's two minutes until twelve noon (lit., cannon).
da bajE shao	Ten o'clock at night.
nIm e shao	Midnight.
aft bajE sOb	Seven o'clock in the morning.

- The word daqIqa (minute, 1/60 of an hour) is used interchangeably with a shortened form, daqa.
- The fraction word nIm (one-half) is used for half-past the hour (or the night) as well as in the usual sense of $\frac{1}{2}$ whenever so required (e.g., (e.g., bIst 0 panj 0 nIm [25 $\frac{1}{2}$], sE 0 nIm sad [350], yak 0 nIm [H]azAr [1,500]). See § 3-B-1 for yak instead of yag before "0".
- When the word dU (two) or n0 (nine) is combined with 0-nIm, as in dU 0 nIm, n00nIm, the connector -0- (and) is assimilated into the long vowel of dU and of n0. Thus, dU nIm, n0 nIm.
- The participle guzashta (past, gone) and the participle mAnda (left, remaining) are used with the prepositions az (from) and ba (to) respectively to indicate time from 01 to 29 and from 31 to 59 minutes.
- The form with "kam" or "ba _____ mAnda" is more commonly used than the one which employs large numbers in the shortened form. So, da kam du baja s or da daqIqa ba dU mAnda are commoner than yak 0 pInjA.
- rAstI? (with the voice raised, as in a question) indicates surprise or incredulity, in the sense of: Really? You don't say? or Is that so?

Mentioning time in a statement

ma n0 0 chel 0 panj

kalIsA raftum

I went to church at 9:45.

dAwat (sAt e) asht 0 nIm	The party will begin at 8:30.
(baja) shur0 mEsha	
rAstI?	Is that so? (or, Really?)
az Inja tA paghmAn chand	How many minutes does it take (to go)
daqIqa mIgrA?	from here to Paghman?
da kam shash (baja) myAyum	I'll come at ten minutes to six.
emrOz sAt e da 0 pAnzda	I'm "taking" a test at 10:15 today.
emte(H)An mEtum	[The student]
rOz e chArshambE sAt e	I'll "give" the test in the second period
duwum emte(H)An mIgrum	on Wednesday. [The teacher]

9. Although the connector 0 (and) in fast speech is usually assimilated to the long vowels of dI and nO when combined with nIm (the half hours)--cf. # 5, above--it is generally heard as a somewhat lengthened vowel with times other than the half hours. So, nO 0 chel 0 panj . . .
10. In statements which merely mention the time the guzashta and mAnda forms are not used--although "kam" may be.
11. When the context is clear with reference to time and the numerals alone are used the word baja (o'clock) need not be included, although with full and half hours it frequently does occur.
12. Note on the last two sentences with emte(H)An (test) that the first occurrence of sAt refers to a specific hour or time while the second sAt merely means a "period." sAt followed by ezAfI conveys the idea "at" the time mentioned.
13. emte(H)An (test, examination) is used with greftan (to take) for the teacher or examiner who is thought to "take" the exam from the student and with dAdan (to give) for the student who is thought to "give" the exam to his teacher or examiner. This is a reversal of the concept in American English.

Learning time by telephone

"eshArE mAbad --

"sAt chArda

"At the coming signal [the time will be]:
fourteen hours,

"pInjA O du daqIqa	fifty-two minutes,
"sI sAneya--"	thirty seconds."
--whistle-- (10)	See table of

14. In Kabul City one can dial "16" on the telephone to obtain recorded time which is given alternately in both Dari and Pashto.
15. The Dari version follows the statement above, using eshAra (signal, gesture) constructed with ezAfI (which changes the final -a to -E) and followed by an Arabic phrase meaning "which [is] afterwards," loosely translated as above: "On the following signal . . . "
16. The word eshAra is also used alone in the sense of "signal" and may be heard with reference to traffic signals (or, lights).
17. Time on the telephone is given from one to twenty-four hours. Thus, the time noted above would be 2:52:30 p.m.

12- I Vocabulary for Lesson Twelve

<u>Aina</u>	mirror, window glass
<u>aks</u>	picture, photograph
<u>amkar</u>	co-worker, colleague
<u>awal</u>	first
<u>barAmadan</u>	to leave, go out, exit, issue [pres., <u>mebrAya</u> ; impvs., <u>barAi</u> , <u>barAEn</u>]
<u>barAn</u>	rain
<u>daqIqa (daqa)</u>	minute (1/60 of an hour)
<u>dAwat</u>	party, invitation
<u>dAwat kadan</u>	to invite
<u>emte(H)An</u>	test, examination
<u>eshAra</u>	signal, gesture; traffic light
<u>eshArE mAbad</u>	"(At) the coming signal" (used for telephone time)
<u>estEmAl kadan</u>	to use, make use of
<u>gap</u>	talk, speech, conversation; happening, "goings-on"

<u>gum kadan</u>	to lose, forget
<u>khanda kadan</u>	to laugh
<u>khAndan</u>	to read, study, sing [pres., <u>mEkhAna</u> ; impv., <u>bekhAn</u>]
<u>khArAb kadan.</u>	to spoil, ruin
<u>lughat</u>	word
<u>maidAn e awAI</u>	airport (lit., air-field)
<u>mAnA</u>	meaning, definition
<u>mAnda</u>	left, remaining to, "until" (for telling time)
<u>mEwa</u>	fruit
<u>naorOz</u>	New Year's Day (in Afghanistan, March 21st)
<u>nIm (-e-)</u>	one-half ($\frac{1}{2}$); semi-; mid-
<u>pyAda raftan</u>	to walk (lit., go on foot)
<u>rAstI?</u>	Really? Is that so? You don't say!
<u>rawAn kadan</u>	to send
<u>sAbUn</u>	soap
<u>sail kadan</u>	to take a look at, glance at, view (with satisfaction or pleasure)
<u>sAneya</u>	second (1/60 of a minute)
<u>sawAl</u>	question
<u>shekestan</u>	to be broken, get broken, break [pres., <u>meshkena</u>]
<u>shurO shudan</u>	to begin, start [intransitive]
<u>tarkArI</u>	vegetable(s)
<u>telefUn</u>	telephone
<u>(H)ukUmat</u>	government
<u>-um (-wum, -yum)</u>	(ordinal suffix): <u>_st</u> , <u>_nd</u> , <u>_rd</u> , <u>_th</u>
<u>zadan</u>	to beat, strike, hit, play (a musical instrument) [pres., <u>mEzana</u> ; impv., <u>bezan</u>]

Exercises for Lesson Twelve

(to be written as well as practiced orally with the teacher)

Exercise 109 - Use the past progressive tense of the verbs indicated in () to complete these sentences. E.g., shumA chI qesm sAbUn (kharIdan) shumA chI qesm sAbUn mEkharIdEn?

1. ma pyAda sar e kAr (raftan)
2. U tanA dari gap (zadan)
3. unA bare chI saresh khanda ? (kadan)
4. pAr-sAl da bAisekel sar e kAr (raftan)
5. ma az U dOkAn mEwa (kharIdan)
6. mestAr jOnzAm Inja kAr (kadan)
7. dAktor sAeb az khAna (barAmadan) ke telefUn Amad
8. rOz e yakshambE kalIsA (raftan) ke dOstAemA az lashkarga Amadan
9. dIroZ ke shumAra dIdum az kuJA ? (Amadan)
10. mA dars (khAndan) ko muallememA Amad
11. ma tashnAb (kadan) ke ao khalAs shud

Exercise 110 - Use chI in each of the following.

- | | |
|--|----------------------------|
| 1. bare maidAn e awAI mEraftan? | 5. Aina shud? |
| 2. na mEfAmum ke gap shud | 6. kelyAra kadI? |
| 3. dAktor sAeb rAjEba destetan guft? | 7. U s? |
| 4. az bAzAr AwurdEn? | 8. da paghmAn kadEn? |
| | 9. gap as? |

Exercise 111 - Rewrite the following unattached forms of the object pronouns as forms attached to verbs. E.g., tura mEguftum mEguftumet

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Ura basta mEkadum | 3. Ura dAwat mEkunEn? |
| 2. unAra Awurd | 4. Ura kI Awurd? |

5. unAra dIrOz dIdEn? 7. Ira bekhAnEn
 6. lutfan Ura kharAb na kO 8. Ura fardA rawAn mEkunan

Exercise 112 - Complete each of the following with the correct ordinal number of the cardinal number shown in (). E.g., dars e mushkel as (chAr) dars e chArum mushkel as

1. barem sawAl e mushkel bUd (pAnzda)
 2. I dars e as (duwAzda)
 3. unA da e mA e jUn AmaDan (yak)
 4. da sI O e mArch IrAn mErum (yak)
 5. dars e AsAn bUd (nO)
 6. lughat e na mEfAmum (dU)
 7. daftaresh da utAq e as (panj)
 8. bare fardA safe bekhAnEn (chel O panj)
 9. sawAl e na fAmIdum (shash)

Exercise 113 - Using the following pattern, ask and answer the time of day given. E.g., sAt chand as? (2:15) dU O pAnzda

1. 10:25 2. 8:55 3. 3:40 4. 1:35 5. 11:20

Exercise 114 - Using the following pattern ask and answer the time of day given. E.g., chand baja s? (10:00 p.m.) da bajE shao

1. 9:30 p.m. 2. 7:15 a.m. 3. 8:00 a.m. 4. 6:45 p.m. 5. noon

Exercise 115 - Using the following pattern ask and answer the time of day given. E.g., sAtetAn chand as? (5:10) da daqIqa az panj guzashta

1. 7:25 2. 9:15 3. 2:20 4. 3:05 5. 11:27

Exercise 116 - Using the following pattern ask and answer the time of day given. E.g., sAtetAn chand as? (5:40) bIst daqIqa ba shash mAnda

1. 8:45 2. 4:50 3. 10:35 4. 6:55 5. 1:33

Exercise 117 - Using the following pattern ask and answer the time of day given.
E.g., sAt chand as? (1:52) asht kam du baja s

1. 3:45 2. 11:50 a.m. 3. 11:50 p.m. 4. 7:55 5. 6:40

Exercise 118 - Complete the following with the words needed to express the time shown in (). E.g., kalIsA chI wakht shurO mEsha? (10:00)
kalIsA da baja shurO mEsha

1. dAwat da shurO shud (7:45)
2. unA sar e kAr mEran (8:15)
3. mA ar rOz az khao mEkhezEm (6:30)
4. amkArem myAya (5:00)
5. U rOzA e panjshambE az sar e kAr myAya (12:15)
6. ba khyAlem tA tayAr mEsha (4:30)

Exercise 119 - Kabul residents with telephones should dial "16" and practice listening to the time of day for about 5 minutes each day.

LESSON THIRTEEN (dars e sEzdawum)

13-A

Pronunciation drill (to be done only with the teacher)

1. Contrasting /k/ and /g/

I kap bare chI s? (What is this trophy [cup] for?)
I gap bare chI s? (What is this talk about?)

kAf bugOEn (Say 'kAf' [k])
gAf bugOEn (Say 'gAf' [g])
Ewaz e kAf gAf guftEn (You said 'g' instead of 'k')

kullesha so dAd (He/she watered all of them)
gulesha so dAd (He/she watered his/her flower)

emrOz bEkAr nEs (He/she is not idle [or 'free'] today)
emrOz bEgAr nEs (There is no conscription [i.e., forced labor] today)

kellI neweshta kunEn (Write 'kellI' [key])
gellI neweshta kunEn (Write 'gellI' [of clay])

U kach e gelkAr as (That's the mason's 'square')
U gach e gelkAr as (That's the mason's 'Plaster of Paris')

2. Illustrating /Ui/

rUesha pAk kO (Clean his/her face) [rUi + esha = rUesha]

shUesh qandAr raft (Her husband went to Kandahar)

mUyAesh telAI s (His/her hair is blond [i.e., gold-colored])

gulaem khush-bUi as (My flowers smell nice)

emrOz bad-khUi as (He/she is in a bad mood today)

joi bUinAk bUd (The ditch was smelly)

3. Illustrating /gr/

karIm grUp e dAgha greft (Karim grabbed the hot lightbulb)

13-B

The question words *cherA* (why?) and *kudAm* (which?)

r0z e jumma cherA sInumA ----- na raftI? —	<u>Why</u> didn't you go to the theatre on Friday?
besyAr mAnda budum	I was very tired.
cherA pyAzAra p0st na kadI?	<u>Why</u> didn't you peel the onions?
p0stA e kachAlUra cherA ----- Inja andAkhtI?	<u>Why</u> did you throw the potato peelings here?
az muallemetAn cherA ----- sawAl na kadEn?	<u>Why</u> didn't you ask your teacher?
cherA chaokIra nAwurdI?	<u>Why</u> didn't you bring the chair?
cherA zUt khao greftesh?	<u>Why</u> is he/she (or, did he/she get) sleepy so soon?

1. *cherA* (why?) is used interchangeably with *bare chI* (what for?)
2. *p0st* (peeling, skin, shell) needs to be distinguished from *p0sta* (post, mail), since when these words are combined with the suffix *khAna* they may be confused. For example, *p0st-khAna* (a leather or fur store) may be mistaken for *p0sta-khAna* (post office).
3. *khao greftan* is "to get or feel drowsy or sleepy" (i.e., to be overcome by sleep). *khao* (sleep) becomes the subject of the verb--so, literally, "sleep grabs ____." The sentence can also be, *cherA zUt khawesh greft?*
4. Note that the past tense is used to convey a present condition (cf. § 10-F-6), although with a proper **context**--e.g., a time word like *dIshao* (last night)--it could also have its usual past tense meaning.

kudAm sarak taraf e ----- jelALAbAd mEra?	<u>Which</u> road goes to Jalalabad?
dukhtar e khurdetAn da ----- kudAm maktab mEra?	<u>Which</u> school does your youngest daughter go to?
bachE kalANetAn da kudAm ----- senf dars mEkhAna?	<u>Which</u> class is your oldest boy studying in?

kudAmesh az shumA s? --	<u>Which</u> one is yours?
Ech kudAmesh (nE[s])	None of them [are mine].
kudAm qesm bAisekel	<u>Which</u> kind of bicycle is the best?
khUbesh as?	
ar kudAmesha alAida bushOi	Wash each one separately.
Ech kudAmesha kAr na dArum	I don't need any of them.

- kudAm inquires about the identity of something or one's choice of something amongst a limited number of persons or things; so, Which?
- The adjectives khurd (small) and kalAn (large) can also, when the context warrants it (as here), mean "youngest" and "oldest," respectively. Notice that the possessive ending is added to the adjective and not to the noun; in other words, to the whole phrase. Thus, it is not bachEtAn e kalAn but bachE kalAnetAn, etc.
- Ech (not any, none) can be used with kudAm which may in turn have attached personal pronouns and the object marker suffixed when required. As used above the phrase means literally (and clumsily), "Not any which one of it" (or, them), and is approximately equal to the English idiom, "Not a single one."
- khUb + esh is idiomatic to indicate something or someone--amongst other possibilities--that is good or fine. So, literally, the "good of it" (or, them) = best, finest.
- The word ar (every, each) may be combined not only with numerals but with interrogatives to distinguish or include. So, ar kudAmesha alAida bushOi is literally: "Every which one [that there is] wash separately." The object marker is, of course, put on the end of the word.

13-C

kudAm used as an indefinite prefix (some___ [or other])

(da) (kudAm) jAi mAndumesh	I put it <u>somewhere or other</u> , but now I don't remember (where).
lAken Ale yAdem nEs	
(kudAm) jAi mErEn?	Are you going <u>somewhere</u> ?
kudAm wakht khAnEmA byAEh	Come to our house <u>sometime</u> ?
kudAm wakht baresh khat	<u>Sometime or other</u> I'll write him/her a letter.
neweshta mEkunum	

I (kudAm) chIze nao nEs	This isn't <u>anything</u> new.
(kudAm) chIze az mArkEt	Do you need <u>something</u> (or, anything)
-----	from the market?
kAr dArEn?	

1. kudAm is used as a prefix in combination with other words (some of which are given above) in the indefinite sense of "some ___ [or other]." For example, somewhere, sometime, something . . . or other.
2. kudAm in the sense of indefiniteness is to be distinguished from yagAn which conveys repetition or frequency. So,

yagAn wakht qandAr mErUm	I go to Kandahar sometimes (= now and then, once in a while, occasionally)
kudAm wakht qandAr mErUm	I'm going to Kandahar sometime (or other).

3. One method of indicating that one has forgotten something is yAd___ nEs (___ memory is not). The blank space is filled by the appropriate possessive adjective (cf. § 6-C). In the sentence here it is literally "My memory is not" = I forgot. The verb can also occur in other tenses and in the positive (= to remember) as well as negative (= to forget).
4. The sentence translated "This isn't anything new" may refer either to a "thing" or to information, and is equivalent to discounting a thing or a bit of news as really nothing special (= "This is old stuff").
5. chIze by itself means "something" even though it is sometimes combined with kudAm. The kudAm, however, is optional as also in the other examples above where it is given in ().

13-D

The responses az khAter e (ke) [because of, since] and az I/U khAter (therefore)

unja na raftum az khAter e	I didn't go there <u>because</u> there was nobody at home.

ke da khAna Echkas na bUd	
cherA unja mIrI? az khAter	Why are you going there? <u>Because</u>
-----	they aren't coming here.
e ke unA Inja na myAyan	
az khAter e kAr e besyAr	<u>Because</u> of [having] so much work [to do] I didn't go to Herat.

(H)ErAt na raftum	
az khAter e shumA Amadum	I came <u>for</u> your sake.

besyAr qImat bUd -- az I

khAter na kharIdumesh

AghA e karIm marIz as -- az

U khAter sar e kAr nAmad

It was very expensive; therefore
I didn't buy it.

Mr. Karim is sick; therefore he
didn't come to work.

1. The phrase az khAter e (ke) means "because of, since," and is usually used correlatively to introduce the second clause which gives a reason for the statement of the first clause or a reply to a question. It may, however, function as a preposition (cf. the examples with "so much work" and "for your sake"), in which case the ke is omitted.
2. az I (or, U) khAter means simply "therefore" or "That's the reason that" and always introduces the statement which gives the reason for a previous assertion.

13-E

The words cheqa (how _____, to what measure [or, extent]), eqa (this much, so) and uqa (that much, so)

ghaznI az Inja taqrIban

cheqa dUr as?

cheqa bUra mEkhurEn?

cheqa paisa kAr dArI?

Approximately how far is Ghazni from here?

How much sugar will you take (lit., eat [e.g., in your tea])?

How much money do you need?

1. The word cheqa occurs not in the sense of "what manner" (= how?) but "to what extent" (= how _____?).
2. Whereas chand is used for things which can be counted (i.e., pluralized) cheqa refers to those which are uncounted (or, uncountable, i.e., not made plural). So, in the above examples we cannot use chand (= how many 'fars' [or, distances], 'sugars' or 'moneys') but only cheqa (= how much of each of these?).
3. cheqa may be combined with adjectives to show the extent of something (e.g., distance), nouns to show the amount of something (e.g., sugar, money) or used with adjectives in an exclamatory sense (cf. § 25-H).

ma uqa mAnda budum ke

na raftum

cherA mEz eqa chatal as?

I was so tired that I didn't go.

Why is the table so dirty?

<p>eqa uqa gap na mEzana lAken:</p>
<p>besyAr kAr mEkuna</p>
<p>bubakhshEn, uqa na dArum</p>
<p>-- tanA yak pao dArum</p>
<p>rAdy0 eqa beland bUd ke-</p>
<p>sadAeta na shunIdum</p>

He/she doesn't talk very much (i.e., isn't very talkative) but he/she certainly works hard (or, turns out the work).

I'm sorry, I don't have that much; I only have one 'pao'.

The radio was so loud that I didn't hear you (lit., hear your sound).

4. eqa and uqa are shortened forms of e-qadar and u-qadar respectively, which longer forms may also be heard. The distinction between eqa and uqa is basically one of nearness and remoteness (cf. I and U from which they are compounded), although in many instances they are interchangeable. eqa and uqa are used in the sense of "this much," "that much" and "so much" when followed by nouns and in the sense of "so ____" when followed by appropriate adjectives.
5. When eqa and uqa are used the degree or extent is usually specified but occasionally only implied. The example with mEz (table) is a case of implied extent or degree: "so dirty" that "it doesn't look nice," or that "I don't like it" or that "I want it cleaned." The first sentence, however, could not be ma uqa mAnda budum (I was so tired) since uqa demands some clause to show the degree of tiredness. If what is meant by "I was so tired" is merely that "I was very (or, extremely) tired" then besyAr would be used instead of uqa and the ke-clause omitted.
6. chatal (dirty, stained [e.g., from spilling, occupation]) is to be distinguished from cherk (dirty, soiled [from gradual accumulation, as a rule]). (Cf. § 10-F-9.)
7. The adjective beland (high, tall) is also used for "loud."

13-F

The use of nA- as a negative prefix

U Adam nA-bInA s
ma dIrOz nA-jOr shudum
zarfA e nA-shushtara bushOi

That man is blind (lit., unseeing [from dIdan]).

Yesterday I got sick (lit., unwell).

Wash the dirty (lit., unwashed) dishes.

1. The negative particle na (not), ordinarily used to negate a verb, may also serve as a negative prefix (before certain nouns, adjectives or participles) in the sense of "un-" or "non-".
2. In such compounds the original na is usually lengthened to nA-.

13-G

Expressing "on time," "exact time,"
"early(ier)," "fast," "late(r)" and "slow":

sarwEs umUman ba wakht mErasa	The bus usually arrives <u>on time</u> .
ma ba wakhtesh nAmadam	I didn't come <u>on time</u> .
U kArA asht bajE pUra shurO kad	He/she started work at <u>exactly</u> eight o'clock.
wezArat amEsha chAr 0 nIm bajE pUra basta mEsha	The (Government) Ministry always closes at <u>exactly</u> 4:30.
emrOz sOb wakht Amadam	I came <u>early</u> this morning.
enshAllA, fardA kArA yak sAt { wakhtar } shurO mEkunEm { pEshtar }	God willing, tomorrow we'll begin the work an hour <u>earlier</u> .
sAtetAn panj daqa pEsh as	Your watch is five minutes <u>fast</u> .
bubakhshEn, sareM nA-wakht shud	Excuse me; I'm <u>late</u> .
shumA pasAn(tar) amrAem kOmak mEkunEm?	Will you help me <u>later</u> ?
sAtem da daqa pas { mAnda as	My watch is ten minutes <u>slow</u> .

1. ba wakht(esh) may mean "on time" or "at the appointed time," the suffix -esh adding the idea of "its (appointed) time."
2. Exact time may be indicated by the hour + pUra (full, complete). ezAff joins the pUra to the time words preceding.
3. wakht (time) when used adverbially may mean "early" or "already", especially with the present perfect tense (to be introduced in Lesson 19).
4. For vocabulary used in connection with "Government" in Afghanistan see Appendix IX.
5. The expression enshAllA (If God wills) is Arabic and is commonly used by Muslims to show their acknowledgment of God as sovereign in life.
6. The idiom given for "lateness" here is used when one is unavoidably or

unintentionally so. If the context is clear as to "who" is late, the "sar" (on) + appropriate attached personal pronoun (cf. § 6-B) can be omitted. The idiom requires the verb *shudan* (to become).

7. The verb *rasIdan* (to arrive, reach) may be used for persons or things.
8. *pEsh* when used of a clock or watch indicates that it is "ahead," i.e., fast, while *pas* in the same context means "behind," i.e., slow.
9. *pEsh* (or *pEshtar*), *wakht* (or *wakhtar*) and *pasAn* (or *pasAntar*) are commonly used in the sense of "ahead of" (= earlier, already) and "after" (= later).

13-H

Vocabulary for Lesson Thirteen

<u>alAida</u>	separate, separately
<u>andAkhtan</u>	to throw [pres., <u>menDaza</u> ; impv., <u>benDaz</u>]
az <u>I/U</u> <u>khAter</u>	therefore, that's the reason that . . .
az <u>khAter e</u> (ke)	because, since; because of
ba <u>wakht</u>	on time, promptly
<u>beland</u>	high, tall, loud
<u>chatal</u>	dirty, stained (e.g., from spilling)
<u>cheqa?</u>	how _____? to what extent? (followed by an adjective or noun)
<u>cherA?</u>	why?
<u>chIze</u>	something, anything; (neg.) nothing
<u>dUr</u>	distant, far-off, remote
<u>Echkas</u>	nobody, anybody
<u>enshAlla</u>	"If God wills" (an Arabic expression, common amongst Muslims)
<u>eqa</u>	to this extent, so _____
<u>khao greftan</u>	to get (or feel) sleepy, drowsy
<u>khat</u>	letter (more personal than <i>maktUb</i>); handwriting; line

<u>khU</u> esh	fine; good, better, best
<u>ku</u> dAm (-)	which? some _____ [or other] (when prefixed to certain words to indicate indefiniteness)
m <u>A</u> nda	tired, weary
nA-b <u>In</u> A	blind, unseeing
nA- <u>i</u> Or	sick, ill, unwell
nA-shus <u>ht</u> a	unwashed, dirty (of dishes, utensils, instruments, clothes)
nA- <u>w</u> akht	(unavoidably or unintentionally) late, tardy
pas	slow, late
pas <u>An</u> (<u>tar</u>)	later, after, afterwards
p <u>E</u> sh(<u>tar</u>)	earlier, before, ahead, "already"
p <u>0</u> st	skin, peeling, shell
p <u>0</u> st <u>ka</u> dan	to skin, peel, shell
p <u>U</u> ra	exactly (lit., full, complete), completely
ras <u>I</u> dan	to arrive, reach [pres., <u>mE</u> rasa; impv., <u>ber</u> as]
s <u>a</u> dA	sound, voice
s <u>a</u> rak	road, street
saw <u>A</u> l <u>ka</u> dan	to question, inquire
sen <u>f</u>	class, grade (in school); classroom
shur <u>0</u> <u>ka</u> dan	to begin, start (something) [transitive]
s <u>I</u> num <u>A</u>	movie, cinema, "show"
taqr <u>I</u> ban	approximately, about, almost
u <u>q</u> a	to that extent, so _____
wakht(<u>ar</u>)	early, earlier; already
wez <u>A</u> rat	(Government) Ministry
y <u>A</u> d _____ <u>b</u> U <u>d</u> an	to remember; (neg.) to forget

Exercises for Lesson Thirteen

(to be written as well as practiced orally with the teacher)

Exercise 120 - Use *cherA* or *kudAm* as required to complete the following.

1. shumA da senf mEkhanEn?
2. kAlA e cherka alAida na mAndI?
3. unA da wezArat kAr dAran?
4. amkAretAn dIrOz sar e kAr nAmad?
5. bAisekel khUbesh as?
6. rAjEba sawAl sawAl kad?
7. zardak pOst na kadi?
8. aftE Aenda darsa mEkhanEm?
9. qesmesha kharIdEn?
10. esh az shumA s?

Exercise 121 - Use (*kudAm-*) *jAi*, *kudAm-wakht* or (*kudAm-*)*chIze* as needed to complete these sentences.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. mestar brAUAm myAra | 6. ba khyAlem fardA mEra |
| 2. bare sag dAdEn? | 7. amrAem paghman mErEn? |
| 3. az estAlef kharIdEn? | 8. khAnEtAn myAEm |
| 4. baresh mEgum | 9. ketAbem yAft na mEsha -- shumA |
| 5. nOkaresh nAwurd? | da mAndEnesh? |

Exercise 122 - Use *az khAter e (ke)* or *az I/U khAter* as needed to complete these.

1. dIrOz nA-jOr budum -- baresh khat neweshta na kadum
2. sInumA besyAr dUr bUd -- pyAda na raftEm
3. pyAda na raftEm sInumA besyAr dUr bUd
4. dOstem maidAn e awAI mErUm

5. emte(H)An emrOz wakht mErum
6. Ale na mErEm kAr besyAr as
7. emrOz zUt khao greftesh dIshao tanA chAr sAt khao kad
8. I khAnara na mIglIrum kerAesh besyAr beland as
9. mEmAn rOz e jumma khAna budum
10. qImatesh Ura khush na kadan

Exercise 123 - Use cheqa and eqa/uqa as required to complete these sentences.

1. da chAi bUra na mendAzum
2. bachEm mAnda bUd ke zUt khawesh greft
3. taqrIban kAr dArEn?
4. chatal as ke Ech pAk na mEsha
5. maktabeshAn dUr as ke ba mOtar mEran
6. sAtem pas as?
7. dIroZ da dAwat mardum Amad(an)?
8. paghmAn az Inja dUr as?

Exercise 124 - Replace progressively each of the following words/phrases in the sentence, nOkarem amEsha ba-wakht myAya. E.g., umUman.
 nOkarem umUman ba-wakht myAya

- | | | | |
|------------------|-------------|-------------|-----------|
| 1. aft bajE pUra | 4. nA-wakht | 7. ar rOz | 10. dIroZ |
| 2. wakht | 5. parI-rOz | 8. myAya | |
| 3. mErasa | 6. dOstem | 9. pasAntar | |

Exercise 125 - Use nA-bInAA, nA-jOr, nA-shushta or nA-wakht as needed to complete the following sentences.

1. da kAbul yag maktab e s
2. da (H)ErAtAm yag maktab e s
3. emrOz besyAr astum

4. kAlA e ra aLAida bAnEn
5. saresh umUman mEsha
6. sareM shud az khAter e ke sAt na dAshtum
7. dOstem dIrOz bUd
8. lutfan ketAbAra az Inja pas kunEn az khAter e ke destAem as
9. az khAter e ke teflesh bUd bare dAktor telefUn kad

Exercise 126 - Use nA-wakht and/or wakht as needed to complete the following sentences. Where there are two possibilities give them both, as nA-wakht/wakht.

1. chera saretAn shud?
2. chera nAmadI?
3. emrOz shumA mErasEn?
4. umUman sareshAn mEsha
5. dIshao ta Inja bUd
6. lutfan nayAEn
7. dIrOz az kAr Amadum
8. ba khyAlem myAya
9. emrOz shud
10. kI rasId?

Exercise 127 - Replace progressively each of the following words/phrases for the appropriate words in the sentence, emrOz ao chatal as. E.g.,
zamin e Ashpaz-khAna emrOz zamIn e Ashpaz-khAna chatal as

1. dIrOz
2. mEz e sAlUn
3. Ale
4. gElAsA
5. dIshao
6. mOtarem besyAr
7. shud
8. kAlAem
9. destAesh

Exercise 128 - Replace progressively each of the following words/phrases for the appropriate words in the sentence, pardA e sAlUn cherk as. E.g.,
na bUd pardA e sAlUn cherk na bUd

1. AinE dAlEz
2. as
3. I tekka
4. sAtem
5. kAlAemA
6. na
7. Ale

LESSON FOURTEEN (dars e chArdawum)

14-A

Pronunciation drill (to be done only with the teacher)

1. Contrasting /p/ and /b/

I besyAr par dAra (It has many feathers)
I besyAr bar dAra (It is very wide)

pAk na dAra (He/she doesn't have clean [ones])
bAk na dAra (It doesn't matter)

pUra bete (Give [me] all of it)
bUra bete (Give [me] sugar)

pas as (It's behind [or, slow])
bas as (It's enough)

pEshtar na bUd (It wasn't [like this] previously)
bEshtar na bUd (There wasn't [any] more)

yag lap (one handful)
yag lab (one lip [or, edge])

I chOb pUda bUda (This wood must have been rotten)

2. Contrasting /E/ and /a/

Ush kunEn ke tEr na sha (Be careful that he/she/it doesn't pass by)
Ush kunEn ke tar na sha (Be careful that it doesn't get wet)

shEr bugOEn (Say 'shEr' [lion])
shar bugOEn (Say 'shar' [evil])

U dEr Amad (He/she/it came late)
U darAmad (He/she entered)

3. Illustrating /lkh/

aftE Aenda balkh mErEm (We're going to Balkh next week)

chAi e talkha khush na dArum (I don't like bitter [i.e., unsweetened] tea)

14-B

Attached questions with khu

Ale khu kAr na dArI	You aren't busy now, are you?
Ale khu na mIrI	You aren't going now, are you?
(enshAllA) deq khu ----- na mEshEn	I hope you don't mind! (Lit., God willing [= I hope] you won't be unhappy, will you?)
pensel e surkh khu dArEn	You have a red pencil, don't you?
tanA khu na mErEn	You aren't going alone, are you?
U khu emzAesh nEs	It's not his/her signature, is it?
az yAdetAn khu na mEra	You won't forget (it), will you?
amrAomA khu yak pyAla ----- chAi mEkhurEn	You're going to have a cup of tea with us, aren't you?
nAn khu khOrdan	They ate, didn't they?
pOllisa khu guftan	They told the police, didn't they?
ao khu jOsh as	The water is boiling, isn't it?
ma khu guftumet ke dest ----- na zanesh	I told you not to touch it, didn't I?

- Attached (or "tag") questions may be made in spoken Dari by the use of khu--as a particle which implies agreement with a question, whether affirmative or negative--usually just before the verb (both simple and compound) but occasionally in other positions (cf. the examples with "signature" and "tea", above).
- If the verb is negative the tag ending (in English) is positive and the answer implied is negative. So, the first seven examples above expect the answer "No."
- If the verb is positive the tag ending (in English) is negative and the answer implied is affirmative. So the last five examples above expect the answer "Yes." Note that in the final example the sentence is complex (to be explained below) and the tag ending applies only to the verb guftumet (in the principal clause), which is affirmative.
- With compound verbs the khu may come just before the non-verbal member (as with kAr dAshtan, above) or just before the verbal member (as with nAn khOrdan).

5. yAd (memory) occurs with the verb raftan (to go) and the preposition az (from) to convey the idea of forgetting (or, if negative, of not forgetting, i.e., remembering). Thus, in the example above we have literally, "From your memory it will not go, will it?" The verb can also occur in other tenses. The preposition az is frequently omitted.
6. dest (hand) + zadan (to beat, strike) conveys idiomatically the concept of "touching" something. Cf. the English expression, "Keep your hands off," i.e., "Don't touch" or "handle".
7. The last of the examples given illustrates the fact that in Dari direct discourse is preferred when reporting speech. So,

maza guft (ke) kujA mIri?

He/she asked me where I was going.

The translation given in English (according to English preference) is in indirect discourse, but the example in Dari actually says: "He/she asked me, 'Where are you going?'" The verb guftan in direct discourse means "to ask" or "to tell." For example,

bugOesh byA

Ask him/her to come (or, Tell him/her, Come).

ke (that) in direct discourse is often optional; hence, in one of these examples it is given in () while in the other it is omitted entirely.

14-C

Attached questions with nE (no)

utaq besyAr tArIk bUd, nE?	The room was very dark, wasn't it?
I qesm sEb khUb shIrIn ----- mEbAsha, nE?	This kind of apple is very sweet, isn't it?
U bacha besyAr UshyAr ----- as, nE?	That boy is very smart (or, bright), isn't he?
juwAbesh mAqUl na bUd, nE?	His/her answer wasn't reasonable, was it?
shumA dIshao sInumA ----- raftEn, nE?	You went to the movie last night, didn't you?
kAghazAra da jAI mAfUz ----- mAndEn, nE?	You put the papers in a safe place, didn't you?
bad na bUd, nE?	It wasn't bad, was it?

bufarmAEn, nE?

Go ahead, why don't you?

1. In this alternate method of forming attached questions the nE--pronounced at the end of the statement with a raised voice--anticipates agreement with the statement, whether affirmative or negative.
2. The last example given is equivalent to, "Why are you hesitating?" or "You won't be shy, will you? Please . . ."

14-D

The totality pronoun kull (all)

mEfAmEn ke emrOz da kull e ----- dunyA chand mamlakat as?	Do you know how many countries there are in the world today?
kull e mardum e afghAn- ----- estAn ba yag zubAn ----- gap na mEzanan	The people of Afghanistan don't all speak the same language (lit., in one lan- guage).
kull e juwAbAetAn saI bUd	All of your answers were correct.
az Ashpaz-khAna kull ----- e zarfAra byAr	Bring all of the dishes from the kitchen.
kull e muallemA (H)Azer ----- budan, nE?	All of the teachers were present, weren't they?
kull e kAghazAra negA kunEn	Look after all of the papers.
kull e rOz garmI bUd	It was hot all day long.
kullemA raftEm	All of us went.
kulletAn mErEn yA yag ----- du sE nafaretAn?	Are all of you going or just a few of you?
kulleshAna meshnAsum	I know (i.e., recognize) all of them.

1. The idea of totality (all of _____) may be expressed in Dari by kull in construction with ezAfI; so, kull e.
2. It is used with nouns or personal pronouns attached as objects.
3. Note the following distinctions: negA kadan (to keep, look after); sail kadan (to look at [with pleasure], view); dIdan (to see [general term]).

4. The verb shenAkhtan (to know, recognize) rather than fAmIdan (to know, understand) is used for "knowing" people.

14-E

The unchangeable past participle

maktUba neweshta kada, ----- shAr raftum	I wrote the letter and [then] went to the city.
fekor kada kAr kO	Do your work thoughtfully (i.e., pay attention to what you're doing).
dawAra khOrda esterAat ----- mEkunvm	After taking the medicine I'm going to rest.
lutfan tashnAb kada kAlA ----- e pAk bupOshEn (az khAter e ke mEmAnA ----- nyAyan)	Please take a bath and put on clean clothes (since guests are coming).
dawAesha (grefta) bUbarEn	Take his/her medicine along.
maktUba (grefta) byArEn	Bring the letter along.
ketAbAema grefta mErum	I'm taking my books along.
afte Aenda chand nafar ----- mEmAn dAshta mEbAshEn?	How many guests will you be having (i.e., are you expecting) next week?

- When the final /n/ is dropped from the infinitive of any verb one is left with a form such as kada, khOrda, grefta and dAshta. This form--which is unchangeable--serves as a kind of "past participle" and is used in a variety of ways, some of them yet to be introduced.
- One common use of this form is in place of a conjunction. In this case the past participle is followed by the main verb, the subject of both the participle and the main verb is the same and the action of the participle precedes that of the main verb. Thus, the first example given above could mean equally: I wrote and went, I wrote before I went, or I went after I wrote.
- When that which is taken, carried or brought "along" is animate--e.g., a child, wife, family--the grefta form is not usually used. Instead, kati or amrAc are preferred. So,

fAmIletAna katItAn myArEn?

Are you bringing your family along?

4. The special mEbAsha form of bUdan (cf. § 10-B) is sometimes combined with dAshta. In such cases it is more usual to keep the mE- prefix attached to bAshEn (as in the example given), although one may occasionally hear it also attached to dAshta (as if, mEdAshta bAshEn).

14-F

The verb tAnestan (can, to be able)

nOkaresh uttU kada mEtAna?

Can his/her servant iron (clothes)?

chand baja da daftaretAn

What time can (= may) I come to your office?

Amada mEtAnum?

sawAl e ashtuma juwAb dAda

Were you able to answer the eighth question or not?

tAnestI yA nE?

bubakhshEn, ma besyAr dEr

I'm sorry, [but] I can't stay (lit., sit) very long.

sheshta na mEtAnum

na-khair, yA rOz e panj-

No, sir, I can only (i.e., either) come on Thursday or Friday.

shambE Amada mEtAnum

yA rOz e jumma

(ma) na emrOz rafta

I can't go either today or tomorrow.

mEtAnum na fardA

bEchAra eqa gharIb as ke

The poor fellow is so poor that he can't even buy the necessities (lit., necessary things) [of life].

chIzA e zarUrIra

kharIda na mEtAna

Ale khUb dari gap zada

Now you can speak Dari very well.

mEtAnEn

shumAra da kujA dIda

Where can (or, may) I see you?

mEtAnum?

da kujA dIda mEtAnumetAn?

Where can (or, may) I see you?

azArIra maida kada na

They couldn't change the one-thousand-Afghani note (or, bill).

tAnestan

besyAr kOshesh kadum lAken
da kull e kAbul I qesm
qalam paidA kada na
tAnestum

I tried very hard but was unable to find this kind of pen anywhere in Kabul.

1. The unchangeable past participle of a verb (cf. § 14-E, above) may be used in conjunction with the verb tAnestan (can, to be able) to indicate the ability to do whatever is signified by the unchangeable form.
2. Although the past participle is unchangeable, the verb tAnestan is conjugated as usual in any tense or mood/mode where it logically occurs.
3. Since the usual (and natural) intent of this compound is to show ability is also implies "knowing how to" do something.
4. Furthermore, the compound may be used in asking permission--"can" instead of "may," as is becoming more and more common in American English.
5. The conjunction yA (or) when required--although normally the context is clear without it--may be repeated as its own correlative; thus, yA . . . yA (either . . . or). Similarly, the simple negative na (not) can be repeated as its own correlative in the negative sense of na . . . na (neither . . . nor). In this construction the verb is not repeated.
6. The negative prefix bE- in the sense of "without" occurs commonly in compounds in Dari. So here, bE-chARA (without solution) means "poor, helpless, in a bad way or state," in contrast to gharIb which means only "financially poor."

14-G

The use of dega/degAm in the sense of "else," "some other," "additional," "any more"

dega kI (H)ErAt raft?	Who else went to Herat?
degAm kase (H)ErAt raft?	Did anyone else go to Herat?
dega qalam e ranga dArEn?	Do you have some other colored pen?
degAm qalam e ranga dArEn?	Do you have any more colored pens?
yag jOra bUt e dega betEn	Give me some other pair of shoes.
yag jOra bUt e degAm kAr dArum	I need one more pair of shoes.
muallem sAeb dega chI guft?	What else did the teacher say?
muallem sAeb degAm chIze guft?	Did the teacher say anything else?

tA chand sAl e dega da ----- afghAnestAn mEbAshEn?	How much longer (lit., for <u>how many</u> more years) will you be in Afghanistan?
tA chand sAl e degAm da ----- afghAnestAn mEbAshEn?	Will you be in Afghanistan for <u>a few</u> more years [besides what you have already been]?
yak panjsadI dega bete	Give (me) some other five-hundred-Afghani note [instead of this one].
yak panjsadI degAm bete	Give (me) another five-hundred-Afghani note [in addition to this one].
dega kujA raft?	Where else did he/she/it go?
degAm jAi raft?	Did he/she/it go anywhere else [besides, or in addition to where you have already mentioned]?
dega chetOr astEn?	What else have you got to say about yourself (lit., how else are you)?

1. The use of the word dega (or degAm--i.e., dega + -Am) brings something additional into the picture of the same sort or type that has already been mentioned. Generally speaking, dega stresses another or "some other" than what has already been mentioned or considered while degAm conveys more the idea of "additional, any more" besides what has already been mentioned or considered.
2. dega may be used with question words such as kI (who?), chI (what?), kujA (where?) and chand (how many?) while degAm may be used with indefinite words such as kase (someone), chIze (something), jAi (somewhere) and chand (a few).
3. When people have gone through the usual--and lengthy!--formalities of greeting (cf. § 5-G), especially when meeting someone after a long time or when one is embarrassed or reluctant to introduce a matter of business at hand, "dega" may begin a second round of greetings while one, as it were, stalls for time and collects his thoughts . . . or his courage! (The last example above illustrates this usage very well.)

14-H

Expressing "to live" (zendagI kadan, sheshtan, mEbAsha)

pAdshA e afghAnestAn da ----- kAbul zendagI mEkuna	The King of Afghanistan lives in Kabul.
fAmIlemA da pAkestAn ----- zendagI mEkad	Our family used to live in Pakistan.

shumA da kuJA e kArtE ----- chAr mIshInEn?	Where do you live (lit., sit) in Karte Char?
mA da sarak e awal e kArtE ----- chAr mIshInEm	We live on 'Sarak-e-awal' (lit., First Street) in Karte Char.
unA da kAbul mEbAshan	They live in Kabul.

1. zendagI kadan is a rather formal way of expressing "to live" and is not as common as the simple verb sheshtan (to sit, to live). (Cf. the English "reside" [from the Latin residere, "to sit back"].) sheshtan may, of course, mean nothing more than just "sit," as:

bufarmAEn, da sAlUn bIshInEn	Please have a seat in the living room.
Inja bIshI	Sit here.

2. Not many streets in Kabul have names; only the larger ones do. But it happens that there is a sarak e awal (First Street) in Karte Char. The streets are more likely to be described by familiar landmarks on them (e.g., a school or hospital) than by proper names. For Kabul City maps giving the names of (some) streets, intersections and noteworthy locations see Appendix VII.
3. The special mEbAsha form of bUdan (cf. § 10-B) may also convey the idea of "staying, living" since it indicates the continuation of the state or condition "to be".

14-I

The use of pEsh e to convey possession

kI ketAb dAra?	Who has <u>a</u> book?
ketAb pEsh e kI s?	Who has <u>the</u> book?
ketAb pEshesh as	He/she has <u>the</u> book.
bAisekel pEsh e kI s?	Who has <u>the</u> bicycle?
bAisekelem pEshet as?	Do you have <u>my</u> bicycle?
bAisekelem pEsh e tU s?	Do <u>you</u> have my bicycle?
keli pEsh e nOkaretAn as	Your servant has the key.

1. pEsh e which means "by, near, close to, with" is very commonly--but not always (e.g., pEsh e dAktor burEn [Go to the doctor])--used to indicate possession, the thing mentioned (normally definite) being "near" or "with" the one joined in construction with pEsh e. It means "to have in

one's grasp, control or use" while dAshtan (to have) occurs in the more general sense of "to own or possess".

- In the first example--given with dAshtan and no object marker--the question is an open one, the object is indefinite and the answer is uncertain. In the other examples the implication is that a specific book, bicycle or key has been mentioned or is being referred to. Hence, the pEsh e form is employed in preference to dAshtan.

14-J

The use of az pEsh___ (by) to indicate agent (with intransitive verbs)

bubakhshEn, ketAbetAn az	I'm sorry (that) I got your book
pEshem cherk shud	dirty (lit., [that] your book
gELAsem az pEshesh shekest	became soiled by me).
chetOr az pEshet gum shud?	He/she broke my glass (lit., my glass
	[got] broke[n] by him/her).
	How did you lose it? (Lit., How
	did [it] become lost by you?)

- In Dari things which happen accidentally or unexpectedly are usually expressed with intransitive verbs while the (hapless) agent is put in construction with az pEsh, in the sense of "by, because of, due to."
- Such a construction avoids or mitigates the harshness that would be conveyed by saying, "I broke" or "I tore," in favor of the less blameworthy, "It got broken (or, torn) by me," etc.

14-K

Vocabulary for Lesson Fourteen

az pEsh___	by (indicating agent)
(H)Azer	présent, in attendance (adj.)
bEchAra	helpless, poor (lit., without solution)
dega/degaN	else, some other, additional, any more, another
dEr	late, for a long time
dest zadan	to touch, handle
dunya	world
emza	signature, endorsement
esterAat kadan	to rest

<u>fAmIl</u>	family
<u>garmI</u>	heat
<u>gharIb</u>	(financially) poor
<u>gum shudan</u>	to become (or, be) lost
<u>jOsh</u>	boiling; summit, peak, "season" (for something)
<u>juwAb</u>	answer, reply
<u>juwAb dAdan</u>	to answer, reply; to dismiss, "fire," let go
<u>kase</u>	someone; (neg.) no one
<u>khu</u>	(untranslatable particle, used as a "tag" ending)
<u>kull</u>	all (with ezAfI, showing totality)
<u>mAfUz</u>	safe, secure (adj.)
<u>mamlakat</u>	country
<u>mAgUl</u>	reasonable, sensible
<u>negA kadan</u>	to keep (an eye on), look after, take care of
<u>pAdshA</u>	king
<u>paidA kadan</u>	to find, get, locate, obtain, produce
<u>pEsh e</u>	"have," "has" (belonging to, showing possession); to, (over) to
<u>pOIs</u>	police
<u>saI</u>	correct, all right, O.K.
<u>sEb</u>	apple
<u>shenAkhtan</u>	to recognize, know [pres., <u>meshnAsa</u>]
<u>sheshtan</u>	to sit, live, dwell [pres., <u>mIshIna</u> ; impvs., <u>bIshI</u> , <u>bIshInEn</u>]
<u>shIrIn</u>	sweet
<u>surkh</u>	red
<u>tAnestan</u>	to be able, can [pres., <u>mEtAna</u>]

tArIk	dark (adj.)
UshyAr	smart, bright, clever, intelligent
uttU kadan	to press, iron (clothes)
yA	or (when repeated = either . . . or)
yAd__ raftan	to forget (frequently with suffix and az [showing person])
zarUr(I)	essential, important, necessary
zendagI kadan	to live, dwell (more formal)
zubAn	language, tongue

Exercises for Lesson Fourteen

(to be written as well as practiced orally with the teacher)

Exercise 129 - Add khu or nE as required to complete these attached questions.

E.g., shumA mAnda astEn. shumA khu mAnda astEn

1. unA shumAra shenAkhtan
2. az yAdetAn na mEtra
3. fAmiletAn jelALABAd raft,
4. mariz Ale esterAat mEkuna,
5. pAdshA da kAbul zendagI mEkuna,
6. bAisekeletAna na mEbarEn
7. kAg hazAeta paidA kadI
8. sareshAn nA-wakht mEsha,
9. Ura negA mEkunEn
10. wezArat emrOz wAz nEs

Exercise 130 - Use kull + appropriate endings, as needed, or Ech to complete the following. E.g., paisa dAran? kulleshAn paisa dAran?

1. zarfA da I anwArI mAfuz nEs 2. az englestAn astan

3. sawAlA AsAn bUD 7. da Inja az amrIkA kas nEs
 4. kAlAra uttU kadI? 8. ba khyAlEm telefUn dAran
 5. dAktor sAeb mIbIna 9. kAbul da maidAn e awAI bUD
 6. dIrOz paghmAn raftEm 10. unA pIshIn esterAaf na mEkunan

Exercise 131 - Complete the following with the past participle of the verb given in (). E.g., kull e ketAbARA byAr (greftan).
 kull e ketAbARA grefta byAr

1. dars e sEzdawuma tekrAr byAEh (kadan)
2. feker juwAb bete (kadan)
3. dAlarARA tabdIl pas myAyum (kadan)
4. nANA mErEn? (khOrdan)
5. baksema maidAn e awAI mErUm (greftan)
6. bareshAn neweshta rawAn kadum (kadan)
7. bUrE khUb e safEd byArEn (kharIdan)
8. cherA feker kAr na mEkunI? (kadan)
9. bachA dest kharAb kadanesh (zadan)
10. kAlAra uttU rafta mEtAnEn (kadan)

Exercise 132 - Use the present tense of tAnestan in each of the following. E.g.,
 shumA darI gap zada ? shumA darI gap zada mEtAnEn?

1. dOkAndAr panjsadIra maida kada na
2. dAktor sAeb chand baja shumARA dIda ?
3. shumA kudAm sawAla juwAb dAda na ?
4. mA tA rOz e panjshambE rasIda na
5. bale, sAeb, kullemA rafta
6. muallEm sAeb emrOz Amada na
7. tU paidA kada na ?
8. bEchARA ega marIz as ke nAn khOrda na

9. kudAmetAn juwAb dAda ?

10. bubakhshEn, ma darI khAnda na

Exercise 133 - Use the past tense of tAnestan (including the negative when required) in the following. E.g., shumA unAra dAda na ?
shumA unAra dAda na tAnestEn?

1. dIshao bEchAra khUb esterAat kada
2. kharIda az khAter e ke paisa na dAshtan
3. besyAr nafara dAwat kada az khAter e ke khAnEmA khurd bUd
4. brAdareh aftE guzashta Amada na
5. parI-rOz shurO kada az khAter e ke wakht na dAshtEm
6. dIrOz ma kAlAra shushta
7. padar O mAdaretAn rafta ?
8. emrOz rahIm (H)Azer shuda

Exercise 134 - Use dega/dogAm as required to complete these sentences.

1. chI dArEn?
2. yag maktUb e bareh rawAn kunEn
3. yag dafE kOshesh kO
4. bare panj shash mA e darI mEkhanEm
5. dIrOz chI kadEn?
6. kudAm ketAba mEkhanEm?
7. da sAlUn kI mIshIna?
8. unA mesl e az U yakI kharIdan
9. yak pArsal e dIrOz rasId
10. dIshao da yag dAwat e raftEm
11. chI guftetAn?

Exercise 135 - Use the correct form of sheshtan in the following. E.g., muallem-etAn da kuja ? muallemetAn da kuja mIshIna?

1. du sAl pEsh mA da U khAna
2. unA da kudAm sarak e shAr e nao ?
3. yak chand daqa Inja
4. Ale shumA da kuJA ?
5. dAKtar sAeb da kuJA e kArTE sE ?

Exercise 136 - Use az pEsh _____ or pEsh e as required to complete the following.

1. ba khyAlem esh gum shud
2. qalamem kI s?
3. qalamem em gum shud
4. dAKtar cherA na mEbarEneSh?
5. chI wakht dAKtar mErEn?
6. AinE dAlEz e kI shekest?
7. marIza dAKtar kIArk bubarEn
8. khUb shud ke em na shekest
9. kAghazAra esh byAr
10. ma nEs
11. lutfan saodAra tA mOtar amrAem bubarEn

Exercise 137 - Use the correct correlative (yA or na) to complete the following.

1. na ma rafta mEtAnum khAnumem
2. yA da I afta aftE Aenda mIbInumesh
3. na shumAra dId mara
4. na dIrOz Amad emrOz
5. yA surkh rang kunEn safEd
6. yA da bAisekel mErum pyAda

LESSON FIFTEEN (dars e pAnzdawum)

15-A

Pronunciation drill (to be done only with the teacher)

1. Pronouncing /H/ (when not doing so would obliterate a meaningful distinction)

da awal e baHAr darakhta (Trees are not loaded with fruit at the
bAr na mEkunan beginning of spring)

az bar kada baHr zyAt as (There is more sea than land [in the world])

2. Contrasting /A/ and /U/

bAd neweshta kO (Write 'bAd' [wind])

bUd neweshta kO (Write 'bUd' [he/she/it was])

dIrOz besyAr bAd bUd (Yesterday there was a lot of wind)

bAma dIda mEtAnEn? (Can you see the roof?)

bUma dIda mEtAnEn? (Can you see the owl?)

bUm da sar e bAm sheshta (The owl is sitting on the roof)

Ash na dAra (He/she doesn't have 'Ash' [a noodle dish])

Ush na dAra (His/her mind is wandering)

mAsh da Ashpaz-khAna s (The lentils are in the kitchen)

mUsh da Ashpaz-khAna s (The mouse is in the kitchen)

jangal khAk dAra (The woods are [plenty] dirty)

jangal khUk dAra (There are [wild] hogs in the woods)

rA ba rA burO (Go straight [or, directly] [there])

rU ba rU burO (Go straight ahead)

tA bAnesh (Put it down)

tU bAnesh (You leave it)

tU tA kadIsh? (Did you lower [or, unload] it?)

utAq e dUd-pura barem dAd (He/she gave me the smoke-filled room)

AlU e AlA paw e chand as? (How much are the best-quality plums?)

mAr mUra mEkhura (Snakes eat insects)

3. Illustrating /ft/

khAna az pEshesh muft raft (He/she sold the house very cheap [lit., free])

taft e dEg bAlA shud (The steam from the kettle ascended)

aft rOz yag afta s (There are seven days in a week)

15-B

The subjunctive, expressing contingency

With bUDan (to be)

	<u>S i n g u l a r</u>			<u>P l u r a l</u>		
1	bAshum	I should, may be, etc.		bAshEm	we should, may be, etc.	
2	bAshI	you " " "		bAshEn	you " " "	
3	bAsha	he/she/it " "		bAshan	they " " "	

With shudan (to become)

	<u>S i n g u l a r</u>			<u>P l u r a l</u>		
1	shawum	I should, may become		shawEm	we should, may become	
2	shawI	you " " "		shawEn	you " " "	
3	shawa	he/she/it " "		shawan	they " " "	

With kadan (to do, make ___)

	<u>S i n g u l a r</u>			<u>P l u r a l</u>		
1	kunum	I should, may do, etc.		kunEm	we should, may do, etc.	
2	kunI	you " " "		kunEn	you " " "	
3	kuna	he/she/it " "		kunan	they " " "	

With raftan (to go)

	<u>S i n g u l a r</u>			<u>P l u r a l</u>		
1	burum	I should, may go, etc.		burEm	we should, may go, etc.	
2	burI	you " " "		burEn	you " " "	
3	bura	he/she/it " "		buran	they " " "	

With guftan (to say)

	<u>S i n g u l a r</u>	<u>P l u r a l</u>
1	bugOyum I should, may say	bugOEm we should, may say
2	bugOI you " " "	bugOEn you " " "
3	bugOya he/she " " "	bugOyan they " " "

1. The subjunctive forms of bUdan, shudan and kadan are irregular and are given here as exceptions to be learned. Occasionally a "regular" form bukunum may be heard instead of the irregular (but more common) kunum (cf. § 8-E-1).
2. The usual subjunctive form follows the pattern indicated by the verbs raftan (to go) and guftan (to say), i.e., it begins with a b- as prefix--cf. the imperative, § 8-E-1--and incorporates -u-, -e- or -I- as the usual connecting vowel. The first (or b-) syllable is accented.
3. Since one cannot predict the exact form that the subjunctive will take it needs to be learned as one of the basic forms of each verb, although in most cases it follows the pattern of the imperative. The subjunctive form of every verb introduced hereafter in this course will be included as a part of the vocabulary. For a summary of verb forms for all of the verbs used in this course see Appendix XI.
4. Personal endings, indicating the subject--as learned previously in § 3-F--are added. The same rules about the agreement of the subject and whether or not subject pronouns should be included are observed as for the tenses previously introduced.
5. The verb dAshtan (to have) uses a compound form for the subjunctive, consisting of the unchangeable past participle dAshta plus the appropriate form of the subjunctive of bUdan; so, dAshta bAshta, etc.
6. Except for the irregular forms, when the negative occurs the b- prefix with its accompanying vowel--e.g., be-, bu-, bI- -- is dropped and the negative prefix na- is substituted, with the accent coming on the na-.
7. It should be noted that although the subjunctive and imperative forms appear to be similar it is only in the second person plural that they are alike; the second person singular form is quite different. Thus, bAsh--bAshI; shO--shawI; kO--kunI; burO--burI; bugO--bugOI; and even bushOI--bushOI (from shushtan, to wash). The first of these forms is the imperative (already learned in § 8-G) while the second form is the subjunctive.

15-C

The subjunctive of verbs introduced in the first eight lessons (to be added to § 8-G)

I n f i n i t i v e		S u b j u n c t i v e	
		Affirmative ← 3.p.s. → Negative	
<u>Amadan</u>	to come	<u>byAya</u>	<u>nayAya</u>
<u>Awurdan</u>	to bring	<u>byAra</u>	<u>nayAra</u>
<u>bOrdan</u>	to take, carry	<u>bubara</u>	<u>nabara</u>
<u>bUdan</u>	to be	<u>bAsha</u>	<u>nabAsha</u>
<u>dAdan</u>	to give	<u>beta</u>	<u>nata</u>
<u>dAshtan</u>	to have	<u>dAshta bAsha</u>	<u>nadAshta bAsha</u>
<u>dIdan</u>	to see	<u>biIna</u>	<u>nabIna</u>
<u>fAmIdan</u>	to understand, know	<u>bufAma</u>	<u>nafAma</u>
<u>guftan</u>	to say, call, tell, ask	<u>bugOya</u>	<u>nagOya</u>
<u>kadan</u>	to do	<u>(bu)kuna</u>	<u>nakuna</u>
<u>kharIdan</u>	to buy	<u>bekhara</u>	<u>nakhara</u>
<u>pUshIdan</u>	to wear, put on	<u>bupOsha</u>	<u>napOsha</u>
<u>raftan</u>	to go, leave	<u>bura</u>	<u>nara</u>
<u>shudan</u>	to become	<u>shawa</u>	<u>nasha</u>
<u>shunIdan</u>	to hear, listen to	<u>beshnawa</u>	<u>nashnawa</u>
<u>shushtan</u>	to wash	<u>bushOya</u>	<u>nashOya</u>

15-D

Summary of verb formations for the verbs in Lessons Nine to Fifteen

I n f i n i t i v e	Present 3.p.s.	I m p e r a t i v e		Subjunctive 3.p.s.
		Singular	Plural	
<u>aftAdan</u>	to fall	<u>mefta</u>		<u>bef</u> <u>nafta</u>
<u>andAkhtan</u>	to throw	<u>mendAza</u>	<u>bendAz</u> <u>nandAz</u>	<u>bendAzEn</u> <u>nandAzEn</u>
<u>barAmadan</u>	to leave	<u>mebrAya</u>	<u>barAi</u> <u>nabrAi</u>	<u>barAEn</u> <u>nabrAEn</u>

I n f i n i t i v e		Present 3.p.s.	I m p e r a t i v e		Subjunctive 3.p.s.
			Singular	Plural	
<u>bArIdan</u>	to precipitate	<u>mEbAra</u>			<u>bubAra</u> <u>nabAra</u>
<u>bUdan</u>	to be	<u>mEbAsha</u>	See § 8-G, p. 86, for other forms		
<u>dOkhtan</u>	to sew	<u>mEdOza</u>	<u>budOz</u> <u>nadOz</u>	<u>budOzEn</u> <u>nadOzEn</u>	<u>budOza</u> <u>nadOza</u>
<u>gashtan</u>	to turn	<u>mEgarda</u>	<u>begard</u> <u>nagard</u>	<u>begardEn</u> <u>nagardEn</u>	<u>begarda</u> <u>nagarda</u>
<u>greftan</u>	to take, grab	<u>mIgIra</u>	<u>bigI</u> <u>nagI</u>	<u>bigIren</u> <u>nagIren</u>	<u>bigIra</u> <u>nagIra</u>
<u>khAndan</u>	to read, study	<u>mEkhAna</u>	<u>bekhan</u> <u>nakhan</u>	<u>bekhanEn</u> <u>nakhanEn</u>	<u>bekhana</u> <u>nakhana</u>
<u>khEstan</u>	to arise, get up	<u>mEkheza</u>	<u>bekhe</u> <u>nakhe</u>	<u>bekhezen</u> <u>nakhezen</u>	<u>bekheza</u> <u>nakheza</u>
<u>khOrdan</u>	to consume	<u>mEkhura</u>	<u>bukho</u> <u>nakho</u>	<u>bukhurEn</u> <u>nakhurEn</u>	<u>bukhura</u> <u>nakhura</u>
<u>mAndan</u>	to put, let	<u>mEmAna</u>	<u>ban</u> <u>naman</u>	<u>banEn</u> <u>namanEn</u>	<u>banana</u> <u>namana</u>
<u>rasIdan</u>	to reach, arrive	<u>mErasa</u>	<u>beras</u>	<u>berasEn</u>	<u>berasa</u> <u>narasa</u>
<u>sAkhtan</u>	to make	<u>mEsAza</u>	<u>besaz</u> <u>nasaz</u>	<u>besazen</u> <u>nasazen</u>	<u>besaza</u> <u>nasaza</u>
<u>shekstan</u>	to break [v.i.]	<u>meshkena</u>			<u>beshkona</u> <u>nashkena</u>
<u>shenAkhtan</u>	to recog- nize	<u>meshnAsa</u>			<u>beshnasa</u> <u>nashnasa</u>
<u>sheshtan</u>	to sit, live	<u>mIshIna</u>	<u>bishI</u> <u>nashI</u>	<u>bishInEn</u> <u>nashInEn</u>	<u>bishina</u> <u>nashina</u>
<u>sOkhtan</u>	to burn [v.i.]	<u>mEsOza</u>			<u>busOza</u> <u>nasOza</u>
<u>tAnestan</u>	can, to be able	<u>mEtAna</u>			<u>betAna</u> <u>natAna</u>
<u>zadan</u>	to beat, hit	<u>mEzana</u>	<u>bezan</u> <u>nazan</u>	<u>bezanEn</u> <u>nazanEn</u>	<u>bezana</u> <u>nazana</u>

1. The special mEbaSha form of bUdan (cf. § 10-B) is included in this list since only the form "as" (is) was given in the summary in § 8-G, p. 86.
2. Where blanks are left in the above chart the forms are not likely to occur.

15-E

Uses of the subjunctivePossibility

aga wakht dAshta bAshum aksAra ----- baretan neshAn mEtum	If I have time, I'll show you the pictures.
aga khUb kAr nakunI ----- munken juwAbet betum	If you don't do your work well, it's possible (that) I may let you go (= 'fire' you).
munken as ke da dEmazang ----- paidA kada betAnI	It is possible that you may be able to find (it) in De Mazang.
munken (as ke) khaO bAsha	It's possible that he/she is asleep.
shAyad fArsI gap zada natAnan	Perhaps they can't speak Persian.
shAyad fardA byAyan	Perhaps they may come tomorrow.
ma mErum ba shart e ke ----- ejAza beta	I'll go provided (lit., on condition that) he/she gives (me) permission.
farz kunEn ke tA rOz e ----- dushambE derIshIra dOkhta ----- natAna--bAz chI kunEm?	Suppose he/she can't make (lit., sew) the suit by Monday. What will we do then?

1. shAyad (perhaps, maybe) is not used with the present tense but only with the subjunctive (as here) and some tenses yet to be introduced.

Necessity / Responsibility

majbUr astum ke taqrIban tA ----- panj baja Inja bAshum	I have (or, am compelled) to stay here until approximately 5:00 o'clock.
Adam bAyad etu(r) nakuna.	One shouldn't (or, ought not to) act this way.

aga destet narasa, bAyad ----- zInAra byArI	If you can't reach (it), you should bring the ladder.
da I utAq bAyad besyAr AstA ----- gap bezanEn	You must talk very quietly in this room.
panj baja shud--bAyad khAna ----- burum	It's 5:00 o'clock--I have to (or, should) go home.
zarUr as ke pEsh e dAktor ----- bubarEsh	It's essential that you take him/ her to the doctor.

- Just as with shAyad, bAyad (should, ought to) requires the subjunctive (and some other tenses yet to be introduced).
- The examples given so far, as well as those to follow, are only representative (and not at all exhaustive) of the variety of usage for the subjunctive. Moreover, the subjunctive is required with certain special verbs, yet to be introduced in this course.
- In the nature of the case the subjunctive suggests that which is contingent upon certain other factors--whether expressed or only implied--and thus covers a wide range of such ideas: e.g., hope, desire, resolution, object or purpose, effect or consequence, disinclination, fear, order, advice, duty, necessity, effort, permission, perplexity, wish, etc. The six groupings given in this section are only by way of suggestion; they may be broken into many other categories of meaning while some of the examples given may overlap the classifications.

Inquiry

chAi tayAr kunum yA qAwa? ----- tashakur, Ech kudAimesha nE	Should I make tea or coffee? Neither one, thank you.
az bAzAr chI byArum? yak sE ----- pao gOsht byArEn	What should I bring from the market- place? Bring three 'pao's of meat.
Ale bAzAr burum? nE, Ale narO	Should I go to the marketplace now? No, don't go (just) now.
az kudAm rA paghman burEm?	Which way should we take to Paghman?
chI qesm junla besAzum?	What kind of sentence(s) should I make?

5. Note that when the subjunctive is used in asking questions the answer is given in the imperative.

Permission

ejAza s ke katIt burum? ----- -- cherA nE?
ejAza s ke az Inja aks ----- bIglIrum? -- bale, bufarmAEn

May I go with you? (Lit., Do I have permission . . . ?) Why not? (= Of course, by all means).

May I take a picture here? Yes, please do.

6. ejAzas? (ejAza + as) is a standard courtesy formula when asking for permission to do something. If the context is clear--as, for example, after sitting and talking a while--when one wants to leave, "ejAza s?" by itself (Is there permission? or, May I?) may be used without any clause following, as it will be understood that one is asking for permission to leave.

Result / Purpose

kOshesh kunEn ke tA tOp ----- da daftarem berasEn
bAisekeleta qulf kO ke ----- gum nasha
kurtIta bupOsh ke rEzesh ----- nakunI
Ush kO ke az pEshet nafta
Ush kunEn ke az yAdetAn nara
zUt shawEn ke nA-wakht nasha
kOshesh mEkunum ke fArsIra ----- zUt yAd bIglIrum
Atesh bAyad kam bAsha ----- ke dEg nasOza

Try to get to my office by noon.

Lock your bicycle so it doesn't get lost (= taken).

Wear your jacket so you don't catch cold.

Be careful that you don't drop it (lit., that it doesn't fall from [= by] you).

Be careful that you don't forget it.

Hurry up so we won't be late (lit., so it might not become late).

I'm trying to learn Persian quickly.

The fire should be low so that the food (lit., kettle) doesn't burn.

Adrasesha greftum ke baresh
chIze rawAn kunum

I got his/her address in order to
send him/her something.

Wish/ Desire

ummEd as ke kulletAn da
emte(H)An kAmyAb shawEn
khudA shafA beta
khudA kuna ke fardA
bArAn nabARA
khAnE nawetAn mubArak!
kAshke emrOz AwAleshAn
berasa
delem as ke paghmAn burum
cheshmetAn rOshan!
mAnda na bAshI!

I hope (lit., hope is) that all of
you will pass (lit., be successful
in) the examination.

May God heal [you/him/her/them].

I hope (lit., God grant that) it
won't rain tomorrow.

Congratulations on your new home!

I hope (lit., would that) I'll hear
(lit., news will arrive) from
them today.

I want to go (or, feel like going)
to Paghman.

How nice for you! (Lit., May your
eye[s] be bright).

May you not be tired!

- As previously noted, the Muslim's view of God and His sovereignty permeates his speech and causes him to attribute many commonplace occurrences of life to God's activity or will. Thus, while an English speaker is more likely to say, "I hope . . .", the speaker of Dari will often as not put this as, "May God grant . . ." or "God willing, . . ."
- The phrases khAnE nawetAn mubArak! and cheshmetAn rOshan! both have the subjunctive form bAsha (may it be) understood but not expressed.
- The word mubArak (blessed) is used to express congratulations in a variety of contexts. However, in Dari the person himself is not congratulated (mubArak) but a thing or an event related to him is. So, you would never say "shumA mubArak bAshEn" (May you be blessed [congratulated]), but:

khAnE nawetAn mubArak (bAsha)
tefletAn mubArak (bAsha)
kAr e nawetAn mubArak (bAsha)

Congratulations on your new house!

Congratulations on your baby!

Congratulations on your new job!

10. The phrase cheshmetAn rOshan! is used to express one's happiness to another on the arrival in person of or receipt of a letter from a loved one, e.g., a child. It has the idea of, "Now you are really happy; may you be so" (referring to the sparkle in one's eye on such an occasion--hence, the literal, "May your eye[s] [continue to] be bright!").
11. Along with the usual greetings (cf. § 5-G) the phrase mAnda na bAshI/En (May you not be tired!) is a common form of greeting, especially when encouragement seems to be called for. It may be followed in appreciative response by any of the following:

zenda bAshI/En	May you live [long]!
salAmat bAshI/En	May you be [kept] safe!
khush bAshI/En	May you be happy!

12. The last of these, khush bAshI (or, bAshEn), is the normal response to khush AmadEn (Welcome), equivalent to a "Thank you." (Cf. § 10-F-3.)
13. salAmat bAshI/En is also a common way of expressing appreciation in the sense of "Thank you", whether for something accepted or refused, or even in greetings. So, "Thank you, I appreciate it." If something is refused, then it is common to prefix a negative, as "nE, (tashakur) salAmat bAshI/En."
14. Although (as mentioned in § 5-G-7) there is no ordinary response to a "Thank you" which is exactly equivalent to "You're welcome," the last three mentioned wishes above serve that purpose very well. Thus, while foreigners have a tendency to overwork the word tashakur (thank you) the ordinary Afghan response to a tashakur is more likely to be salAmat bAshI/En, zenda bAshI/En or khush bAshI/En.
15. The word del (heart) is commonly used with possessive adjectives suffixed to show wish or desire, as in the example with "going to Paghman", above, and the phrase,

d e l e t A n	As you like (or, however you prefer). (Lit., your heart).
---------------	--

15-F

Vocabulary for Lesson Fifteen

Adras	address
aftAdan	to fall [pres., <u>mefta</u> ; subjv., <u>bef</u> ta]
aga	if, in case
aks greftan	to take a picture, to photograph

<u>Asta</u>	slow(ly), quiet(ly) [repeated for emphasis]
<u>Atesh</u>	fire
<u>AwAl</u>	information, news, "word" of (or, from)
ba shart e ke	on condition that, provided (that)
<u>bArIdan</u>	to precipitate (of rain or snow) [pres., <u>mEbAra</u> ; subjv., <u>bubAra</u>]
<u>bAyed</u>	should, ought to
<u>cherA nE</u>	Why not? (= of course; by all means; please do)
<u>cheshm</u>	eye
<u>dUg</u>	kettle, cooking pot
<u>dek</u>	heart; wish, preference, liking
<u>dorJshI</u>	suit (of clothes)
<u>dest rasIdan</u>	to reach
<u>dOkhtan</u>	to sew [pres., <u>mEdOza</u> ; impv., <u>budOz</u> ; subjv., <u>budOza</u>]
<u>fArsI</u>	Persian (language) [an alternate name for Dari]
<u>farz kadan</u>	to suppose, imagine, think
<u>gOsht</u>	meat, flesh
<u>jumla</u>	sentence
<u>kAmYAb</u>	successful
<u>kAshka</u>	Would that; O that
<u>kurtI</u>	(short length) coat, jacket
<u>majbUr</u>	compelled, forced; "have to"
<u>mubArak</u>	blessed, happy, fortunate; "congratulations"
<u>mumken</u>	possible
<u>neshAn dAdan</u>	to show
<u>qulf kadan</u>	to lock

rA	way, road, street
rEzesh kadan	to catch a cold
rOshan	bright, shining
sAkhtan	to make [pres., <u>mEsAza</u> ; impv., <u>besAz</u> ; subjv., <u>besAza</u>]
salAmat	safe, secure
shafA	healing, cure
shAyad	perhaps, possibly, maybe
sOkhtan	to burn, get burned (intransitive) [pres., <u>mEsOza</u> ; subjv., <u>busOza</u>]
ummEd	hope, expectation
Ush kadan	to be careful of, aware of; to pay attention that
yAd greftan	to learn
zenda	living, alive
zUt shudan	to hurry (up)

Exercises for Lesson Fifteen

(to be written as well as practiced orally with the teacher)

Exercise 138 - Complete these sentences with the appropriate subjunctive form of the verbs indicated. E.g., aga bArAn na mErum.
(bArIdan) aga bArAn bubAra, na mErum

1. aga shumA AstA AstA gap mEfAmum (zadan)
2. aga (H)ukUmat ejAza sAl e Aenda jApAn mEra (dAdan)
3. aga da tAwil-khAna I qesm bukhArI du dAna byArEn (dAshtan)
4. aga besyAr zarUri zUt khalAsesh mEkunum (bUdan)
5. aga baresh mEgum (Amadan)
6. aga dega paidA na mEsha (shekestan)
7. aga Ira baretAn fAida s (kharIdan)

8. aga darsAetAna ar rOz tekrAr bare emte(H)An tayAr
mEbAshEn (kadan)
9. aga Ira barem negA baret paisa mEtum (kadan)
10. aga sEb khUb shIrIn yak chAr pao byArEn (bUdan)

Exercise 139 - Turn these subjunctives into negatives. E.g., shAyad fardA byAya.
shAyad fardA nayAya
.....

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 1. mumken as ke da shAr e nao paidA shawa | 6. shAyad U ejAza beta |
| 2. mumken as ke U qesm gOsht dAshta bAshta | 7. fardA shAyad bArAn bubAra |
| 3. mumken as ke darwAza qulf shawa | 8. shAyad ba I qImat beta |
| 4. mumken as ke darI gap zada betAna | 9. shAyad I qAlIna khush kuna |
| 5. mumken as ke maktUbesh berasa | 10. shAyad wakht khAna burum |

Exercise 140 - Complete the following with the appropriate subjunctive form of the verbs indicated in (). E.g., shAr mErUm ba shart e ke wakht (dAshtan) shAr mErUm ba shart e ke wakht dAshta bAshum

1. pyAda mErEm ba shart e ke bArAn na (bArIdan)
2. mEbarumesh ba shart e ke da mOtar jAI (bUdan)
3. pEshesh mErUm ba shart e ke daftaresh emrOz wAz (bUdan)
4. bareshAn neweshta mEkunum ba shart e ke AdraseshAn paidA
(shudan)
5. baresh mEgum ba shart e ke esh (dIdan)

Exercise 141 - Complete the following with majbUr, zarUr or bAyad as needed.
E.g., astum ke unja burum. majbUr astum ke unja burum

1. bEchAra as ke shao O rOz kAr kuna
2. as ke emrOz khat neweshta kunI
3. ma shash bajE sOb barAyum
4. astEm ke pyAda burEm
5. khAnE mestar klArk bubarEnesh

6. as ke zUt fArsIra yAd bigIrum
7. az bAzAr saoda byArum
8. emrOz astum ke kAlLara bushOyum
9. rOz e jummAm kAr kunEm ke khalAs shawa
10. as ke shumA Inja bAshEn

Exercise 142 - Complete these sentences with the first person singular subjunctive form of the verbs given in (). E.g., chAi tayAr yA qAWa? (kadan) chAi tayAr kunum yA qAWa?

1. rAjEba I maktUb amrAe kI gap ? (zadan)
2. chand baja ? (raftan)
3. emshao chand safa ? (khAndan)
4. baresh chand dAna ? (dAdan)
5. kudAm qesmesha estEmAl ? (kadan)
6. bare fardA chand jumla neweshta ? (kadan)
7. kAghaza baresh chI wakht ? (bOrdan)
8. baretAn degAm chAi ? (andAkhtan)
9. bare nAn e shao chI tayAr ? (kadan)
10. bareshAn chI ? (guftan)

Exercise 143 - Complete the following with the appropriate subjunctive form of the verbs shown in (). E.g., bAisekeleta qulf kO ke gum na (shudan) bAisekeleta qulf kO ke gum nasha

1. Ush kunEn ke dEg na (sOkhtan)
2. unA kOshesh mEkunan ke dari gap (zadan)
3. pOsta-khAna raftum ke pArsala rawAn (kadan)
4. majbUr nEstEm ke pyAda (raftan)
5. kOshesh kunEn ke tA naorOz (Amadan)
6. yAdetan ke kull e sawAlLara juwAb (raftan, dAdan)

7. Ush kunEn ke az pEshetAn (shekestan)
 8. baresh neweshta kadum ke zUt rawAnesh (kadan)

Exercise 144 - Complete the following with the appropriate subjunctive form of the verbs shown in (). E.g., ummEd as ke emrOz awA khUb (shudan) ummEd as ke emrOz awA khUb shawa

1. khudA ke kulletAn kAmyAb (kadan, shudan)
2. ummEd as ke mestar fArmar emrOz (Amadan)
3. khudA ke padaretAn zUt jOr (kadan, shudan)
4. ummEd as ke Ashpaz khAnEshAna paidA kada (tAnestan)
5. kAshke unA emrOz telefUn (kadan)
6. kAshke mara khao na (greftan)
7. ummEd as ke U Ale da daftar (bUdan)

Exercise 145 - Replace progressively each of the following words or phrases for the appropriate words or phrases in the sentence, zenda bAshI. E.g., mAnda na. mAnda na. bAshI

- | | | |
|-------------|------------|---------------------|
| 1. khush | 5. salamat | 8. mubArak |
| 2. bAshEn | 6. bAshI | 9. bachEtAn |
| 3. zenda | 7. bAsha | 10. mOtar e nawetAn |
| 4. mAnda na | | |

LESSON SIXTEEN (dars e shAnzdawum)

16-A

Pronunciation drill (to be done only with the teacher)

1. Contrasting /ch/ and /j/

bare mEmAn chAi tayAr kO (Get tea ready for the guest)

bare mEmAn jAi tayAr kO (Get a place ready for the guest)

ba khyAlem ke U chuWAn as (I think it's an alloy)

ba khyAlem ke U juWAn as (I think he/she is a young person)

bEchAra Ech chUrI na dAra (The poor woman doesn't have a bangle)

bEchAra Ech jUrI na dAra (The poor fellow is a hypochondriac)

panj bacha s (There are five boys)

panj baja s (It's five o'clock)

I kach as (This is a [carpenter's] square)

I kaj as (This is crooked)

shIr mEjUshId (The milk was boiling)

shIr mEchUshId ([The baby] was drinking [lit., sucking] milk)

2. Illustrating /ao/

bare gao az aodAn ao bete (Give the cow water from the water container)

chaokIra da aolI bOrd (He/she carried the chair out into the yard)

palawa khOrda, khao kad (He/she ate 'palao' and went to sleep)

3. Illustrating /khch/ and /khsh/

qAlIn khUb $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{nakhch} \\ \text{nakhsh} \end{array} \right\}$ dAra (The rug has a very nice pattern in it)

mEz $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{pakhch} \\ \text{pakhsh} \end{array} \right\}$ as (The table is low)

paisara $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{bakhch} \\ \text{bakhsh} \end{array} \right\}$ kad (He/she distributed the money)

16-B

Suggestions with "Let's . . ." (which include the speaker)

byAEn ke yak sAt gap bezanEm	Let's chat a while.
byAEn ke pyAda burEm	Let's walk (lit., go on foot) [instead of some other way].
byAEn ke unAra zAmat natEm	Let's not bother them.
byAEn ke az rAdyO khabarAra ----- beshnawEm	Let's listen to the news on the radio.
byAEn ke fardA qandAr narEm ----- -- bAz pas-fardA mErEm	Let's not go to Kandahar tomorrow; but (lit., then) we'll go the day after tomorrow.

1. Suggestions with "Let's . . ." are introduced by the plural imperative form of the verb *Amadan* (to come) followed usually by the conjunction *ke* (that) and always by the final verb in the first person plural form of the subjunctive. Literally, this construction means: "Come that we may . . ." It can be affirmative or negative, i.e., "Let's," "Let's not."
2. *sAt* in the sense of "a period of time" used here with *yak* does not mean exactly one hour but only "a time," "a while" (cf. § 12-H-12).

16-C

The idiom "Let" in the sense of "permit, allow" (with *mAndan*)

bAnEn ke saresh yag du rOz ----- feker kunum	Let me think about it for a couple of days.
(bAn ke) bIbInum	Let me see . . .
bAnEneshAn ke yagjAi safar ----- kunan	Let them travel together.
mEmAnumesh ke yak chand ----- rOz esterAat kuna	I'm letting him/her rest a few days.
cherA na mAndI ke khUb ----- pukhta shawa	Why didn't you let it get well-done?
dAktar na mEmAna ke dega ----- segret beকাশum	The doctor won't let me smoke (cigarettes) any more.

namAnesh ke aogAr shawa	Don't let him/her get hurt.
ta du baja da I sarak	They don't allow (or, permit) cars on this road until 2:00 o'clock.
mOtarAra na mEmAnan	
aga mara bAna mAam amrAetAn	If he/she lets me, I'll go with you, too.
mErum	

1. The verb mAndan, previously introduced in the sense of "put, place", also conveys the idea of "let, permit." mAndan may occur in any form as required and also frequently with attached objects to indicate who is being given the permission. If followed by a subordinate clause, the clause is introduced by ke (that) and its verb occurs in the subjunctive, inflected to agree in person and number with the object of "Let," whether expressed or not.
2. Note that this idiom logically occurs only with the first and third persons, since one would hardly command a person to "Let (him)self" do something (as if, "Let you . . .").
3. It is to be distinguished from the "Let's . . ." idiom of § 16-B, which includes the speaker as well and serves as an exhortation. The "Let" idiom with mAndan involves only permission to do something.
4. The second example, (bAn ke) biBInum (Let me see), is a common non-committal reply, frequently suggesting non-compliance. It is something like, "Let me think about it . . ."
5. Observe the difference that stress makes in the phrase yagjAi. When put on yag the combination yagjAi means "together"; when put on jAi the utterance yag jAi means merely "some (lit., one) place."
6. The verb kashIdan has a variety of meanings depending on its context--to draw, pull, take off (e.g., clothes, shoes), smoke (as here, with cigarettes). Note that dega in the sentence on smoking is used adverbially in the sense of "any longer."
7. The idea of "Let" may also be occasionally conveyed with bUdan (to be, = to wait) in the imperative. So,

bAshEn ke az AghA e	Let me (lit., Wait that I may) ask Mr. Rafiqi (= allow me to, give me time to):
rafiqI pursAn kunum	

16-D

The time prepositions pEsh az (before), da wakht e (at the time of, during), bAd az (after) and az I bAd (from now on, after this)

pEsh.az I khu etu(r) na bUd
nAnā khOrda mIrI, yA
pEsh az nAn?
pEsh az rOz e jumma dIda
mEtAnIsh?
pEsh az zemestAn khazAn
myAya

It/he/she didn't use to be like this, did it/he/she?

Are you going after you eat, or before eating?

Can you see him/her before Friday?

Autumn (or, fall) comes before winter.

1. The preposition pEsh az (before [in time]) as used here needs to be distinguished from the adverb pEsh (ago) introduced in § 10-I.

da wakht e Δ(H)mad shA
bAbA qandAr pAi-takht
e afghAnestAn bUd
munAseb nEs ke da wakht e
dars ghAlmaghAl kunEn

During the era (or, time) of Ahmad Shah Baba Kandahar was the capital of Afghanistan.

It's not proper to make (a lot of) noise during the lesson.

2. wakht e ke in the sense of "while, when" occurs as a conjunction and should be distinguished from da wakht e (during, at the time of). So,

wakht e ke nAn pukhta shawa
mara sada kO

Call me when the food is (lit., becomes) cooked.

Note that this phrase can be used with the present (§ 18-G-3) and simple past (§ 23-C) tenses as well as the subjunctive (as here) and the past perfect tense (yet to be introduced, § 20-D).

bAd az chAsht kame esterAat
mEkunum
bAd az ar sE sAt I dawAra
bukhO
bAd az I muallem sAeba
pursAn kO

I'm going to rest a little this afternoon.

Take this medicine after every three hours.

After this ask the teacher.

bAd az yak sAl mOtara ----- mEfrOshum
bAd az Id kArEtAna khalAs ----- mEkuna
mArkEt rOzA e pan(j)shambE ----- bAd az tOpAm wAz mEbAsha
bAd az baHAr tAbestAn as

I'm going to sell the car after a year.

He/she will finish your work after Id (= a religious celebration).

The market (or, shopping center) is open on Thursday afternoons, too.

Summer comes (lit., is) after spring.

- The preposition bAd az (after [in time]) as used here is interchangeable with the adverb bAd (afterwards, from now) in numbered time phrases. In other words, sE afta bAd = bAd az sE afta (after three weeks).
- Religious celebrations--called Id--in Afghanistan are based on the lunar calendar and therefore vary from year to year. There are two of them annually, viz.
 - Id e ramazAn, the three-day holiday after ramazAn (the month of fasting) is over.
 - Id e qurbAn, the four-day holiday (one day prior to Id and three days of Id) commemorating the sacrifice of Abraham's son.
- There are other religious holidays in the year, but they are not referred to as Id. See Appendix XIII.

az I bAd kOshesh kunEn ke ----- mEwE pukhta bekharEn
az I bAd bEKAr na mEmAnI
az I bAd masULiyatet zyAt ----- mEsha
az I bAd tayAra kudAm rOzA ----- taraf e tErAn mEra?

From now on try to buy ripe fruit.

From now on you won't be left without work (or, idle) [i.e., I'll assign you something to do].

From now on your responsibility will be greater.

From now on which days does the plane go to Teheran?

- az I bAd means the same thing as bAd az I (after this, from now on).

16-E

The suffix -dAn (or, -dAnI), meaning container

awal aodAna katI aw e.jOsh
khUb bushOi -- bAz az
ao puresh kO
guldAnyAra yak sAt da
aftao bubarEn

First wash the water-container well with boiling water--then fill it with water.

Take the flower pots out into the sun for a while.

16-F

Expressing "to like, prefer, be pleased with"
(using khush dAshtan and khush___Amadan)

katI chAi shIrAm khush dArEm
I qesm pEshAmada khush
na dArum
mA khush na dArEm ke jAi
nA-wakht berasEm
shAgerdAem fArsIra besyAr
khush dAran
U amshIra teflAra besyAr
khush dAra
shAyad I guldAnI khushesh
byAya
zemestAn uqa khushemA na myAya

We like milk with our tea, too.

I don't like this kind of behavior.

We don't like to be (lit., arrive) late anywhere.

My students like Persian very much.

That nurse likes children (lit., infants) very much.

Perhaps he/she might like this vase.

We don't care so much for winter.

1. khush (happy) + dAshtan (to have) is used idiomatically in the sense of "to have a liking for," "to like," or "to prefer," for both things and people. However, since Dari is rather sparing in its use of "like" in the sense of "love"--because of the possibility of being "misunderstood" (cf. § 8-B-4)--one's liking of a certain person is usually expressed impersonally, as:

U khUb Adam as
U khUb zan as

He's a fine person.

She's a fine woman.

2. Another very idiomatic way of showing one's liking for a thing, whether tangible or not, is to use the "thing liked" as the subject of the sen-

tence with the appropriate tense of Amadan (to come) agreeing with it, plus khush___ and the suffix which indicates the person doing the "lik-ing." In the examples given the sentences are literally (and clumsily) translated as: "This vase may perhaps come happy (or, pleased) to him/her" and "Winter doesn't come so happy (or, pleased) to us." The verb Amadan (to come) may be affirmative or negative and be used in any appropriate tense or mood/mode.

3. Since names of languages are per se specific, the object marker is not always used.
- (a) With the verbs fAmIdan (to know, understand), khAndan (to read, study), neweshta kadan (to write), yAd graftan (to learn)--and dars dAdan and yAd dAshtan, yet to be introduced--it may or may not occur.
- (b) With guftan (to say) and gap zadan (to speak) it is not used.
- (c) With khush dAshtan (to like [as here]) it is required.

In the optional cases the context may indicate whether or not it should be used. So,

ma fArsI mEkhAnum	I'm studying Persian.
kudAm fArsIra (mEkhAnEn)?	Which Persian (are you studying)?

Here the questioner wants more specific information as to the kind of Persian being studied (e.g., Afghan, Iranian).

16-G

The reflexive and/or emphatic word khud (self, selves, own)

khudeshAn mEran	They themselves are going.
khudetAn darsa bekhAnEn	Study the lesson yourselves.
bAnEn ke khudesh gap bezana	Let him/her say it him/herself.
khudem neweshta na kadum lAken	I myself didn't write, but my wife
khAnumem neweshta kad	did.

1. khud may be used as a pronoun referring to the subject. In such cases it is reflexive in meaning (= self, selves) and always takes the attached personal pronouns (of § 6-B) which reflect the same person as the subject. These are added to khud as suffixes.

khudema cherA na guftI?	Why didn't you tell me directly (lit., myself)?
cherA katI khudem gap na zadI?	Why didn't you speak to me directly?

khudsha bugOEn
khud e dAktara bugOEn
khud e wazIr sAeba mulAqAt

kada na tAnestum

Tell him/her directly (i.e., him/herself).

Tell the doctor himself (or, directly).

I wasn't able to meet the (Government) Minister himself (i.e., directly).

2. khud may be used as a pronoun referring to an object, whether of a verb or a preposition. As such it is emphatic in meaning (= self, selves) and takes either the attached personal pronouns (of § 6-B) which reflect the same person as the object or a noun replacement for that object (as in the examples with dAktar and wazIr). When this form is used as the specific object of a verb the object marker is, of course, required.

emrOz utAqema jam mEkunum	I'll straighten up my <u>room</u> today [instead of something else].
emrOz utAq e khuda jam mEkunum	I'll straighten up <u>my</u> room today [instead of someone else's].
emrOz utAq e khudema jam ----- mEkunum	I'll straighten up my <u>own</u> room today.
ketAbaeta byAr	Bring your <u>books</u> .
ketAba e kIra byArum?	Whose books should I bring?
ketAba e khuda byAr	Bring <u>your</u> books.
ketAba e khudeta byAr	Bring your <u>own</u> books.
bAisekelesha mefrOsha?	Is he/she selling his/her <u>bicycle</u> [rather than something else]?
bAisekol e khuda mefrOsha	He/she is selling <u>his/her</u> bicycle [not someone else's].
bAisekel e khudsha mefrOsha	He/she is selling his/her <u>own</u> bicycle.
amrAe qalametAn neweshta ----- kunEn	Write with your <u>pen</u> [rather than with something else].
amrAe qalam e khud neweshta ----- kunEn	Write with <u>your</u> pen [rather than with someone else's].

amrAe qalam e khudetAn

neweshta kunEn
Injara mesl e khAnEtAn

bedAnEn
Injara mesl e khAnE khud

bedAnEn
Injara mesl e khAnE

khudetAn bedAnEn

Write with your own pen.

Make yourself at home (lit., Consider this place your home).

Make yourself at home (lit., Consider this place your home).

Make yourself at home (lit., Consider this place your own home).

3. khud may be used as an adjective referring to the subject. In such cases it is emphatic in meaning (= own) and may occur with or without the attached personal pronouns (of § 6-B) which reflect the same person as the subject. These are added to khud as suffixes. When required, the object marker may also be added.
4. Whether or not attached personal pronouns are added as suffixes depends upon the degree of emphasis desired. The examples above give three forms (without khud, with khud alone and with khud + the personal suffixes), corresponding roughly to the three degrees of emphasis, for example, in the series: home, your home, your own home.
5. This usage of khud most commonly occurs with third persons (he, she, it, they) in order to avoid ambiguity. A question like bAisekelesha me-frOsha?--while primarily stressing "bicycle"--could mean: Is he selling her bicycle? Is she selling his bicycle? Is either one selling his/her own bicycle? Is either one selling someone else's bicycle? Only the addition of khud (= own) can clarify the meaning.
6. khud as an adjective referring to the subject occurs with first and second persons (I, we, you) for emphasis only since there is no ambiguity in such statements as "I'll straighten up my room today" and "Bring your books." Normally the second person forms (particularly in the imperative [command] mood) take the regular attached personal pronouns without khud unless special emphasis is desired.

qalamesha baresh dAdum
qalam e khudeshA baresh dAdum
amrAe qalamesh neweshta

mEkunI?

I gave him/her his/her pen [rather than something else].

I gave him/her his/her own pen [not someone else's].

Are you writing with his/her pen [rather than with something else]?

amrAe qalam e khudesh

neweshta mEkunI?

Are you writing with his/her pen
[rather than with your own]?

7. khud may be used as an adjective referring to an object, whether of a verb or a preposition. As such it is emphatic in meaning (= own) and must have personal pronouns attached. It may also take the object marker. In this construction khud could not be used alone as it would then refer to the subject (as noted above in 3, 4, 5 and 6). So, in the above examples, to say qalam e khuda baresh dAdum (I gave him my pen) and amrAe qalam e khud neweshta mEkunI? (Are you writing with your own pen?), while possible, would have a different meaning from the sentences given in this section.

16-H Vocabulary for Lesson Sixteen

aftao	sun, sunshine
aodAn	water-storage container (usually a tin)
aogAr	hurt, injured
az I bAd	after this [temporal], from now on
bAd az	after, following
baHAr	spring (season)
bEkAr	unemployed, without work; "free," unoccupied
da wakht e	during, while, at the time of
dAnestan	to know, consider [pres., mEdAna; impv., bedAn; subjv., bedAna]
furOkhtan	to sell [pres., mefrOsha; impv., bufrOsh; subjv., bufrOsha]
ghAlmaghAl kadan	to make a noise or "racket"
guldan(I)	flowerpot; vase
Id	religious celebration; "Eid"
'jam kadan	to collect, gather, assemble; to straighten (or, tidy) up
kame	slightly, a little, a little bit

<u>kashIdan</u>	to draw, pull, take off; smoke [pres., <u>mEkasha</u> ; impv., <u>bekash</u> ; subjv., <u>bekasha</u>]
<u>khabar(A)</u>	news
<u>khazAn</u>	autumn, fall (season)
<u>khud</u>	-self, -selves, own (reflexive and emphatic)
<u>khush</u> ___ <u>Amadan</u>	to like, be pleased with
<u>khush dAshtan</u>	to like, prefer (something or [occas.] someone)
<u>masUliyat</u>	responsibility
<u>mulAqAt kadan</u>	to meet, have an appointment with, visit
<u>munAseb</u>	proper, fitting, appropriate
<u>pAi-takht</u>	capital (city)
<u>pEshAmad</u>	behavior
<u>pEsh az</u>	before [temporal], "used to"
<u>pukhta</u>	cooked; ripe; paved
<u>pur kadan</u>	to fill
<u>pursAn kadan</u>	to ask, inquire
<u>sadA kadan</u>	to call (someone [with the voice, not on the telephone])
<u>safar kadan</u>	to travel, journey, make a trip
<u>segret</u>	cigarette [used with <u>kashIdan</u>]
<u>tAbestAn</u>	summer
<u>tayAra</u>	airplane
<u>wakht e ke</u>	when, while
<u>wazIr</u>	(Government) Minister
<u>yagJai</u>	together
<u>zAmat dAdan</u>	to trouble, bother (someone)
<u>zemestAn</u>	winter

zyAt (zyAd) more, great(er)

Exercises for Lesson Sixteen

(to be written as well as practiced orally with the teacher)

Exercise 146 - Supply the correct form of the verb indicated in () to complete these sentences. E.g., byAEn ke pyAda (raftan).
byAEn ke pyAda burEm

1. byAEn ke yak sAt khAnEshAn (raftan)
2. byAEn ke da U rastUrAn nAn (khOrdan)
3. byAEn ke baresh telefUn (kadan)
4. byAEn ke guldAnyAra yak sAt da aftao (mAndan)
5. byAEn ke yagjAi dars (khAndan)
6. byAEn ke az mestar klArk pursAn (kadan)
7. byAEn ke chand rOz saresh feker (kadan)
8. byAEn ke emshao da shafA-khAna esh (dIdan)
9. byAEn ke da aftao (sheshtan)
10. byAEn ke yak chand jumLE dega (sAkhtan)

Exercise 147 - Complete these sentences with the correct form of the verb shown in (). E.g., bAnEsh ke emrOz khAna (raftan).
bAnEsh ke emrOz khAna bura

1. na mAndumeshAn ke ghAlmaghAl (kadan)
2. kAshke bAnEtAn ke emrOz wakht (raftan)
3. na mAndumesh ke shumAra zAmat (dAdan)
4. bAnEn ke UAm (Amadan)
5. aga (H)ukUmat bAna mA Ale mOtara (furOkhtan)
6. bAnesh ke az khudesh pursAn (kadan)

Exercise 148 - Use pEsh az, bAd az and az I bAd as required to complete these.

1. I kullA na mEpUshIdum
2. nAn e chAsht yak chand daqIqa esterAat mEkunum
3. I gulaemA eqa khUb na bUd
4. rOZA e panjshambE Amada na mEtAna
5. ba tayAra safar mEkunum
6. IAm eqa masULIyat dAshtEn?
7. sEb paidA na mEsha
8. kAbul pai-takht e afghAnestAn qandAr bUd
9. nAn e chAshta duwAzda O nIm baja mEkhurEm
10. I juwAb e I sawAla na mEfAmIdum

Exercise 149 - Use da, da wakht e or wakht e ke as required to complete these.

1. zemestAn kAbul cheqa sard mEbAsha?
2. dars mEkhanEn safe nawad O shashuma khUb bibInEn
3. khAna na budEm dOstemA Amad
4. I dawAra khao bukhurEn
5. Id mardum dOstA e khuda mIbInan
6. umUman baHAr bArAn mEbAra
7. chIzera na mEfAmEn bAyad az ma pursAn kunEn
8. dIdumesh se(H)atesh khUb bUd
9. emte(H)An Ech gap nazanEn
10. tayAra berasa barema telefUn mEkuna

Exercise 150 - Change the singular subjects of the following sentences to the plurals of the same persons. E.g., I darsa khush dArum
I darsa khush dArEm

1. rang e sAlUna khush na dAra
2. I qesm ketAbAra khush dArI?
3. kAr e nawa besyAr khush dArum
4. I qesm shernIra besyAr khush dArum

5. U sEba khush na dAra

6. sInumAra uqa khush na dArI?

Exercise 151 - Complete the following with the correct form of khud. E.g.,
 darsa bekhAnEn. khudetAn darsa bekhAnEn

1. nAmad
2. mOtar e chera na mefrOshEn?
3. bAyad wazIr saEba mulAqAt kunEn
4. sAkhtumesh
5. wakht e ke byAya mara sada kO
6. khAnEtAna mesl e khAnE mEdAnum
7. khAnumesh kull e khAnara jam kad
8. amrAe osh gap zadEn?
9. kOshesh mEkunum ke darsa yAd bIgIrum
10. na myAyI?
11. tarkArIra pOst kadum
12. munAseb nEs ke pursAn kuna
13. Am mEra ba shart e ke wakht dAshta bAsha
14. pEshetAn myAyum
15. mara na guft

Exercise 152 - Replace progressively each of the following words or phrases for the appropriate words in the sentence, bAnEn ke khudesh yAd bIgIra. E.g., khudem bAnEn ke khudem yAd bIgIrum

- | | | |
|----------------|-------------|--------------------|
| 1. khudemA | 4. khudem | 7. khudet |
| 2. khudeshAn | 5. khudemA | 8. chera na mAndan |
| 3. bAyad bAnan | 6. khudetAn | 9. khudemA |

LESSON SEVENTEEN (dars e abdawum)

17-A

Pronunciation drill (to be done only with the teacher)

1. Contrasting /s/ and /z/

U Adam sAlem nEs (That man is not healthy)

U Adam zAlem nEs (That man is not cruel)

sAl neweshta kadum (I wrote 'sAl' [year])

zAl neweshta kadum (I wrote 'zAl' ['z'])

andAzE saresha mEfAmI? (Do you know what his/her head size is?)

andAzE zaresha mEfAmI? (Do you know what his/her financial position is?)

ar chIz sawAl mEsha (Everything will be looked into [or, questioned])

ar chIz zawAl mEsha (Everything will be demoted [or, put down])

mara bAsI natEn (Don't give me stale [ones])

mara bAzI natEn (Don't [try to] fool [or, deceive] me)

U az IrAn as (He/she is from Iran)

mara az chAi bas as (I've had enough tea)

2. Contrasting /A/ and /O/

I shAr as (This is the city)

I shOr as (This is salty)

aw e'shAr shOr nEs (The water of the city is not salty)

rAzesh mAUm nEs (I don't know his/her/its secret)

rOzesh mAUm nEs (I don't know the date of it)

I jAi chuqur as (This place is deep)

I jOi chuqur as (This ditch is deep)

3. Illustrating /ghz/

maghz e chArmaghz pawe chand as? (How much are shelled walnuts?)

17-B

The verb khAstan (to want, send for, order)

mEkhaEn ke da Inja emZA kunum?	Do you want me to sign here?
bIbI ke khalifa chI mEkhaYa?	See what the headman (or, chief craftsman) wants.
chI mEkhaEn? mEkhaYum ke chand ----- daqA Inja kaseRa bIbInum	What do you want? I want to see someone here for a few minutes.
mEkhaYum ke amraem pas e ----- saoda burEn	I want you to go shopping (lit., for supplies) with me.
na khAstum ke shumAra zAmat ----- betum	I didn't want to bother you.
dIroZ kuJA mEkhaStI ke burI?	Where did you want to go yesterday?
mEkhaStum ke rAjEba kAretAn az ----- mestar fAks mAUmAt bIgIrum	I wanted to find out about your work from Mr. Fox.
mEkhaStum ke shumArAm khabar ----- kunum lAken telefUnem ----- kharAb bUd	I wanted to let you know, too, but my telephone was out-of-order (lit., spoiled).
chI mEkhaYI? mEkhaYum ke ----- mAI bukhurum	What do you want (= What would you like [to order])? I want to have (lit., eat) fish.
chI mEkhaEn? murch 0 namak ----- (mEkhaEm)	What would you like (lit., do you want)? (We want [some]) pepper and salt.
kIra bekhAyum?	Who(m) should I call (or, ask for)?
kudAm ketAba khAstEn?	Which book did you send for?
khalifara bare rOz e jumma ----- na khAstum	I didn't send for the chief craftsman for Friday.
bare chand daqIqa bekhAEnesh	Call him/her for a few minutes.

1. The verb khAstan, basically "to want," has various meanings depending on the context; so, to want, call, ask for, send for, order.

2. Although it may occur independently in any tense or mood/mode--in which case, of course, it may take the attached personal pronouns suffixed as objects and (if needed) the object marker--when khAstan is followed by an object clause it takes the subjunctive. So, the literal Dari form is "Do you want that I should sign here?" rather than "Do you want me to sign here?" (which is the normal English form). The accompanying subjunctive does not have tense per se; it derives its time element from the tense of khAstan with which it is used.
3. Frequently where the simple past would be used in English Dari prefers the past progressive. E.g., mEkhAstum ke . . . , "I wanted to (lit., I was wanting to . . .)."
4. In the imperative and subjunctive forms khAstan is more likely to mean "call, ask for, send for" or "order" since it is easier to 'command' such actions than to command a mere desire.
5. khalifa is a title used for a variety of semi-skilled vocational workers, artisans or craftsmen. It is also used for the bus or truck driver as well as the headman, foreman or 'boss' of a group of workers.
6. Note that the English order "salt and pepper" is reversed in Dari: "pepper and salt."
7. An alternate way of showing wish or desire is by using the word del (heart)--as suggested in § 15-E-15--in construction with the subjunctive. So,

delem as ke yak sAt

I want to go (or, feel like going) for a walk for a little while.

awAkhUrI burum

With awAkhUrI (lit., air-eating) cf. the English, "to go out for some (fresh) air."

17-C

rukhsat and rukhsatI in the sense of "leave, holiday," "on leave"

ma emrOz rukhsat astum

I'm on leave (= free) today.

Ale rukhsat astEn

You are 'excused' now.

ma dIrOz wakht rukhsat shudum

I got off early yesterday.

bubakhshEn, shumAra rukhsat

I'm sorry (but) I can't give you leave (i.e., let you off).

dAda na mEtAnum

emrOz rukhsat grefta na mEtAna

He/she can't get the day off (or, leave, a holiday) today.

se(H)atesh khUb nEs--mEkhAya ----- ke chand rOz rukhsat biGira	He/she doesn't feel well (lit., his/ her health isn't good)--he/she wants to take off a few days.
chI wakht rukhsati mErEn?	When are you going on holiday?
shumA da afghAnestAn sAle chand ----- rOz rukhsati umUmI dArEn?	How many public holidays (lit., days of public holiday) a year do you have in Afghanistan?
da afghAnestAn sAle azhda ----- rOz rukhsati umUmI s	In Afghanistan there are 18 public holidays a year.
da I mA chand rOz ----- rukhsati dArEn?	How many days 'off' (lit., holidays) do you have this month?
naorOz, yAne rOz e awal e ----- sAl, rukhsati umUmI s	'Nauroz' [= New Year's Day], that is, the first day of the year, is a public holiday.

- As the above examples reveal, rukhsat may occur with bUdan, shudan, dAdan and greftan while rukhsati is found with bUdan, dAshtan and raftan.
- Both words convey the idea of being "on leave," "off," "free," "on holiday," "leave," "holiday" and "excused," depending on the context and the particular verb they are used with.
- The noun se(H)at (health) is commonly used in greetings. Besides hearing chI Al dArEn? (How are you?) one may frequently be asked,

se(E)atetan khUb as?

Is your health good?

- In addition to Fridays, there are eighteen days of public (umUmI) holiday per year in Afghanistan. Some of these have already been referred to (as Id) in § 16-D-4, 5. For a list of all public holidays see Appendix XIII.
- Besides the 18 public holidays now regulations state that:
 - when a single working day comes between two holidays that day is also taken off; and
 - when a one-day public holiday happens to fall on Friday (which is a holiday anyway) then the next day, Saturday, is taken as a holiday, too.

17-D

The words bIrU(n) (outside), darU(n) (inside), pAyAn (beneath, down[stairs]) and bAlA (over, above, up[stairs])

bare yak chand daqa bIrU mErUm

I'm going 'out' for a few minutes.

senf besyAr sard as--byAEn ke ----- bIrU bIshInEm ke garm shawEm	The classroom is very cold; let's sit <u>outside</u> to get warm.
ushtukAra na mAEn ke bIrU ----- buran	Don't let the children go <u>outside</u> .
mOtar da bIrU s -- Ushet ----- { sar } { taraf } esh bAsha	The car is <u>outside</u> ; keep an eye on it (lit., your care [or, attention] should be on [or, towards] it).
az khAter e bArAn ushtukA ----- majbUr astan ke da ----- darU bAZI kunan	The children have to play <u>inside</u> because of the rain.
gulAra darU bubarEn chera ----- ke besyAr khunuk as	Take the flowers <u>inside</u> because it's very cold.
mEkhAyum ke afte Aenda khAnA ----- e pAyAna rang kunum	I want to paint the <u>downstairs</u> rooms next week.
bAneshAn ke pAyAn buran	Let them go <u>downstairs</u> .
U aks besyAr beland as -- ----- kame pAyAnesh kO	That picture is too high; <u>lower</u> it a little bit.
shumA Inja pAyAn mEshEn?	Are you <u>getting off</u> (e.g., the bus) here?
tashnAb bALA s	The bathroom is <u>upstairs</u> .
utAqA e bALA khUb garm as	The <u>upstairs</u> rooms are nice and warm.
lutfan bALA burEn	Please go <u>upstairs</u> .
bALA shO !	Get aboard (lit., go [or, become] <u>up</u>)!

1. These adverbs of place, because essentially nouns, can by being constructed with ezAfI function as prepositions as well. For example,

mOtara da bIrUn e garAj estAd ----- kadum ke pAk kunI	I parked the car <u>outside</u> (of) the garage so you could clean it.
---	--

tair e fAltUra da darUn e
mOtar bAnEn
darUn O bIrUn e kelkInAra
khUb bushOa

Put the spare tire inside (of) the car.

Wash inside and outside of the windows well.

- The final /n/ on bIrU(n) and darU(n) is usually omitted when the words are used alone as adverbs but included when they occur as prepositions (with ezAff) because of the following vowel.
- pAyAn shudan (to descend, get down, alight) is synonymous with tA shudan (cf. § 7-E) and is used equally commonly for getting off a bus. The transitive idea is suggested by the use of kadan (to do) with pAyAn, meaning "to lower [something]."
- bAlA shudan (to ascend, get on [or, aboard]) is the common way of telling people to board a bus.

17-E

-a as a time suffix to indicate age (usually of people and animals)

khwAretAn dIrOz chand sAla
shud? -- asht sAla
tefletAn chand rOza s? da rOza
chUchA e sagetAn chand
wakhta s? panj mA

How old was your sister yesterday?
Eight years old.

How old is your baby? Ten days old.

How old are your puppies? Five months old.

- When the time suffix -a is added to certain time words (e.g., sAl, rOz, mA, wakht) and used with chand it adds the idea of "How many _____ old?" to the question, which may be answered simply with a number and the suffixed form of that time word.
- This idiom is mainly used for persons or animals while the "age" of inanimate things is expressed in other ways (depending on the situation), yet to be introduced (cf. § 19-E).
- Although it is common for Afghans to ask people their age--it being considered quite proper to do so--foreigners who do not wish to reveal their age may get out of answering a question regarding it by simply teasing or joking and giving an obviously incorrect answer. Thus, if one is 25 one could answer "10" or "100"! Or, one could also say, khudetAn bugOEn ke chand sAla stum! "You tell me how old (you think) I am!"
- A few inanimate things, however (e.g., kAr [work], plAn [plan], emte-[H]An [test], berenj [rice]), may take this form to indicate a specific

time period. So,

I kAr e panj rOzEsh as
shumA unja rOz-tamAm kAr ----- mEkunEn yA nIm-rOza?
du mA bAd pLAn e panj ----- sAlE nao shurO mEsha

This is his/her five-day 'accomplishment'
(= what he/she has managed to do in
five days).

Do you work there full-time (lit., the
whole day) or just part-time (lit.,
half days)?

The new 'Five-Year Plan' will start after
two months.

5. The word chUcha (young, infant) is frequently used as a prefix with the words for animals to indicate the young of that animal (or bird). In addition, it is sometimes heard alone with reference to children, in the sense of "youngster(s)" or "little folks."

6. The suffix -cha may also be attached to other words to form a diminutive. For example,

ketAb (book) -- ketAbcha (notebook, pamphlet)

qAlIn (rug) -- qAlIncha (small rug)

17-F

Expressing the idea of "waiting," "staying"

da kujA e shAr e nao bAshum?
tA panj. baja (da) khAna bAsh ----- -- bAz byA
unA da Otal e kAbul mEbAshan
shumA da kujA e shAr e nao ----- mEbAshEn?
tA chand bajE shao da dAwat ----- sheshtEn?
bubakhshEn, myAyum lAken ----- besyAr dEr sheshta ----- na mEtAnum

Where should I wait (lit., be) in
Shar-e-Nau?

Wait at home until five o'clock;
then come.

They are staying (= living) at the
Kabul Hotel.

Where will you be staying (= waiting)
in Shar-e-Nau? (Or, also, Where
do you live in Shar-e-Nau?)

How late (in the evening) did you
stay (lit., sit) at the party?

Please excuse me; I'll come but I
can't stay (lit., sit) too long.

byAEn ke baresh entezAr bekaShEm	Let's wait for him/her.
bareshAn sE sAt entezAr kashIdum	I waited three hours for them.
lutfan barem yak chand daqIqa	Please wait a few minutes for me.
tawaquf kunEn	
cheqa tawaquf dArEn?	How long will you stay (lit., How much delay [stop] do you have)?
(tanA) nIm sAt da lab e daryA	I only have a half-hour stop along the river bank (i.e., the shopping area along the Kabul River).
tawaquf dArum	
saber kO	Wait a minute (lit., Be patient).

- The above examples show six common ways of expressing "to wait" or "to stay":
 - with the verb bUdan (to be), used by itself;
 - with the special mEbAsha form of bUdan (cf. § 10-B, § 14-H);
 - with the verb sheshtan (to sit);
 - with entezAr kashIdan;
 - with tawaquf dAshtan/kadan; and
 - with saber kadan (to be patient).
- tawaquf (with dAshtan or kadan) is commonly used with taxi drivers in connection with their waiting period (or, delay) for a customer, for which there is always an extra charge. The dAshtan form is used by or relating to the "customer" while the kadan form occurs with or relating to the "driver."
- saber kadan is commonly heard when someone is in a hurry or impatient, in the sense of "hold on, be patient, wait a minute, keep your shirt on," etc., frequently on Kabul City buses when the driver starts up the bus before all of the would-be passengers have either gotten off or on. When the question of impatience is not involved, it is improper--even rude--to use saber kadan in the sense of mere "waiting."

17-G

Vocabulary for Lesson Seventeen

-a	(time suffix [with wakht, rOz, mA, sAl, etc.] to show age or specific time period)
awAkhUrI raftan	to stroll, walk, picnic (for relaxation)
bAlA	up, high, above, upstairs
bAlA shudan	to climb, ascend, go up, board (e.g., a bus)

<u>bAzI</u> kadan	to play
<u>bIrU</u> (n-e-)	outside (of)
-cha	(diminutive suffix = little _____, small _____)
<u>cherA</u> ke	because, since
<u>chUcha</u>	young [n.] (of animals); youngster (of humans)
<u>darU</u> (n-e-)	inside (of)
<u>daryA</u>	river
<u>emzA</u> kadan	to sign, endorse
<u>entezAr</u> kashIdan	to wait for
<u>estAd</u> kadan	to stand, park, put (something)
<u>fAltU</u>	spare, extra
<u>garAj</u>	garage
<u>garm</u>	warm; hot (but not scalding "hot")
<u>ketAbcha</u>	notebook, pamphlet
<u>khabar</u> kadan	to notify, inform, give news to; invite
<u>khalIfa</u>	artisan, craftsman, workman, bus or truck driver; headman, foreman, 'boss' (of a group of workmen)
<u>kharAb</u>	spoiled, 'bad', out-of-order, damaged
<u>khAstan</u>	to want, call, ask for, send for, order [pres., <u>mEkhAya</u> ; impvs., <u>bekhAi</u> , <u>bekhAEn</u> ; subjv., <u>bekhAya</u>]
<u>khunuk</u>	(the) cold [noun]
<u>lab</u>	bank (of a river); edge; lip
<u>mAI</u>	fish
<u>mAlUmAt</u>	information (with greftan/dAshtan/dAdan)
<u>murch</u>	pepper
<u>namak</u>	salt
<u>pas e</u>	after, for (in order to get or obtain)

<u>pAyan</u>	down, beneath, downstairs
<u>pAyan</u> kadan	to lower, put down (something)
<u>pAyan</u> shudan	to descend, get off (as, a bus), go down
<u>plAn</u>	plan
<u>qAl.Incha</u>	small rug or carpet
rang <u>kadan</u>	to paint, color
<u>rOz-tamAm</u>	full-time
<u>rukhsat</u>	leave; on leave, on holiday, 'off', free
<u>rukhsatI</u>	holiday, leave; on leave
<u>saber</u> kadan	to be patient, have patience
<u>tair</u>	tire (for a wheel)
<u>tamAm</u>	all, whole; complete (with <u>shudan</u>)
<u>tawaquf</u> dAshtan/kadan	to stand, stop, delay, wait (common with taxis)
<u>umUmI</u>	public, general
Ush ___ sar e/ taraf e ___ bAsha	to look after, keep an eye on
<u>ushtuk</u>	child (of either sex)
<u>yAne</u>	that is; in other words

Exercises for Lesson Seventeen

(to be written as well as practiced orally with the teacher)

Exercise 153 - Complete these sentences with the proper form of the verbs given in (). E.g., mEkhAya ke yak sAt esterAat (kadan).
mEkhAya ke yak sAt esterAat kuna

1. mEkhAyum ke tA rOz e shambE I darsa khalAs (kadan)
2. dOstemA mEkhAst ke katImA (raftan)
3. ushtukA mEkhAyan ke emshao sInumA (raftan)
4. na mEkhAyum ke shumAra zAMat (dAdan)

5. unA da kudAm rastUrAn mEkhAyan ke nAn? (khOrdan)
6. na mEkhAyum ke dega etu(r) (shudan)
7. mEkhAyum ke shumA fardA barem telefUn (kadan)
8. bacha mEkhAya ke da aoli bAZI (kadan)
9. Ashpaz mEkhAya ke fardA rukhsat (greftan)
10. mEkhAEm ke da lab e daryA swAkUrI (raftan)

Exercise 154 - Complete these sentences with the proper form of khAstan. E.g.,
 ke chAI bukhura. mEkhAya ke chAI bukhura

1. bachEm ke yak chand dAna ketAbcha bekhara
2. muallem sAeb yak qalam e ranga
3. bibInEn ke ushtuka chI
4. khAnum ke (da) mArkEt e shAr e nao bura
5. ke mAII bukhurI?
6. ke baretan dIrOz telefUn kunum lAken besyAr kAr dAshtum
7. khAnumem U qesm gul
8. nOkar cherA ke pas-fardA rukhsat biGira?
9. shumA da kujA ke entezAr beকাশEn?
10. rAjEba chI ke katIm gap bezana?

Exercise 155 - Use rukhsat or rukhsatI as required to complete these.

1. aftE Aenda grefta mEtAnEn?
2. emrOz duwAzda baja shudum
3. fardA umUmI s -- daftarA wAz na mEbAsha
4. da kull e sAl mardum e afghanestan azhda rOz umUmI dAran
5. emrOz astEm
8. da rOza e kujA mIrI?
6. da I mA dArEn?
9. rOz e panjshambE greft
7. U mara na mEta
10. bAd az nIm sAt mEshEn

Exercise 156 - Use bIrU(n-e-) or pAyAn as needed to complete these sentences.

1. Ale bArAn mEbArA -- narO
2. awA emrOz besyAr khUb as -- byAEn ke bIshInEm
3. daftar e AghA e karIm da as
4. mEkhAyum ke da sarak e awal shawum
5. chaokyAra chera da kashIdEn?
6. emrOz Ashpaz rukhsat as -- nAn mEkhurEm
7. Aina az taraf e chatal as
8. utAqA e sard as
9. da kuJA mEshEn?
10. gulAra emshao da namAnEn ke khunuk as

Exercise 157 - Use darU(n-e-) or bAlA as needed to complete these.

1. bufarmAEn, byAEn
2. ba khyAlem daftarash da s
3. dOkAnesh da pAyAn as laken khudesh da mIshIna
4. baksa da mOtar bAnEn
5. byAEn ke kudAm rOz sar e kO e tOp shawEm
6. chera mOtaretAna na myArEn?
7. da utAqA e kI mIshIna?
8. mEkhAyum ke khAnarAm rang kunum
9. wakht e ke az pAyAn shud amrAesh gap zadum
10. khANA e khUb garm as

Exercise 158 - Give the questions for which the following are the answers. E.g.,
ma da sAla stum. shumA chand sAla stEn?

1. teflemA Ale da mAa s
2. du mA bAd duwAzda sAla mEshum
3. bachE kalanem aft sAla s
4. I berenj sE sAla s

5. chUchA e sagesh bIst rOza s
6. dukhtar e mestar jAnsan dIrOz chAr sAla shud
7. ushtuk bAyad shash sAla bAsha ke maktab bura
8. feker mEkunum ke bAyad azhda sAla bAsha
9. aftE Aenda emte(H)An e chAr O nIm mA(H)EmA shurO mEsha

Exercise 159 - Complete these sentences with entezar, tawaqif and saber or the appropriate form of bUdan or sheshtan. E.g., Ashpaz da kuja e kArte chAr ? Ashpaz da kuja e kArte chAr bAsha?

1. da shAr e nao cheqa dArEn?
2. (ma) da khAna yA da daftar?
3. da dAwat myAEEm lAken tA besyAr nA-wakht na mEtAnEm
4. bareshAn bAyad bekaShEm
5. da wezArat baretAn mEkashum
6. lutfan yak chand daqe dega kunEn
7. besyAr na dArum
8. tA panj baja kashIda mEtAnEn?

Exercise 160 - Complete these sentences with Adam, nafar, kase or mardum as required.

1. U besyAr rafIq as
2. bIbI ke da U utAq chand as
3. da khAnEshAn na bUd
4. bAyad amrAe kull e rafIq bAsha
5. bubakhshEn, Ale da daftareshAn nEs
6. da dAwat bIst O panj myAya
7. da tAbestAn umUman e kAbul paghmAn mEran

LESSON EIGHTEEN (dars e azhdawum)

18-A

Pronunciation drill (to be done only with the teacher)

1. Contrasting /s/ and /sh/

yak pao mAs betEn (Give [me] a 'pao' of yogurt)
yak pao mAsh betEn (Give [me] a 'pao' of lentils)

dAsa jOr kad (He/she fixed the sickle)
dAsha jOr kad (He/she fixed the oven)

Alle bAsI shuda (It's gotten stale)
Alle bAshI shuda (He's become a foreman)

U sEr as (It's a 'seer'; or, he/she is full)
U shEr as (It's a lion)

2. Contrasting /A/ and /u/

kAlAesh chatal shud (His/her clothes got dirty)
kullAesh chatal shud (His/her hat got dirty)

I kArda jOr kO (Fix this knife)
I kArda jOr kO (Get this field [= plot of ground] ready)
kArda da kurd aftAd (The knife fell in the field)

mainA gAl mEkhura (The myna bird is eating birdseed)
mainA gul mEkhura (The myna bird is eating flower[s])

dAm na dAra (He/she doesn't have a snare)
dum na dAra (It doesn't have a tail)
dumesh da dAm band mAnd (Its tail got caught in a snare)

3. Illustrating /sp/

Ech kespA yAd na dAra (He/she doesn't have any 'job qualification')
[or, occupation])

I ketAb delchasp as (This book is interesting)

asp e gAdItAn khUbesh as (Your buggy-horse is very fine)

18-B

The comparative form of adjectives

I pArsal az U pArsal kada ----- subuktar as	This parcel is lighter than that one.
dIrOz az emrOz kada garntar ----- bUd	Yesterday was warmer than today.
unA feker mEkunan ke dars e ----- duwAzdawum az dars e sEzda- ----- wum kada mushkeltar bUd	They think that the twelfth lesson was harder than the thirteenth.
shumA yak ketAb e AsAntarAm ----- dArEn?	Do you have an even easier book (than this)?
dega az I kada AsAntar ----- na dArum	I don't have any easier than this.
U qesm bukhArIra kamtar az ----- yag (H)azAr afghAnI na ----- mEtan	They don't sell (lit., give) that kind of heater for less than one thousand Afghanis.
umUman paghman az kAbul kada ----- sardtar mEbAsha	Paghman is usually colder than Kabul.
lutfan yak qAlIn e arzAntar ----- neshAn betEn	Please show (me) a cheaper rug.
farz kunEn ke dOkAndAr az I ----- rang kada rOshantar na ----- dAshta bAsha	Suppose the shopkeeper doesn't have a brighter colored one than this.
I lughat az U lughat kada ----- mushkel as	This word is harder than that one.
I rang az U rang kada ----- tEztar as	This color is brighter than that one.

mAlUmdAr I bAlapOsh kame qImat	Of course, this overcoat is a bit expensive, but a better one than it can't be found in the entire marketplace.
as lAken az I kada khUbtar	
da kull e bAzAr paidA na mEsha	
I parda az U parda kada kOtAtar as	This curtain (or, drape) is shorter than that one.
pul e nao az pul e kOna kada	The new bridge will be longer than the old one.
darAZtar mEbAsha	

1. For the comparison of adjectives in Dari normally the suffix -tar is added to the basic form of the adjective and the -tar is usually accented or stressed. This suffix may occasionally be omitted -- as in the example with lughat (word)--since the "az . . . kada" construction signals that a comparison is being made anyway.
2. When both items of the comparison are mentioned the preposition az (in the sense of "in comparison with," "than") introduces that with which the comparison is being made. Moreover, when both items of the comparison are mentioned the word kada (apparently untranslatable) is inserted just before the comparative adjective.
3. When only one item of the comparison is mentioned (as in the examples with ketAb [book] and qAlIn [rug]) the adjective in comparative form usually follows the noun it modifies.
4. The -Am suffix (as in the example with ketAb [book]) adds a further emphatic element to the AsAntar; so, not just "easier," but "even more easy."
5. In the example with pul (bridge) the verb could be either mEbAsha or mEsha since both are futuristic in implication.

18-C

The superlative form of adjectives

U bare buzkashI bEtarIn asp as	It's the best (kind of) horse for 'buzkashi' (a national sport).
mAlUm mEsha ke wA nezdIktarIn	It looks as if they are his/her closest friends.
raflqAesh astan	
bale, sAeb, I asrItarIn	Yes, sir, this is the most modern (type of) machine.
mAshIn as	
I kalAntarIn dukI taremA s	This is our oldest daughter.

I kalAntarIn e dukhtarAemA s	This is the oldest of our daughters.
kudAm shAr kalAntarIn	Which is the largest city in (lit., of) America?
shAr e amrIkA s?	
az kull e darsA kada kudAm	Which is the easiest lesson of all?
dars AsAn as?	
gOsht e I qesm murgh az kull	This is the tenderest chicken meat
e murghA kada narmtar as	there is (lit., The meat of this kind of chicken is the tenderest [or, softer] of all chickens).

1. For the superlative form of adjectives in Dari the suffix -tarIn is usually added to the basic form of the adjective with the stress coming on the final syllable.
2. The adjective (in superlative form) usually precedes the noun it modifies.
3. Occasionally, as with such words as kull e (all of . . .) the positive or comparative forms alone are used as superlatives; so, in the examples above with dars (lesson) and gOsht e murgh (chicken-meat).
4. The adjective bE (good) is synonymous with khUb but occurs more commonly in the comparative and superlative forms than the positive. The comparative bEtar (better) is frequently heard, especially with the subjunctive, as:

bEtar as ke dega da I	It's better that we not go to this restaurant any more.
rastUrAn narEn	

Note also the adverbial use of dega (any more), as in § 16-C-6.

5. mAshIn could refer to any kind of "machinery" but it is commonly used of a sewing machine.
6. The adjective kalAn (big) when applied to people may refer to "age."
7. The second sentence about "daughters"--with ezAfI-- is probably the more common of the two; but both are used.

18-D

General comparisons

barAbar e I utAq qAlIn	Can a rug be found the size of (lit., equal to [or, that fits]) this room?
paidA mEsha?	

ar dUesh yag barAbar as	Both of them are the same (lit., equal).
farq na mEkuna--ar shashesh ----- yak qImat as	It doesn't make any difference; all six of them are the same price (= each is <u>as</u> expensive <u>as</u> the other).
I jAkat ba jAnem ----- barAbar nEs	This sweater doesn't fit me (lit., is not equal to my body).
I bUt da pAem barAbar as	These shoes fit me (lit., This shoe is equal to my foot).
I bUt barAbar e pAem as	These shoes fit me (lit., This shoe is equal to my foot).
kullesh yak chIz as	They are all the same (lit., All of them are one [and the same] thing).
kullesh yag andAza s	They are all the same size.
I tair mesl e U tair nEs	This tire is not like that one.
I sAt az U sAt kada kame ----- farq dAra	This watch is a little bit different from that one.
I az U kada cheqa farq ----- dAra?	How much difference is there between this and that?
farqesh chand afghAnI ----- mEsha?	What would be the difference in price?
farq mAbain e ketAb O ----- ketAbcha yA qAlIn O ----- qAlIncha chI s?	What is the difference between 'ketAb' and 'ketAbcha' or 'qAlIn' and 'qAlIncha'?

1. While farq kadan means "to make a difference, to matter" farq dAshtan means "to be different."
2. The idiom expressing that something "fits" may occur with ba or da and with other body parts as required, as well as with barAbar e. Cf. the use of da (sometimes interchangeable with ba) in the idiom for wearing (i.e., having on) something (§ 7-F-7).
3. Although both dU and du may be heard for "two" the longer (dU) form is common when personal pronouns are suffixed to it. (Cf. § 7-D.)

18-E The time suffixes -Ana, -wAr and -akI

rOzAna ushtukA chand sAt

bAZI mEkunan?

bare I prOzha mAAna cheqa

kharch mEkunan?

ente(H)An e sAlAna da

mAbain e mA e desembar

shurO mEsha

How many hours a day (= daily) do the children play?

How much do they spend on this project per month (= monthly)?

Annual examinations begin in the middle of December.

- The suffix -Ana is used in a temporal sense to indicate a regular recurrence of something in the unit of time expressed by the word to which it is suffixed. It is comparable to -ly in English and is most commonly used with the words given above: rOzAna (daily), mAAna (monthly) and sAlAna (annually). It may also occur with the time words sOb (morning), chAsht (noon) and shao (night) but this use is not as frequent as with day, month and year.
- mAbain-e and bain-e are often interchangeable as prepositions (in the sense of "between, in the middle of") but with other parts of speech (e.g., nouns, adjectives [in the sense of "middle"]) mAbain and its derivatives are preferred.

shumA bayad esAb e kharcha

aftawAr betEn

maAsheta aftawAr mIgrI

yA mAAna?

You ought to give an account of your expenditure each week (= weekly).

Do you get paid (lit., receive your pay) by the week or by the month?

- The suffix -wAr is used in a sense similar to -Ana, usually with afta (week) but occasionally also with mA (month).
- It is normal amongst Afghans to inquire about another person's income and foreigners are frequently asked how much they make. For those who do not wish to answer this, any of the following replies are acceptable ways "out":
 - guzAra mEsha (I have enough to get along; lit., My livelihood becomes [or, is]);
 - bubakhshEn, rawAjemA nEs ke rAjEba maAsh gap bezanEm (I'm sorry, [but] it's not our custom to talk about salary); or,
 - byAEn ke sar e chize dega gap bezanEm! (Let's talk about something else).

(ma) sObakI shash baja

az khao mEkhezum

shawakI besyAr dars khAnda

na mEtAnum

(shumA) unja rOz-tamAm kAr

mEkunEn yA sAtakI?

I get up at six o'clock in the mornings (i.e., every morning).

I can't study much at night (i.e., in the evenings).

Do you work there full-time (lit., the whole day) or part-time (lit., by the hour)?

5. To indicate the time at which something is regularly done, particularly with the words sOb (morning) and shao (night)--but occasionally also with other words, as chAsht (noon) and sAt (hour)--the suffix -akI can be added, thus avoiding the necessity of saying ar rOz sOb (every day in the morning), etc. It conveys the sense that the pluralized form of these time words in English would: thus, "mornings", "evenings" and "hours."

18-F

Expressing the continuation of an action (to go [or, keep] on . . .)

marIzItAn az I bAd rOz ba

rOz bEtAr shuda mEra

az I bAd rOzA garmtar

shuda mEra

bEtAr as ke zUt jOresh kunI

--aga nE, rOz ba rOz

kharAbtar shuda mEra

pAr-sAl tA Akher e tAbestAn

garmI shuda raft

bareshAn besyAr guftum lAken

tA Akher e sAt gap zada

raftan

ba khyAlem ke bArAn

bArIda bura

Your sickness will get better each day (lit., day by day) from now on.

From now on the days will get warmer.

It'll be better if you fix it soon; otherwise, it will keep on getting worse by the day.

Last year it stayed (lit., kept on being) hot right up to the end of summer.

I told them many times but they still went on talking (lit., right to the end of the hour [or, period]).

My guess is that it will keep on raining (lit., I think that it might go on raining).

cherA neweshta kada na mIri?
tA du aftE degAm dawAra
khOrda burEn
tA wakht e ke da IrAn budEm
fArSI yAd grefta mEraftEm

Why don't you keep on writing?

Keep on taking the medicine for another two weeks.

We went on studying Persian as long as we were in Iran.

1. The unchangeable past participle shuda (became) is combined with the appropriate tense or mood of raftan (to go) to convey intransitively (or, passively) the idea of something which "goes on" or "continues" to be.
2. The unchangeable past participle of any transitive (or, active) verb is combined with the appropriate tense or mood of raftan (to go) to convey transitively (or, actively) the "carrying on of" or "going on with" that action.
3. In the negative these forms are not common. Negatives are more likely to be put in the simple imperative plus dega (used adverbially, as in § 16-C-6 and § 18-C-4). So,

unja dega narEn

Don't go there any more (= Don't keep on going there).

18-G

The prefix ar- used to indicate "-ever" (cf. § 7-D)

ar wakht ke shuma Amada	Come <u>whenever</u> (= as often as) you can.
mEtAnEn byAEn	
ar wakht ke mAnda mEshEn	<u>Whenever</u> (= as often as) you get tired you should lie down.
bAyad darAz bekaShEn	
ar wakht ke byAEn ma tayAr	<u>Whenever</u> (= no matter what time) you come I'll be ready.
astum	
ar wakht ke mAshInem jOr shawa	<u>Whenever</u> (= as soon as) my machine is repaired I'll bring yours back (or, return yours).
az shumAra pas myArum	
ar chI ke bugOEn baretAn	<u>Whatever</u> you would like (lit., say) I'll cook it for you.
pukhta mEkunum	
ar chI ke bekhAEn da U	<u>Whatever</u> (= no matter what) you would like it can be found at that shop.
dOkAn paidA mEsha	

ar qesm ke khudetañ faisala ----- kunEn (bareñ) farq na mEkuna	<u>Whatever</u> you yourself decide (lit., any kind of decision that you yourself make) is all right with me (lit., doesn't matter [to me]).
ar cheqa ke baresh betEn ----- khush mEsha	<u>Whatever</u> (lit., however much) you pay (lit., give) him/her, he/she will be happy (with it).
ar cheqa (ke) qImatañ baSha ----- bekharEñesh	<u>No matter how</u> (lit., however) expensive it may be, buy it anyway.
ar cheqa khurd baSha bEtar as	The smaller it is the better (lit., <u>However</u> small it may be . . .).
ar jAi ke mIrI bareñ chAi myAran	<u>Wherever</u> you go they bring you tea.
ar jAi ke majles shawa myAyum	<u>Wherever</u> (= No matter where, or regardless of where) the meeting is (lit., may be), I'll come.
khAnE mestar klArk burO--ar ----- kas ke da khAna baSha I ----- khata baresh bete	Go to Mr. Clark's house [and] give this letter to <u>whoever</u> is home.

1. By prefixing ar (each, every) to certain words like wakht (time), chI (what), qesm (kind, type, sort), cheqa (how . . . much), jAi (place) and kas (person) an "indefinite" compound word is formed, expressed in English with the suffix "-ever." Alternate renderings of this idiom might be "No matter . . . " or "Regardless of . . . " Literally, each of these compounds would mean, "any _____," i.e., any time, any thing, any kind, any amount, any place, any person.
2. The compounds with ar may take either the present tense or the subjunctive--as well as its alternate, the simple past tense, as noted later in § 23-C. The present tense shows that the action may be done repeatedly while the subjunctive anticipates an action on one occasion only. In English the -ever suffix may be ambiguous; for example, the first sentence--"Come whenever you can"--could refer to a specific appointment or to a general invitation. The once-only action in Dari would be expressed by the subjunctive while the general (to-be-repeated) action would (as given in the example) be expressed with the present tense.
3. ar wakht is frequently (but not always) interchangeable with wakht e ke (cf. § 16-D-2). It may also be varied slightly by the addition of ezAFI--ar wakht e ke--although in such cases the time seems to be a bit more specific and may thus be equivalent to "as soon as," "the minute you . . . "

4. az shumA (in the fourth example, with mAshIn) is taken as a phrase meaning "yours" and the entire phrase takes the object marker. Other possessive suffixes may take the object marker as may also the same construction with khud.

az khuda chI kadEn?
az khuda bOrd
az khuda myArum

What did you do with your own?

He/she took his/her own (away).

I'll bring my own.

18-H

Vocabulary for Lesson Eighteen

<u>aftawAr</u>	weekly, by the week
<u>aga nE</u>	otherwise; if not
<u>andAza</u>	size, measure, estimate
<u>ar-</u>	(an affix implying indefiniteness, =) -ever
<u>asp</u>	horse
<u>asrI</u>	modern, up-to-date
<u>barAbar (-e-)</u>	equal; equal to; as much as; to "fit"
<u>bE</u>	good (commonly used in the comparative and superlative forms)
<u>buzkashI</u>	a national game in Afghanistan (played on horse-back)
<u>darAz</u>	long
<u>darAz kashIdan</u>	to lie down, stretch out
<u>esAb</u>	account; counting
<u>faisala kadan</u>	to decide
<u>farq</u>	difference
<u>farq dAshtan</u>	to be different
<u>farq kadan</u>	to make a difference, to matter
<u>guzAra</u>	living, livelihood (with shudan: to get along, get by, make ends meet)

<u>ja</u> kat	sweater, pullover
jo <u>r</u> <u>ka</u> dan	to fix, repair; to get/give a haircut (used with sar [head])
ka <u>da</u>	(particle used in comparisons with adjectives; possibly equivalent to "than")
kh <u>ar</u> ch	expense, expenditure
kh <u>ar</u> ch <u>ka</u> dan	to spend, expend (e.g., money)
ko <u>t</u> a	short
m(a) <u>sh</u>	pay, income, salary
(m <u>a</u>) <u>b</u> ain (-e-)	middle (of); between
m <u>a</u> (H) <u>a</u> na	monthly, by the month
m <u>a</u> j <u>l</u> es	meeting, assembly
m <u>a</u> l <u>u</u> m shudan	to seem, appear to be; to become known
m <u>a</u> l <u>u</u> md <u>a</u> r	of course, to be sure, undoubtedly; It's a fact that . . .
ma <u>r</u> iz <u>i</u>	sickness, illness
m <u>a</u> sh <u>i</u> n	(any kind of) machinery; (but commonly a) sewing machine
mu <u>r</u> gh	chicken
na <u>r</u> m	soft, tender
nezd <u>i</u> k (nazd <u>i</u> k) (-e-)	near, close; near to
pa <u>i</u>	foot, leg
pr <u>o</u> z <u>h</u> a	project [noun]
puk <u>h</u> ta <u>ka</u> dan	to cook (something)
pu <u>l</u>	bridge
ra <u>w</u> a <u>j</u>	custom, tradition
ro <u>z</u> ba ro <u>z</u>	day by day
ro <u>z</u> ana	daily, by the day

sAlAna	annual, by the year
sAtakI	by the hour, part-time
shawakI	in the evening; evenings
sObakI	in the morning; mornings
subuk	light (in weight)
tEz	bright (e.g., in color); fast (e.g., in movement); sharp (e.g., a knife)

Exercises for Lesson Eighteen

(to be written as well as practiced orally with the teacher)

Exercise 161 - Substitute the comparative form of each of the following adjectives to complete the sentence, I jAkAt az U jAkAt kada as. E.g., garm. I jAkAt az U jAkAt kada garmtar as.....

- | | | | |
|----------|-----------|----------|------------|
| 1. darAz | 3. kharAb | 5. khurd | 7. maghbUl |
| 2. kalAn | 4. khUb | 6. kOtA | 8. qImat |

Exercise 162 - Give each of the following sentences with the comparative form of the adjective which is opposite in meaning to the adjective already included. E.g., I dars az U dars kada mushkeltar as. I dars az U dars kada AsAntar as

- I chaokI az U chaokI kada pakhshtar as
- kudAm dars darAztar bUd?
- emrOz awA garmtar as
- mA yak khAnE kalAntar kar dAREm
- qImatesh az pEsh kada kamtar as
- bAisekel e degEm naotar bUd
- mEkhAyum ke rang e sAlUn az rang e utAq e nAn kada tARiktAr bAsha
- az I kada safEdtar na mEsha

Exercise 163 - Complete these sentences with the superlative form of the adjectives indicated in (). E.g., ba khyAlem I mA e

zemestAn as. (sard) ba khyAlem I sardtarIn mA e zemestAn as

1. utAq da khAnEmA sAlUn as (garm)
2. gulAnAra da shAr e nao dIdum (maghbUl)
3. dars e ashtum bUd (AsAn)
4. emte(H)AnemA dIrOz bUd (mushkel)
5. karIm dOstem as (bE)
6. I soLAdemA s (khurd)
7. bAzAr bare mA bAzAr e kOte sangI.s (nezdIk)

Exercise 164 - Use the adjective barAbar in each of the following.

1. U etAn darI gap zada na mEtAnA
2. pardA e kelIn nEs
3. kulleSh yag as
4. U bUt da pAetAn as?
5. Echkas esh paisa na dAra
6. Echkas e shumA da emte(H)An numra na greft
7. e I anwArI yakI degAm kAr dArum
8. khAnEmA taqRiban e khAnEtAn as
9. ba wakht e khud Amad
10. derIshI nawema e I derIshI besAzEn

Exercise 165 - Use the correct form of farq or farq dAshtan as needed to complete these sentences.

1. qImat e I bAisekel az U kada cheqa
2. I kAghaz az U kAghaz kada kame
3. eshAn chI s?
4. Ech na
5. bain e I du jumla chI s?

6. mAbain e I du bukhArI ega nEs

Exercise 166 - Use sAlAna to complete these sentences.

1. mumken as ke Adam tA du mA rukhsatI biGIra
2. majles e EtAn emsAl da kuJA mEsha?
3. emte(H)An e EmA chi wakht shurO mEsha?

Exercise 167 - Use rOZAna to complete these sentences.

1. tefel bayad yag dAna tukhum bukhura
2. besyAr kAr mEdAshta bAshum
3. bayad chand dafa dawa bukhurum?
4. dAktor mEga ke Adam bayad asht sAt khao kuna

Exercise 168 - Use mAAna to complete these sentences.

1. cheqa maAsh mIGIra?
2. emsAl kharch e EmA zyAtar as
3. yak O nIm azAr aoghAnI dAda mEtAnum

Exercise 169 - Use aftawAr to complete these sentences.

1. bEtar as ke emte(H)AnAema bAshA
2. mA saodA e khAnara mEkharEm

Exercise 170 - Use sObakI to complete these sentences.

1. chAi na mEkhurum--qAWa mEkhurum
2. ba besyAr mushkel az khao mEkhezum
3. aft O nIm baja sar e kAr mErum

Exercise 171 - Use shawakI to complete these sentences.

1. sarwEs az I rA na mEra

2. saga mara da khao na mEmAnan

Exercise 172 - Complete these sentences with the correct form of the verbs in () to show the continuation of an action. E.g., az I bAd rOzA sardtar (shudan) az I bAd rOzA sardtar shuda mEra

1. (shumA) tA yag afTE degAm bAyad I darsa (khAndan)
2. emsAl tA Akher e zemestAn khunuk (shudan)
3. bAd az I dawA se(H)atetAn bAyad bETar (shudan)
4. (ma) sAl e guzashta darIra (yAd greftan)
5. enshAllA, az I bAd padaretAn bETar (shudan)
6. bufarmAEn, chAi (khOrdan)
7. fArsItAn rOz ba rOz bETar (shudan)

Exercise 173 - Fill in the correct form of the verbs given in () in order to complete these sentences. E.g., ar qesm ke yAf(t) shawa (Awurdan) ar qesm ke yAf(t) shawa byArEn

1. ar qesm ke shumA faisala mEkunEn mAm khush (bUdan)
2. ar cheqa ke kharch shawa ma paisEsha (dAdan)
3. ar chI ke betEn saI (bUdan)
4. ar wakht ke kAr dAshta bAshEn barem telefUn (kadan)
5. ar cheqa ke wakhtar Amada betAnEn bETar (bUdan)
6. ar chI ke dArEn (Awurdan)
7. ar wakht ke betAnI katIsh gap (zadan)
8. ar kas ke kOshesh kuna kAmyAb (shudan)
9. ar jAi ke kOshesh mEkuna kAr baresh paidA na (shudan)
10. ar kas ke bekhAya darIra yAd grefta (tAnestan)

LESSON NINETEEN (dars e nuzdawum)

19-A

Pronunciation drill (to be done only with the teacher)

1. Practicing /zh/

I zhAla s yA barf? (Is this hail or snow?)

barem muzhda dAd (He/she gave me the good news)

ba khyAlem da lOzh sheshtan (I think they are sitting in the theatre balcony)

mA azhda prOzha sar e dest dArEm (We have eighteen projects under way)

gula pazhmurda shuda (The flowers are dried up)

ma Ech gazhduma na dIdEm (I've never seen a scorpion)

2. Contrasting /o/ and /e/

dOl nazan (Don't beat the drum)

del nazan (Don't be discouraged)

delesh as ke dOl bezana (He/she feels like beating a drum)

dOstem na rasId (My friend didn't arrive)

destem na rasId (I couldn't reach [it])

guft ke kO kujA s? (He/she asked, 'Where is the mountain?')

19-B

The formation of the present perfect tense

With shudan (to become)

S i n g u l a r

1	shud +	{	Em = shudEm	I have become
2			I = shudI	you have become
3			a = shuda	he/she/it has become

P l u r a l

1	shud +	{	Em = shud <u>Em</u>	we have become
2			En = shud <u>En</u>	you have become
3			an = shud <u>an</u>	they have become

With kadan (to do, make ___)

S i n g u l a r

1	kad +	{	Em = kad <u>Em</u>	I have done
2			I = kad <u>I</u>	you have done
3			a = kad <u>a</u>	he/she/it has done

P l u r a l

1	kad +	{	Em = kad <u>Em</u>	we have done
2			En = kad <u>En</u>	you have done
3			an = kad <u>an</u>	they have done

- In spoken Dari the only discernible differences in the form of the present perfect tense and the simple past tense (cf. § 10-E) are:
 - The final syllable is accented.
 - The first person singular and plural are the same.
 - a is added to the third person singular form.
- The same rules about the agreement of the subject and the inclusion or omission of it are observed for the present perfect tense as for the present tense of verbs (cf. § 3-G-1).
- If the negative occurs it comes before the appropriate form of the verb and the accent is put on the na.

19-C

Statements, questions and negatives with the present perfect tense

tEz tEz burEn ke nA-wakht shuda	Do hurry (lit., go fast) since it is (lit., has become) late.
rAstI, dEr shuda ke shumAra	Incidentally, it's been a long time since I/we've seen (lit., that I/we've not seen) you.
na dIdEm	
barq rafta	The electricity has gone off.

bale, khAnE naweshAna dIdEm	Yes, I/we have seen their new house.
a(H)mad khAn da aolI sheshta	Ahmad Khan is sitting (lit., has sat) in the yard).
satl e khAk pur shuda -- ----- lutfan khAlI kunEnesh	The garbage bucket has gotten full; please empty it.
ma ba I natIja rasIdEm ke Ale ----- pashtOra yAd nagIrum	I have come to (lit., arrived at) the conclusion that I won't learn Pashto just now.
unA wakht safIr sAeba ----- mulAqAt kadan	They have already met the Ambassador.
ba khyAlem ke majlesa shurO ----- kadan	I think they have already started the meeting.
emrOz az pAlU e chap khEsta	He/she has gotten up on the wrong side of the bed today (= in a bad mood).
sar e mEz shIr chapa shuda -- ----- lutfan khushkesh kunEn	Milk has spilled on the table; please wipe it up (lit., dry it).
sAtem da daqIqa pEsh rafta	My watch is (lit., has gone) ten minutes fast.
enA amEsha amrAema mErabAnI ----- kadan	They [/he] have [/has] always been very good (lit., done kindness) to us.
mA da I chArrAI chandIn dafa ----- taksI yAftEm	We have found taxis at this intersection several times.
dawAeta khu khOrdI?	You've taken your medicine, haven't you?
cherAghA e bIrUna rOshan kadEn?	Have you turned on the outside lights?
pErAnAema uttU kadI?	Have you ironed my shirts (or, dresses)?
aft O nIm baja shuda	It's after (= already) 7:30.
destetAna chI shuda?	What's happened to your hand?

cherA eqa wakht khawesh grefta? ----- dIshao khao <u>na</u> kada?	Why has he/she gotten (lit., Why is) sleepy so soon? Didn't he/she sleep last night?
wAlI sAeba mUlAqAt kadEn?	Have you met the Governor?
dEr shudA ke da U sarAi ----- <u>na</u> raftEm	It's been a long time since I've/we've gone (lit., that I've/we've not gone) to that 'serai' (= enclosed shopping area).
shunIdum ke--khudA <u>nA-khAsta</u> -- ----- nA-jOr budEn	I was sorry to hear that you were sick.
anOz gumruk <u>na</u> raftEn?	Haven't you gone to the Customs-house yet?
anOz mAlUm <u>na</u> kadEm ke mAsUl ----- e gumrukesh cheqa mEsha	I/we haven't found out yet how much the customs duty on it will be.
anOz kharBUza pukIta <u>na</u> shuda	The melon isn't ripe yet.
anOz gushna <u>na</u> shudEm	I/we haven't gotten hungry yet.
mA anOz bAzAra <u>na</u> pAlIdEm	We haven't looked in the marketplace yet.
unA anOz kOch <u>na</u> kashIdan	They haven't moved yet.

1. The present perfect tense indicates that the action of the verb or its results are still relevant or in some way pertinent. In other words, the action happened in the past but its results continue to the present.
2. sheshta, though present perfect tense, is preferred for a present condition which continues. In other words, He has sat and is still sitting. So, "He is sitting in the living room" is not U da sAlUn mIshIna (which would mean, "He usually sits in the living room") but U da sAlUn sheshta.
3. It is worth noting in the phrase pAlU e chap (side of the left) that chap (left) in contrast to rAst (right) often conveys the idea of what is "wrong" or "improper." In this case the person who gets up on "the left side" of the bed is like the one who in English gets up on "the wrong side," that is, with a bad disposition. Remember that the left hand is also considered "unclean" and that consequently when handing or passing something to another--especially where food is involved (as at a meal)--the right hand should be used. Failure to observe this custom is considered highly improper and offensive.
4. Related to this word chap is the further word chapa which means "inverted, upside down, overturned, spilled, wrong-side-out, backward." In

other words, the opposite of the normal is implied. It may be used with bUdan, shudan and kadan, depending on the sense required.

5. For a clock being "fast" or "ahead" of time cf. § 13-G-8.
6. In the example with "outside lights" the final /n/ is needed on bIrUn because of the following vowel as object marker. (Cf. § 17-D-2.)
7. Note the following variations in the idiomatic uses of chI, depending on the tense used and the inclusion of the object marker (cf. § 12-D).

bachEtAn chI shud?	Where is your son (i.e., What became of him)?
bachEtAn chI shuda?	What did your son become? (E.g., a doctor? teacher?)
bachEtAna chI shuda?	What happened to your son? (I.e., What's wrong with him? Is he hurt? etc.)

8. Cf. § 13-B-3 for the idiomatic use of khao (sleep) with greftan (to take, grab) = to be grabbed by sleep; in other words, to get sleepy. The present perfect tense is preferred for a present condition, especially when addressing a person who is present.
9. The phrase khuda nA-khAsta, translated "sorry," is literally "God has not willed it" and amounts to an expression of regret and a hope for something better. It is the negative idea of the previously introduced khuda kuna (May God . . .) or enshAlla (If God wills) and in the sentence here it conveys the idea: "I've heard . . . and I hope it isn't true . . . that . . ." (Cf. the English, "God forbid . . . ")
10. The adverb anOz (yet; still) is frequently used with the present perfect tense in the sense of "yet, so far, up to now" to indicate an action that is later or longer than expected and that continues in the negative. Of course, it can also be used with other tenses than the perfect when they are negative in connotation, meaning "yet." Thus,

anOz bE-kAr nEstum	I'm not free yet.
anOz khAna nEs?	Isn't he/she home yet?
anOz tayAra na nyAya	The plane isn't coming yet.

11. When the positive idea in the sense of "still" is to be conveyed by anOz the tense employed is more likely to be the simple present or simple past. So,

gOsht anOz sakht as	The meat is still tough.
anOz tushna stum	I'm still thirsty.

anOzAm dAgh as

It's still (too) hot.

wakht e ke bAmYAn raftEm

When we went to Bamiyan our friends were still there.

dOstAemA anOz unja budan

19-D

The prepositions nezdIk e (near [to]) and az rA e (by way of, via)

dOkAnesh chand dOkAn bAlAtar

His/her shop is a few shops farther on near the bridge.

nezdIk e pul as

pOsta-khAnE markazi nezdIk e

The main (lit., central) post office is near Bagh e Umumi Bridge.

pul e bAgh e umUmI s

sherkat e barq da jAdE maiwand

The Electric Company was (= used to be) on Jade Maiwand (lit., Maiwand Avenue) near the Pamir Theatre.

nezdIk e sInumA e pAmIr bUd

az khAter e bIr-O-bar mOtara

I couldn't park the car close to the theatre because of the crowd.

nezdIk e sInumA estAd

kada na tAnestum

1. bAlAtar as used in the above example is equivalent to "up the street," that is, "farther on."

lutfan az rA e jAdE

Please go by way of the "Green Door Bazaar" (lit., the Avenue of the Welayat [or, Kabul Provincial Government]).

welAyat burEn

mA ez rA e tOrkham AmadEm

We came via Torkham (i.e., the Khyber Pass route).

lutfan Ira az rA e zamIn

Please send this by surface mail (lit., by way of 'land').

rawAn kunEn

2. The word welAyat (province) forms its plural on the Arabic pattern and not according to usual spoken Dari. So, welAyAt (provinces). (Cf. § 4-H-6.)
3. For a map of Afghanistan giving its provinces as they are pronounced in Dari see Appendix VI.
4. See also Appendix XIV for directions of the compass.

19-E

Expressing the "time since" something has occurred

sE rOz mEsha ke barf mEbAra	It has been snowing <u>for</u> three days (lit., It becomes [or, amounts to] three days that snow is falling).
emrOz sEyum rOz as ke bAraN mEbAra	This is the third day <u>that</u> it has been (lit., is) raining (= It has been raining <u>for</u> three days).
du rOz shud ke Ashpaz sar e kAr nAmada	It's two days (lit., two days became) <u>since</u> (lit., that) the cook came (lit., hasn't come) to work.
du sE rOz mEsha ke dandAnesh dard mEkuna	His/her tooth has been aching (lit., is aching) <u>for</u> a few (lit., two or three) days.
yak O nIm sAl { mEsha shud } ke da kAbul astum	I've been (lit., am) in Kabul <u>for</u> a year and a half.
I afte duwum as ke kUchya az Inja tEr mEshan	This is the second week that the nomads have been (lit., are) pass- ing by here (= They have been pass- ing by <u>for</u> two weeks).
emrOz rOz e panjum as ke khayAt Inja kAr mEkuna	The tailor has been working here <u>for</u> five days (lit., Today is the fifth day that the tailor is working here).
du rOz mEsha ke pAem bAz dard mEkuna	My leg (or, foot) has been (lit., is) hurting me again <u>for</u> two days.
chand sAl mEsha ko I khAnara sAkhtEn?	How old is this house? (Lit., How many years will it be that you built this house?)
az I khAna chard sAl mEsha?	How old is this house?
az I mAshIn chand sAl mEsha?	How old is this machine?

1. While in English the words "for" (indicating a length of time) and "since" (showing the beginning of a period of time) are frequently used with the present perfect tense, in Dari these ideas are more likely to be conveyed by the simple present and past tenses of bUdan (to be) and shudan (to become).

2. This idiom may be used to indicate the "age" of things. For the age of persons and animals see § 17-E.

19-F

The idiom "to enjoy," "to have a good time" (sAt tEr shudan/bUdan)

sAtetAn tEr shud?	Did you have a good time?
mAlUm mEsha ke sAteshAn	It looks as if they are having a good time.
khUb tEr as	
ma yaqIn dArum ke sAtema	I'm sure that we'll have a good time.
khUb tEr mEsha	

1. The idea of "enjoying" something is idiomatically expressed in Dari by the use of sAt (clock, hour, time) + tEr shudan/bUdan (to pass).
2. The question given above means literally, "Did your time pass?" but it implies the additional thought of "with enjoyment."

19-G

The idiom sar az, meaning "beginning (or, starting) from . . ."

sar az afTE Aenda kAr	Starting from next week work will begin at nine o'clock.
nO baja shurO mEsha	
sar az chI wakht?	Starting when?
byAEa ke sar az sabA da	Beginning from tomorrow (= from tomorrow on) let's not speak any English during class.
wakht e dars Ech	
engliSI gap nazanEn	

Note: This idiom is most commonly used for future time. Even though the construction introduced in § 19-E is better for past time, sar az may occasionally occur with dIrOz (yesterday) and dIshao (last night) also.

19-H

Vocabulary for Lesson Nineteen

anOz	still, yet (interchangeable with tA Ale [up to now])
as tA e	by way of, via
barf	snow

<u>barq</u>	electricity; light; traffic light
<u>bIr-0-bAr</u>	crowd
<u>chandIn</u>	several
<u>chapa</u>	upset, wrongside-out, upside down, spilled, overturned, backward
<u>chArrAI</u>	intersection (of streets) (commonly used to designate specific locations, in the sense of "at the intersection [or, corner] of . . . ")
<u>dandAn</u>	tooth
<u>dard kadan</u>	to hurt, ache, pain
<u>engLIsl</u>	English
<u>gumruk</u>	customshouse; customs tax
<u>gushna</u>	hungry
<u>jAda</u>	avenue, main street, boulevard
<u>khAk</u>	dust, dirt, refuse; "garbage," trash
<u>khAlI kadan</u>	to empty (something)
<u>khArbUza</u>	melon (of various kinds)
<u>khayAt</u>	tailor
<u>khudA nA khAsta</u>	May God prevent it (lit., God has not willed it); "I hope it isn't so"; "God forbid"
<u>khushk kadan</u>	to dry (something), wipe up (something wet, or spilled)
<u>kOch kashIdan</u>	to move (i.e., change one's residence from one place to another)
<u>kUchI</u>	nomad, gypsy
<u>mAlUm kadan</u>	to find out, learn (by getting information)
<u>markazI</u>	central, main
<u>mAsUl</u>	customs, tax
<u>mErabAnI kadan</u>	to be good or kind to (someone)

<u>natIja</u>	result, conclusion
<u>pAlIdan</u>	to search, look for [pres., <u>mEpAla</u> ; impv., <u>bupAl</u> ; subjv., <u>bupAla</u>]
<u>pAlU (-e-)</u>	side; beside; by the side of, next to
<u>pashtO</u>	Pashto (an official language of Afghanistan [also called 'Afghani'])
<u>pErAn</u>	shirt, blouse, (one-piece) dress
<u>rAstI</u>	by the way, incidentally
<u>rOshan kadan</u>	to turn on (e.g., lights); to illuminate
<u>sabA</u>	tomorrow
<u>safIr</u>	ambassador
<u>sakht</u>	hard, tough
<u>sar az</u>	beginning from, starting from, "since . . ."
<u>sarAi</u>	a walled or enclosed compound or shopping area
<u>sat tEr shudan/tUdan</u>	to enjoy, have a good time
<u>satel</u>	bucket, pail
<u>sherkat</u>	company, business firm (used for Afghan companies)
<u>taksI</u>	taxi
<u>tEr shudan</u>	to pass (by)
<u>tushna</u>	thirsty
<u>wAlI</u>	Governor (of a <u>welAyat</u> [province])
<u>welAyat</u>	province (one of 28 in Afghanistan) [pl., <u>welAyAt</u>]
<u>yAftan</u>	to find, get, obtain (something) [pres., <u>myAfa</u> ; subjv., <u>byAfa</u>]
<u>yaqIn dAshtan</u>	to be sure, certain

Exercises for Lesson Nineteen

(to be written as well as practiced orally with the teacher)

Exercise 174 - Change each of the following verb forms from the simple past to the present perfect tense, keeping the person and number the same.

E.g., Amad. Amada
.....

- | | | | |
|--------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. Awurdum | 11. kharIdEn | 21. bArId | 31. shesht |
| 2. bOrdI | 12. pUshIdan | 22. greftEm | 32. shekest |
| 3. dAd | 13. raftum | 23. khAndEn | 33. sOkht |
| 4. dAshtEm | 14. shudI | 24. khEstan | 34. gap zadum |
| 5. dIdEn | 15. shunId | 25. khOrdum | 35. zadI |
| 6. fAmIdan | 16. shushtEm | 26. mAndI | 36. dAnestum |
| 7. budum | 17. aftAd | 27. rasId | 37. furOkhtEn |
| 8. guftI | 18. andAkhtan | 28. gasht | 38. khAstum |
| 9. kad | 19. barAmad | 29. sAkhtEn | 39. pAlIdEn |
| 10. kashIdEm | 20. dOkhtI | 30. nAn khOrdum | 40. yAftum |

Exercise 175 - Change only the tense in each of the following from simple past to present perfect. E.g., barq Amad. barq Amada
.....

- | | |
|------------------------------|---|
| 1. ba khyAlem az Inja raftan | 6. wazIr sAeba mulaqAt kad |
| 2. pArsal barem na rasId | 7. pErAnema dOkhtEn? |
| 3. khayAt kuja raft? | 8. bare fAmIletAn neweshta kadEn? |
| 4. mAUM kada na tAnestum | 9. da majles shesht |
| 5. taksI greftan? | 10. besyAr kOshesh kadum lAken na yAftumesh |

Exercise 176 - Add anOz and the negative to each of the following. E.g., taksI yAft. anOz taksI na yAfta
.....

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. shAr e nawa pAlIdum | 6. ba khyAlem mOtar e khuda furOkhtan |
| 2. dawAra khOrdI? | 7. khayAt pErAnema dOkht |
| 3. U jumlara fAmIdum | 8. wazIr sAeba mulaqAt kadEm |
| 4. az Inja tEr shud | 9. mestar wAltAr kOch kashId |
| 5. emsAl barf bArId | 10. muallem sAeb Amad |

Exercise 177 - Use anOz with each of the following affirmative statements. E.g.,
bacha gushna s. anOz bacha gushna s.

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. dardAnem dard mEkuna | 6. kharbUza da bAZAr paidA mEsha |
| 2. khAnumem da amrIkA s | 7. AghA e karImI da majles as |
| 3. dOstetAn marIZ as? | 8. shumA mAnda mAUM mEshEn |
| 4. darI mEkhanEn? | 9. bareshAn entezAr mEkashEn? |
| 5. da kArTE sE mIshInEn? | 10. bEchArA bEkAr as |

Exercise 178 - Use nezdik e or az rA e as needed to complete the following.

1. rafiQem khAnEtAn mIshIna
2. dOkAnesh pOsta-khAnE markazI s
3. bufarmAEn, khAnEtAn mEREm
4. zamIn Ech tERAn na raftEm
5. byAEn ke qargha paghman burEm
6. dIrOz shumARA pul e bAgh e umUmI dIdum
7. mEkhAyum ke bAgh e bAlA shAr e nao burum
8. unA ghaznI bAmyAn mERan
9. shumA kArTE chAr mEREn?
10. masjid e pul e kheshtI chandIn dOkAn e tekka s

Exercise 179 - Use sar az or sar e as needed to complete these sentences.

1. afTE Aenda dars e bIstum shurO mEsha
2. pERAnAetAn chaparkat as
3. sabA darsmA da O nIm baja shurO mEsha
4. jAkAtetAn chaokI bUd
5. rOz e panjshambE rukhsati umUmI shurO mEsha
6. khAkA e mEza pAk kO
7. da chI s?

8. chI wakht?
9. mA e Aenda zemestAn shurO mEsha
10. kAra bAyad Ale shurO kunEn

Exercise 180 - Change the subject in each of the following sentences to the third person singular. E.g., shash mA shud ke darI mEkhAnum.
shash mA shud ke darI mEkhAna

1. panj rOz mEsha ke I darsa mEkhAnEm
2. taqrIban sE sAl shud ke da afghAnestAn astEm
3. chand rOz mEsha ke pEsh e dAktor mIri?
4. yak sAl shud ke az unA AwAl na greftEm
5. dEr mEsha ke sInumA na raftEm
6. emrOz rOz e panjum as ke sar e kAr na mErum
7. I rOz e sEyum as ke Azer nEstan
8. dU nIm sAl shud ke da ErAt zendagi mEkunan
9. taqrIban yak sAl shud ke amRiKA raftan
10. chand mA mEsha ke darI mEkhAnEn?

Exercise 181 - Change (if necessary) the subject in each of the following sentences to make it third person singular. E.g., chand sAl shud ke Ira kharIdEn? chand sAl shud ke Ira kharIda?

1. taqrIban chAr sAl mEsha ke I khAnara sAkhtEm
2. az I qAlInA chand sAl mEsha?
3. pAnzda rOz mEsha ke I ketAbA pEshem as
4. tanA yak sAl shud ke I bukhArIra kharIdEm -- chera eqa zUt kharAb shud?

LESSON TWENTY. (dars e bIstum)

20-A

Pronunciation drill (to be done only with the teacher)

1. Contrasting /z/ and /sh/

zAr khatar dAra (Poison is dangerous)
shAr khatar dAra (The city is dangerous)

aga zaoq dArEn, burEn (If you are keen to go, go on)
aga shaoq dArEn, burEn (If you are keen to go, go on)

zArI neweshta kunEn (Write 'zArI' [imploring])
shArI neweshta kunEn (Write 'shArI' [urban])

bAz ma mErum (I'm going again [or, later])
bAsh ma mErum (Just wait [here]; I'm going)

2. Contrasting /o/ and /u/

U kh0 guft (He/she said 'O.K.')

U khu guft (He/she said [it], didn't he/she?)

mAnA e khOrd chI s? (What does 'khOrd' mean? [he/she ate])
mAnA e khurd chI s? (What does 'khurd' mean? [small])

3. Illustrating /st/

mEkhAst.ke kh0st bura. (He/she wanted to go to Khost)

sE bIst shast mEsha (Three times twenty makes sixty)

20-B

Infinitives used as nouns

byAEn ke da shafA-khAna

dIdanesh burEm

da I nezdIkyA qarz

greftanet zyAt shuda

Let's go to the hospital to see him/her.

You have borrowed more lately (lit.,
recently your borrowing has increased).

(tA) chand baja az dars
dAdan khalAs mEshEn?
estAd shudan da Inja
khatar dAra
dOkAn e dalAk bare sar
tayAr kadan mErum
zarUr nEs ke az darI gap
zadan besharmEn
bE-ghan bAshEn---ba Ainal
pUshIdan AdI mEshEn
bUdan e safIr sAeb da
Inja zarUr as
(az shunIdan e I khabar)
besyAr deq shudum

What time will you be finished (with) teaching?

It's dangerous to stand (or, be parked) here.

I'm going to the barber shop to get a haircut.

There's no need to be shy (or, embarrassed) about speaking Dari.

Don't worry -- you'll get used to wearing glasses.

It's necessary for the Ambassador to be here (lit., The Ambassador's being here is essential).

I am (lit., became) very sorry ([= sad] to hear this news).

1. Because of the nature of the infinitive (the "to" form of the verb) as a verbal noun it can function in place of a noun.
2. In this usage it is controlled by the same prepositions, object marker, comparison indicator, personal pronoun suffixes, etc., which are used with nouns. As such, the infinitive can function as the subject or object of the sentence, have its own object, or serve as the object of a preposition.
3. As some of the above examples indicate, the infinitive may frequently be used to show purpose and be translated "in order to" or "to."
4. bE-ghan means literally "without grief" and is used to dispel someone's concern or worry over something, as if to say, "You have nothing to worry about . . . Everything will be all right."
5. AdI, while meaning "accustomed, habituated, used to" something, is also used in the sense of "ordinary" (i.e., routine). For example, the post office refers to unregistered mail as AdI, whether airmail or surface.
6. besyAr deq shudum (I became [= am] very sad) may be used alone to express one's condolence or "sorrow" on hearing bad news. Cf. § 9-H, § 12-D, § 14-B and § 21-D for other idiomatic uses of this word deq.

20-C

The formation of the past perfect tense

With kadan (to do, make ___)

	S i n g u l a r		P l u r a l			
1	kada +	budum	I had done	kada +	budEm	we had done
2		budI	you had done		budEn	you had done
3		bUd	he/she/it had done		budan	they had done

With shudan (to become)

	S i n g u l a r		P l u r a l			
1	shuda +	budum	I had become	shuda +	budEm	we had become
2		budI	you had become		budEn	you had become
3		bUd	he/she/it had become		budan	they had become

1. The past perfect tense is formed by combining the unchangeable past participle (cf. § 14-E) with the appropriate form of bUdan in the simple past tense.
2. The same rules about agreement of the subject and the inclusion or omission of it are observed for the past perfect tense as for the present tense of verbs (cf. § 3-G-1).
3. If the negative occurs it comes before the participle and not before the form of bUdan. The negative (na) also receives the accent.
4. The verbs bUdan and dAshtan do not occur in this tense. In other words, "buda bUd" and "dAshta bUd" are simply not used.

20-D

Statements, questions and negatives with the past perfect tense

wakht e ke da maidAn e awAI

rasIdum, tayAra wakht

Amada bUd

cherA shekAyat kada budan?

When I reached the airport the plane
had already come in.

Why had they complained?

na mEfAmIdum ke ega ----- nukhsesh shuda bUd	I didn't know that he/she had had such a great loss.
pAr-sAlAm yag dafa khArej ----- rafta budum	I went (lit., had gone) abroad once last year, too.
pEsh az lAm kAbul Amada budEn?	Have you ever been (lit., Had you ever come) to Kabul before?
chI wakht rawAn kada budEnesh?	When did you send (lit., had you sent) him/her/it?
da I du sAl etur zelzele ----- shadId na shuda bUd	In these two years there had not been a worse (lit., severe) earthquake than this.
ma da umrem I qesm darakhta ----- na dIda budum	I had not seen a tree like this (one) in my whole life.
tA emrOz faisala na kada budum	I had not decided (= made up my mind) until today.
wakht e ke awal da afghAnestAn ----- Amad anOz ArUsI na kada bUd	When he/she first came to Afghanistan he/she had not gotten married yet.

1. The past perfect tense, like the present perfect, emphasizes current relevance. The difference lies in the fact that the matter was currently relevant or pertinent at some past time. Since the action of the past perfect tense precedes another action in the past, it is commonly used in complex sentences involving clauses introduced by such words as pEsh az (before), wakht e ke (when) and tA (until).
2. This tense is much more common in Dari, even in simple sentences, than it is in English. A number of the examples given above would in English be more commonly put in the simple past tense.
3. wakht e ke (when) has thus occurred with the simple past and present tenses, the subjunctive, and now the past perfect tense.

20-E

The words bAwujUd e (even though, in spite of), bedUn e (without, except), Ewaz e (instead of), ghair e (in addition to, except for, apart from, besides) and mutAbaq e (according to)

bAwujUd e maAsh e kam ----- guzAra mEsha
--

In spite of low pay one can manage to get along (= to make ends meet).

bAwujUd e kAr e zyAt kOshesh ----- mEkunum ke kAr e shumA ----- zUtar khalAs shawa	<u>In spite of</u> a lot of work I will try (and see) that your work gets done soon (lit., more quickly).
bAwujUd e ke khArejI s besyAr ----- kOshesh mEkuna ke fArsIra ----- yAd bIgIra	<u>Even though</u> he/she is a foreigner he/she is trying hard to learn Persian.
bAwujUd e ke dIshao besyAr ----- khunuk bUd lAken nalAra ----- yakh na zada bUd	<u>Although</u> it was very cold last night the pipes did not freeze (lit., ice had not struck the pipes).
bedUn e fardA shao dega ar ----- shao khAna mEbAshum	I'll be home every night <u>except</u> to- morrow night.
bedUn e shumA dega ar kas ----- Amada bUd	Everybody was (lit., had come) [there] <u>except</u> you.
bedUn e eJAza dAkheI shuda ----- na mEtAnEn	You can't enter <u>without</u> permission.
Ewaz e dushambE rOz e ----- panjshambE mEran	They are going on Thursday <u>instead of</u> Monday.
aga Ewaz e AbI sabzAm ----- bAsha durust as	Even if they have (lit., there might be) green <u>instead of</u> blue, it's all right.
byAEn ke Ewaz e surUbl ----- estAlef burEm	Let's go to Istalif <u>instead of</u> Sarobi.
EwazetAn kIra rawAn mEkunEn?	Who(m) are you going to send <u>in</u> your <u>place</u> ?
ghair e dari bAyad pashtOrAm ----- yAd bIgIrum	I should learn Pashto <u>in addition to</u> Dari.

ghair e sang yag du sad dAna

kheshtAm kAr dArum
ghair e fardA shao dega ar

shao l:hAna mEbAshum
ghair e qAshuq yak kArD

O panjAm byArEn
ghair e (H)ErAt dega tamAm e

shARa e mash(H)Ur e

afghAnestAna dIdEm

Besides stone I need two hundred bricks

With the exception of tomorrow night I'll be home every night.

Besides the spoon bring a knife and fork.

I/we have seen all of the famous towns of Afghanistan with the exception of Herat.

cherA dAmAna mutAbeq e

namUna na dOkhtI?
patlUn e nawa mutAbeq e

I patlUn besAzEn
kOshesh kunEn ke belkul

mutAbeq e naqsha bAsha
mEkhAyum ke pardAra mutAbeq e

rang e utAq khush kunum

Why didn't you make (lit., sew) the skirt according to the pattern?

Make the new pants according to these pants.

Try to see that it's exactly according to the blueprint (or, sketch).

I want to choose curtains according to the color of the room.

1. bedUn e and ghair e are used synonymously in the sentence, "I'll be home every night except tomorrow night" although ghair e is probably a bit more common in this sense than bedUn e is.
2. Note that personal pronouns can be suffixed directly to these prepositions as in the example EwazetAn, "instead of you," "in your place."

20-F

Summary of verb formations for the verbs in Lessons Sixteen to Twenty

Infinitive	Present 3.p.s.	Imperative		Subjunctive 3.p.s.	
		Singular	Plural		
dAnestAn	to know, understand	mEdAna	bedAn	bedAnEn	bedAna nadAna

Infinitive		Present 3.p.s.	Imperative		Subjunctive 3.p.s.
			Singular	Plural	
<u>furOkhtan</u>	to sell	<u>mefrOsha</u>	<u>bufroSh</u> <u>nafrOsh</u>	<u>bufroShEn</u> <u>nafrOshEn</u>	<u>bufroSha</u> <u>nafrOsha</u>
<u>kashIdan</u>	to draw, pull, take off	<u>mEkasha</u>	<u>bekash</u> <u>nakash</u>	<u>bekashEn</u> <u>nakashEn</u>	<u>bekasha</u> <u>nakasha</u>
<u>khAstan</u>	to want, ask for	<u>mEkhAya</u>	<u>bekhAi</u> <u>nakhAi</u>	<u>bekhAEn</u> <u>nakhAEn</u>	<u>bekhAya</u> <u>nakhAya</u>
<u>pAlIdan</u>	to search for	<u>mEpAla</u>	<u>bupAl</u> <u>napAl</u>	<u>bupAlEn</u> <u>napAlEn</u>	<u>bupAla</u> <u>napAla</u>
<u>sharmIdan</u>	to be shy, embarrassed	<u>mEsharma</u>	<u>besharm</u> <u>nasharm</u>	<u>besharmEn</u> <u>nasharmEn</u>	<u>besharma</u> <u>nasharma</u>
<u>yAftan</u>	to get, find	<u>myAfa</u>	<u>byAf</u>	<u>byAfEn</u>	<u>byAfa</u> <u>nayAfa</u>

1. Where blanks are left in the above chart the forms are not likely to occur.
2. The imperative singular form of sharmIdan--besharm--might be used with a child in the sense similar to the English expression, "Shame on you!"

20-G

Vocabulary for Lesson Twenty

<u>AbI</u>	blue
<u>AdI</u>	accustomed, habituated, used to; "ordinary" (for mail, that is, <u>unregistered</u>)
<u>Ainak</u>	eyeglasses, spectacles
<u>ArUsI kadan</u>	to get married
<u>bAwujUd e</u>	even though, in spite of, notwithstanding, although
<u>bE-gham</u>	unworried (lit., without grief)
<u>bedUn e</u>	without, except, unless
<u>belkul</u>	completely, entirely, exactly, precisely
da <u>I nezdIkyA</u> (<u>nazdIkyA</u>)	recently, lately
<u>dAkhel shudan</u>	to enter, join; to enroll for

<u>dalAk</u>	barber
<u>dAman</u>	skirt
<u>darakht</u>	tree
dars <u>dAdan</u>	to teach (esp., academically)
<u>durust</u>	correct, all right, O.K.
<u>estAd</u> shudan	to stand, park
<u>Ewaz</u> e	instead of, in place of
<u>ghair</u> e	in addition to, except for, apart from, besides
<u>kArd</u>	knife
<u>khArej</u>	abroad; "outside"
<u>khArejI</u>	foreigner; foreign
<u>khesht</u>	brick
<u>mash(H)Ur</u>	famous, well-known
<u>mutAbeg</u> e	according to, in accordance with
<u>nal</u>	pipe (e.g., for water); faucet
<u>namUna</u>	pattern, sample, example
<u>naqsha</u> (<u>nakhcha</u>)	map, drawing, sketch, plan
<u>nuqs</u> (<u>nukhs</u>)	loss, damage, harm
<u>panja</u>	fork
<u>patlUn</u>	pants, trousers
<u>garz</u> <u>greftan</u>	to borrow, take a loan
<u>sabz</u>	green
<u>sang</u>	stone, rock
<u>sar tayAr</u> kadan	to give/get a haircut (synonymous with sar jOr kadan)
<u>shadId</u>	severe (mainly of events--but not of persons)

sharmIdan	to be shy, embarrassed [pres., mEsharma; impv., besharm; subjv., besharma]
shekAyat kadan	to complain, make a complaint
umur	age; "life"
yakh zadan	to freeze
zelzela	earthquake

Exercises for Lesson Twenty

(to be written as well as practiced orally with the teacher)

Exercise 182 - Complete these sentences with the infinitives of the verbs given in the present tense (3.p.s.) in (). E.g., Ale etAn bEtar shuda (gap mEzana). Ale gap zadanetAn bEtar shuda.....

1. unA dIshao emA Amadan (mIbIna)
2. enrOz esh eqa zarUrI nEs (as).
3. e ushtukA Inja khatar dArA (bAZI mEkuna)
4. da amrIkA besyAr qImat as (sar tayAr mEkuna)
5. etAn chI wakht as? (mEra)
6. ba rAdyO AdI nEstEm (meshnawa)
7. balE, ema besyAr zarUrI s (mEra)
8. da Inja segret eJAza nEs (mEkasha)
9. chand baja mErEn? (nAn mEkhura)

Exercise 183 - Complete these sentences with the appropriate form of the past perfect tense of the verbs given in (). E.g., tA dIrOz pArsal na (rasIdan) tA dIrOz pArsal na rasIda bUD

1. pEsh az I (shumA) fArsI na (khandan)
2. tA pAr sAl bachEm da maktab dAKhel na (shudan)
3. ma bAmyAna pEsh az I na (dIdan)
4. unAm amrAemA dIrOz paghman (raftan)

5. U da umre khud ba tayAra safar na (kadan)
6. akbar khAn tura chI ? (guftan)
7. anOz AwAlesh na ke khudesh Amad (Amadan)
8. anOz fArsIra khUb yAd na ke pashtOra shuro kad (greftan)

Exercise 184 - Use bAwujUd e or bedUn e as needed to complete these sentences.

1. shumA majles shuda na mEtAna
2. ke besyAr kam wakht fArsI khAnda, gap zadanesh bad nEs
3. ke kame nA-jOr bUd sar e kar raft
4. mOtar unja rafta na mEtAnEn
5. az I ke mara chIze bugOyan khArej raftan
6. ke barem guftEn az yAdem raft
7. ke dawAra khOrdum, lAken anOz marIz astum
8. yag du nafar kullehAna shenAkhtum

Exercise 185 - Complete these sentences with the correct form of the verbs given in (). E.g., Ewazesh ki bUd? (Amadan)
Ewazesh ki Amada bUd?

1. emte(H)AnAemAra Ewaz e saba da aftE Aenda (greftan)
2. Ewaz e fardA-pIshIn fardA-sOb mEtAnEn? (Amadan)
3. Ewaz e yakshambE rOz e jumma rukhsatI (bUdan)
4. byAEn ke Ewaz e mOtar ba tayAra bAmyAn (raftan)
5. Ewaz e pashtO (unA) darI yAd (greftan)

Exercise 186 - Use ghair e or mutAbeq e as needed to complete these sentences.

1. emrOz da I afta yag rOz e degAm rukhsatI s
2. qandar lashkargArAm bAyad bIbInEn
3. shumA du nafar e degAm Azer na bUd
4. chera pErAnema namUna na sAkhtEn?

5. emrOz yag rOz e degAm byAEEn
6. fardA dega ar wakht durust as
7. lutfan bAlapOsha I namUna budOzEn.
8. du sE nafar dega Echkas nAmada bUd

Exercise 187 - Change the verbs in each of the following sentences from the simple past or present perfect tense to the past perfect tense. E.g.,
shunIdEm ke fAmIletAn myAya. shunIda budum ke fAmIletAn myAya
.....

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. mOtarema Awurdum | 18. derIshI AbIma pUshIdum |
| 2. khata bOrdI? | 19. kuJA raftI? |
| 3. qalamema barem pas dAd | 20. az kuJA aftAd? |
| 4. safIr sAeba dIdEn? | 21. pAr sAl besyAr bArAn bArId |
| 5. darsa fAmIdEn, nE? | 22. AwAleshAna greftEm |
| 6. baresh chI guftEn? | 23. I ketAbchara khAndEn? |
| 7. kArA wakht khalAs kadEm | 24. chand baja az khao khEst? |
| 8. I qesm mAi khOrdEn? | 25. panj rOz mEsha ke marIZ shuda |
| 9. kALARA shushtEn? | 26. zUt. rasidan |
| 10. U degara khUb sAkhtEn | 27. emrOz az khAna wakht barAmada |
| 11. dAmanetAna khayAt dOkht? | 28. pAr sAl gula e aolImA sOkht |
| 12. dawARA da anwArI mAnda | 29. amrAem gap na zAda |
| 13. da unja sheshta | 30. bAisekelema wakht furOkhtEm |
| 14. chI khAstEn? | 31. taqrIban yak sAt entezAr kashId |
| 15. az shAr e nao kharIdum | 32. bAzAr e welAyata na pAlIdEm |
| 16. besyAr sharmId | 33. maktUba da pOsta andAkhtI? |
| 17. aodAna pur kadI? | 34. yag dAnE degara az kuJA yAft? |

LESSON TWENTY-ONE (dars e bIst 0 yakum)

21-A

Pronunciation drill (to be done only with the teacher)

1. Contrasting /n/ and /ng/

bAngIra da pEsh e nal bAnI (You should put the water-carrying yoke
near the faucet)

da kOchE tang du nafar tan- (Two people fought hand to hand in the
ba-tan jang kadan narrow street)

az khAter e ke mAIPar besyAr (Since Mahipar is very narrow they
tang as unjara tangI mEgan call it a gorge)

da dOkAnA e kOte sangI (Tweezers were not available in the shops
sanI paidA na shud of Kote Sangi)

2. Contrasting /o/ and /u/

O bacha! (Hey, you!)

U bacha (That boy).

tO nagOEn (Don't say 'tO' [used in calling a dog])

tU nagOEn (Don't say 'tU' [you])

Ewaz e tU tO nagOEn (Don't [by mistake] say 'tO' instead of 'tU')

tOp panchar shud (The ball broke)

tUp panchar shud (The tube got a puncture)

rang kO (Paint [it])

rang kU? (Where's the paint?)

3. Illustrating /shk/

peshket chI wakht mebrAya? (When will you be drafted?)

mushk besyAr qImat dAra (Musk [a kind of perfume]
is very expensive)

kAlAesh da aftao khushk shud (His/her clothes got dry
in the sun)

21-B

The -An- infix with causal verbs

az khao na khEzAnesh	Don't wake him/her up (lit., out of sleep).
ba khyAlem ke matlabema ----- fAmAndá na tAnestum	I think I wasn't able to make myself (lit., my meaning) clear (i.e., to explain it).
kull e kAghazA e bEkArara ----- bAyad busOzAnEn	You ought to burn all of the useless papers.
enshAllA sabA maktUba da ----- shObEtAn mErasAna	God willing, tomorrow he/she will deliver the letter to your department.
azIz da bIrU chOb meshkenAna	Aziz is chopping (lit., breaking) wood outside.
emsAl mEkhAyum ke da aolI ----- chand tA darakht beshAnum	I want to plant a few trees in the yard this year.

1. -An- as an infix is often used to make causal verbs out of either intransitive or transitive verbs.
2. Note in the above examples:
 - (a) khEstan (to arise, get up) -- khEstAndan (to cause to arise, wake up [someone])
 - (b) fAmIdan (to understand) -- fAmAndan (to cause to understand, explain)
 - (c) sOkhtan (to be burned) -- sOkhtAndan (to cause to burn, burn [something])
 - (d) rasIdan (to arrive) -- rasAndan (to cause to arrive, deliver)
 - (e) shekestan (to be broken, break) -- shekestAndan (to cause to break, break [something])
 - (f) sheshtan (to sit) -- shAndan (to cause to sit, seat, put, plant, attach)
3. While -An- in the middle of a verb generally signals causality, it is combined in various ways depending on the verb. Therefore, each causal verb has to be learned as a separate vocabulary item.
4. The example given with fAmAndan is a rather polite way of telling someone that he didn't understand you; in other words, a taking of the blame on oneself, as if, "I guess I wasn't able to get my point across."
5. shAndan in the sense of "to put" differs from mAndan in that mAndan means to "put" or "place" something in a more temporary fashion (= lay,

leave) while shAndan means to "put" or "attach" or "fix" something in place in a more permanent way.

6. Some transitive verbs--e.g., kadan (to do)--do not have a special causal form but may themselves convey causality, depending on the context. For example,

{ sarema jOr mEkunum sarema tayAr mEkunum }
khAnara rang kadum

I'm going to get a haircut.

I had the house painted [more likely]

or

I painted the house [less likely].

21-C

Various ways of expressing "to know"

maqsadesha pUra na <u>fAmIdum</u> ----- ke pAKat e awAI mEkhAya ----- yA ErOgrAm	I don't (lit., didn't) quite (or, fully) 'get' his/her point (lit., intention) as to whether (lit., that) he/she wants airmail envelopes or aerogrammes.
dIshao zelzelara <u>fAmIdI?</u>	Did you feel (lit., know, realize) the earthquake last night?
anOz na <u>mEfAmum</u> ke rukhsatIra ----- da kujA tEr kunEm	I don't know yet where we're going to spend the holiday.
na <u>mEdAnum</u> ke fElan tanA mEra ----- yA amrAe fAmIl e khud	I don't know if he/she for the time being is going alone or with his/her family.
m a c h e m !	How should I know?
<u>machem</u> ke anOz utAqa ----- khAlI kada yA nE	I don't know whether he/she has emptied (or, vacated) the room yet or not.
<u>khabar dAREn</u> ke da Otal e ----- bain-ul-melall emshao ----- chI gap as?	Do you know what's going on at the Intercontinental Hotel tonight?
mutasefAna. (ke) az I gap ----- Ech <u>khabar</u> na <u>dAshtum</u>	Unfortunately [or, I'm sorry], I didn't know anything about this.

na-khair, mestar dAsana
na <u>meshnAsum</u>
shumA az rUi yAd-dAsht kul- cha pukhta kada mEtAnEn?
zargar Ira-jOr kada <u>mEtAna</u> ?
bubakhshEn, ma pyAnO
zadana yAd na <u>dArum</u>
pashtO <u>yAd dAran</u> ?

No [, I regret to say], I don't know Mr. Dawson.

Do you know how to make cookies (or, biscuits) by (reading) a recipe?

Does the jeweller know how to fix this?

I'm sorry, (but) I don't know how to play the piano.

Do they know Pashto?

1. fAmIdan and dAnestan are generally interchangeable and are used in the sense of "to understand, comprehend, know." However, in the sentences on "Make yourself at home" (p. 197) bedAnEn (know, consider, regard) is correct while bufAmEn would not be used.
2. machem!--a contraction of ma (I) + chI (what) + mEdAnum (I know)--is a rhetorical question or exclamation, roughly equivalent to a shrug of the shoulders and some such phrase as, "How should I know?" "Search me!" or "I haven't any idea."
3. khabar dAshtan is used in the sense of "to have information (or news)" about something, to be informed.
4. shenAkhtan (to recognize, know) conveys the notion of acquaintance, as, "Do you know . . . ?" or "Are you acquainted with . . . ?" Note that fAmIdan and dAnestan are not used in this sense of acquaintance or recognition. (Cf. § 14-D-4.)
5. The unchangeable past participle + tAnestan (can, to be able) indicates "knowing how to" do that which is expressed in the participle (cf. § 14-F-1, 3).
6. yAd (memory) + dAshtan (to have) suggests that one has learned a certain thing, hence, "knows" it (or, in the negative, has not learned something and therefore does not know it). Based on this same combination, a noun yAd-dAsht occurs in the sense of "reminder" (= note, memo, **recipe**). So,

dIrOz baresh yAd-dAsht

rawAn kadum

Yesterday I sent him/her a reminder (or, note, memo).

7. zadan (to beat, hit) + any musical instrument means "playing" that instrument.

21-D

The prepositions muqAbel e (opposite), pAlU e (beside, alongside of), pEsh e rUi (in front of) and pusht e (sar e) (behind, in back of)

bAnk e meli muqAbel e

Otal e kAbul as

The (Afghan) National Bank is opposite the Kabul Hotel.

ba muqAbel e sawAleAn

chI juwAb guft?

What was his/her reaction to your question? (I.e., In the face of your question what answer did he/she give?)

da muqAbel e daftar e

garzandCi chandIn dOkAn

e sAmAn e barq as

There are several electric supply shops opposite the Tourist Bureau.

sInuma e AryANa pAlU e

rastUrAn e khaibar as

The Ariana Theatre is next to the Khyber Restaurant.

sefArat e amRika da sarak e

maidAn e awAI pAlU e

rAdyO afghAnestAn as

The American Embassy is on the airport road alongside of Radio Afghanistan.

pAlU e bukhArI mIshInum az

khAter e ke rEzesh kadEm

I'll sit next to the stove since I've caught (i.e., got) a cold.

dIrOz dIdumesh ke az pEsh

e rUi pOsta-khANe

markazI tEr mEshud

Yesterday I saw him/her passing by in front of the main post office.

yak tair e pEsh e rUi

mOtar bAd na dArA

One of the front tires of the car doesn't have air (= is low, flat).

pEsh e rUi wezArat e khAreja

baretAn entezAr mEkeshum

I'll wait for you in front of the Ministry of Foreign Affairs.

(da) pEsh e rUi khANUma

du sE dOkAn as

There are a few shops in front of our house.

(da) pusht e sar e khAnEshAn ----- khAnE khEshAeshAn as
U pusht e watan e khud ----- besyAr deq shuda
akbara pusht e saoda ----- rawAn kadEm

Their relatives' house is behind their house.

He/she has gotten very homesick for his/her homeland.

I've sent Akbar for groceries (i.e., supplies).

1. For maps of Kabul City giving the names of streets, intersections and noteworthy locations see Appendix VII.
2. While khEshA, translated "relatives," may be either singular or plural it is generally used of those who are relatives by marriage. The word qaomA would be more specific for blood relatives. However, the Dari system of denoting relatives, where different words occur for aunt, uncle, cousin, etc., depending on which side of the family they are, is much too complicated to be included in a basic general course of the scope of this present one--except as an appendix for reference purposes. See Appendix III for further details.
3. pusht e may be preceded by da and followed by sar e in some situations.
4. pusht e in the sense of "for" (or, after [in order to obtain]) rather than "behind" or "in back of" is interchangeable with pas e. Thus,

una pas e aolAda e khud ----- besyAr deq shudan
akbar pas e saoda rafta

They are very lonesome for their children

Akbar has gone for (i.e., after) groceries (or, supplies).

21-E

Idiomatic uses of sar (head, top)

sarem dard mEkuna
rUipAkAra da sar e bestara ----- bAnEn
cherA saresh qAr shud?
byAEn ke burEm ke saremA ----- nA-wakht nasha

My head aches.

Put the towels on the bed.

Why did he/she get angry at him/her?

Let's hurry so we're not late.

.....) kOshesh kunEn ke fArSI gap	Try to speak Persian; nobody will laugh at you (if you do).
----- bezanEn--kase saretAn	
----- khanda na mEkuna	
----- saresh bAwar dArum	I believe him/her (i.e., I have faith [or, confidence] in him/her).
----- sar az sabA senfetAn	Starting from tomorrow your class (room) will change.
----- tabdIl mEsha	
----- shumA chI wakht sar e	What time do you go to work?
----- kAr mErEn?	
----- sar e chI feker mEkunEn?	What are you thinking about?
----- sar ba sar namAnesh(An)	Don't stack them on top of each other or (= lest; lit., that) they'll get spoiled.
----- ke kharAb mEsha	
----- zendagI sar e khudetAn bAsha!	May your life be on yourself! (= My condolence).

1. sar (head, top) is used in a great variety of idioms so that no simple translation of it will fit each occasion. The examples above show some of the ways in which it is used.
2. The final example is said by way of a wish to someone who has lost a loved one, as, "I'm sorry that you have lost your loved one." Cf. also § 20-B-6.

21-F

The suffix -Ana to make possessive adjectives out of nouns

jAkAt e zanAna dArEn?	Do you have <u>ladies'</u> sweaters?
tashnAb e mardAna da	The <u>men's</u> bathroom is on the left.
----- taraf e chap as	

21-G

The use of chand with numbers, in the sense of -fold

qImatA az da sAl pEsh	Prices have gone up at least three or
----- kada sE chAr chand	or four times (i.e., threefold,
----- beland rafta	fourfold) in ten years.

namakesha emdafa du chand

Double the salt in it this time (i.e.,
Make it twofold).

kunEn

21-H

Vocabulary for Lesson Twenty-one

<u>awAI</u>	air [adj.]; by air
az <u>rUi</u>	by, according to
<u>bAd</u>	air, wind [noun]
<u>bain-ul-melali</u>	international, intercontinental
<u>bAnk e meli</u>	(The) National Bank
<u>bAwar dAshtan</u>	to believe, have confidence in (with sar____ or ba____)
<u>bEkAra</u>	useless
<u>bestara</u>	bed; bedding (includes the bed and its covers)
-chand	-fold (a suffix used with numbers)
<u>fAMandan</u>	to explain [pres., <u>mEfAMAna</u> ; impv., <u>bufAMAn</u> ; subjv., <u>bufAMAna</u>]
<u>fElan</u>	for the time being, temporarily
<u>garzandOi</u>	tourist (a Pashto word used in Dari)
<u>khabar dAshtan</u>	to have information about, know
<u>khEshA</u>	relative(s) (by marriage)
<u>khEstAndan</u>	to awaken, wake up (someone)---[pres., <u>mEkhezAna</u> ; impv., <u>bekhezAn</u> ; subjv., <u>bekhezAna</u>]
<u>kulcha</u>	cookie, biscuit
<u>machem!</u>	How should I know? (or, Search me!)
<u>maqSad</u>	intention, purpose
<u>marDAna</u>	men's
<u>matlab</u>	meaning, intention
<u>muqAbel e</u>	opposite (to)

<u>mutasefAna</u>	unfortunately, regretfully, "sorry"
<u>pAkat</u>	envelope, bag
<u>pEsh e rUi</u>	in front of
<u>pusht e (sar e)</u>	behind, in back of; "for," "after"
<u>pyAnO</u>	piano
<u>qaomA</u>	relative(s) (by blood)
<u>qAr shudan</u>	to be(come) angry
<u>rasAndan</u>	to deliver, cause to arrive [pres., <u>mErasAna</u> ; impv., <u>berasAn</u> ; subjv., <u>berasAna</u>]
<u>rUipAk</u>	towel
<u>sAmAn</u>	tool(s), equipment, baggage, goods
<u>sar</u>	head, top
<u>shAndan</u>	to put, seat, attach, plant [pres., <u>mEshAna</u> ; impv., <u>beshtAn</u> ; subjv., <u>beshtAna</u>]
<u>shekestAndan</u>	to cause to break, break-(something), chop (e.g., wood) [pres., <u>meshkenAna</u> ; impv., <u>beshtkenAn</u> ; subjv., <u>beshtkenAna</u>]
<u>shOba</u>	department, bureau, section (of an office or organization)
<u>sOkhtAndan</u>	to set fire to, cause to burn, burn (something) [pres., <u>mEsOzAna</u> ; impv., <u>busOzAn</u> ; subjv., <u>busOzAna</u>]
<u>tabdIl shudan</u>	to be changed
<u>tEr kadan</u>	to spend (e.g., time, a holiday)
<u>watan</u>	homeland, home country
<u>yAd-dAsht</u>	reminder, note, memo; recipe
<u>yAd dAshtan</u>	to know (something [because of having learned it]); to know how to (do something)
<u>zanAna</u>	women's, ladies'

zargar jeweller

zendagi life

Exercises for Lesson Twenty-one

(to be written as well as practiced orally with the teacher)

Exercise 188 - Keeping the person the same, change the forms of shAndan from the plural to the singular in the following sentences.

1. da I dEwAlAm yak cherAgh mEshAnEn?
2. mElchAyum ke da I darwAza yak kelkIn beshAnEn
3. da Inja chI qesm gul shAndEn?
4. mEmAnAra da sAlUn beshAnEn

Exercise 189 - Keeping the person the same, change (where possible) the forms of fAmAndan and rasAndan from the singular to the plural in the following sentences.

1. chandIn dafa fAmAndumeshAn laken mAUM mEsha ke anOz na fAmIdan
2. kOshesh mEkunum ke bufAmAnumeshAn
3. fAmIdan O fAmAndan besyAr farq dAra
4. bubakhshEn, ba khyAleM ke fAmAnda na tAnestum
5. da kujA baretAn berasAnum?
6. bE-gham bAshEn--khuda tA chAr baja mErasAnum
7. ma emrAetAn berasAnum?
8. I AwAla bAyad baresh emrOz berasAnI

Exercise 190 - Keeping the person the same, change the forms of the verbs shekestAndan, sOkhtAndan and khEstAndan from the singular to plural in the following sentences.

1. bare bukhArI bAyad chOb beshkenAnI
2. Ush kO ke Ainara nashkenAnI
3. I chObA e kalAna chetOr beshkenAnum?

4. da I bukhARI chI mEsOzAnI?
5. cherA kAgHaza e bEKArara na sOkhtAndI?
6. sAle cheqa chOb mEsOzAnI?
7. cherA mara eqa wakht az khao khEstAndI?
8. anOz teflARA az khao nakhEzAn

Exercise 191 - Keeping the person the same, change the number of the verbs indicated from singular to plural. E.g., khAnda na mEtAna.
khAnda na mEtAnan

1. mEdAnI ke da kuJA e kArTE sE mIshInEm?
.....
2. bubakhshEn, az marIZItAn khabar na dAshtum
.....
3. bale, pyAnO zada mEtAna
.....
4. khabar dArI ke da kudAm tayARA mEra?
.....
5. mEdAnI ke kudAm rOz emte(H)An dArEm?
.....
6. tuAm I qesm kulcha pukhta kada mEtAnI?
.....
7. na mEdAnum ke chI gap shuda
.....
8. Ira jOr kada mEtAnI?
.....
9. khabar na dArum ke kuJA rafta
.....

Exercise 192 - Change the verbs indicated in the following sentences from the first person singular to the third person singular. E.g., pyAnO zadana yAd na dArum. pyAnO zadana yAd na dArum

1. awal shumARA na shenAkhtum
.....
2. eqa tEz gap mEzana ke Ech gapesha fAmIda na mEtAnum
.....
3. besyAr kam pashtO yAd dArum
.....
4. I darsa khUb na fAmIdum
.....
5. na mEfAmum ke da dAwat chand nafar Amada bUd
.....

Exercise 193 - Change the verbs indicated in the following sentences from the second person plural to the third person plural. E.g., englIsI

yAd dArEn? englIsI yAd dAran?

1. jarmanI yAd na dArEn?

2. Ura meshnAsEn?

3. khAndan O neweshta kadana yAd dArEn?

4. mestar fAKsa meshnAsEn?

5. chand zubAn mEfAmEn?

Exercise 194 - Complete each of these sentences in four ways, using muqAbel e, pAlU e, pEsh e rUi and pusht e (sar e) in the blank spaces.

1. mOtaretAna da khAna estAd kunEn
2. bAisekeletAna da pOsta-khAna namAnEn
3. maghAzEsh da Otal e spInzar as
4. chaokIra da mEz bAnEn
5. sarwEs e shAr e nao az khAnEshAn tEr mEsha

Exercise 195 - Use both zanAna and mardAna to complete these sentences; in other words, two possibilities for each sentence.

1. tashnAb e da bAlA s
2. U dOkAn bUtA e khUb e dAra
3. sAt e da kuJA yAft mEsha?
4. qImat e I jAkata e chand as?
5. U khayAt e s
6. jerAb e jOrE chand as?
7. I maghAza tanA kAlA e mefrOsha

LESSON TWENTY-TWO (dars e bist o duum)

22-A

Pronunciation drill (to be done only with the teacher)

1. Practicing /w/

WA wakht darwAzE dawa-khAnara (They have already opened the door
wAz kadan of the dispensary)

Ewaz e shawar e khud khudesh (Instead of her husband [doing it] she
sawAla juWAb dAd answered the question herself)

wazIr sAeb welAyat e qandAr (The Minister has gone to Kandahar
rafta Province)

2. Illustrating /sm/

esmetAna chI qesm neweshta mEkunEn? (How do you spell your name?)

rasm O rawAjemA I qesm nEs (We don't have this sort of custom)

3. Illustrating /rsh/

destem da tak na mErasa -- (I can't reach the vine -- [so]
angUr tursh as the grapes are sour!)

kull e utAqAeshAn qAlIn farsh bUd (All of their rooms were carpeted)

22-B

The formation of the passive forms of verbs

<u>A c t i v e</u>	<u>P a s s i v e</u>
tekrAr kadan (to review, repeat)	tekrAr shudan (to be reviewed, repeated)
taklIf dAdan (to trouble, bother)	taklIf shudan (to be troubled, bothered)
khushk kadan (to dry)	khushk shudan (to get, become dried)

<u>A c t i v e</u>	<u>P a s s i v e</u>
rOshan kadan (to light, turn on)	rOshan shudan (to be lit, turned on)
pur kadan (to fill, make full)	pur shudan (to be filled, full)
neweshta kadan (to write)	neweshta shudan (to be written)
yAftan (to find, get)	yAft shudan (to be found, gotten)

1. Some words combine with both kadan (or some other transitive verb, or-- as with yAftan--are themselves transitive) and shudan (or sometimes bUdan). In such cases the kadan (or alternative) form is active or transitive while the shudan (or bUdan) form is passive or intransitive (cf. § 7-E-1).

<u>A c t i v e</u>	<u>P a s s i v e</u>
sOkhtAndan (to burn, set fire to)	sOkhtan (to be [or, get] burned)
shekestAndan (to break, cause to break)	shekestan (to be [or, get] broken)
shAndan (to seat, put, attach)	sheshtan (to sit)
khEstAndan (to awaken [someone], cause to get up)	khEstan (to wake up, get up)

2. Some verbs have separate forms for active and passive ideas, the active sense being conveyed by "causal verbs" (cf. § 21-B) while the basic form is passive in significance.

<u>A c t i v e</u>	<u>P a s s i v e</u>
sAkhtan (to make)	sAkhta + shudan (to be made)
dIdan (to see)	dIda + shudan (to be seen)
khOrdan (to consume)	khOrda + shudan (to be consumed)
guftan (to say)	gufta + shudan (to be said)
khAndan (to read)	khAnda + shudan (to be read)
dOkhtan (to sew)	dOkhta + shudan (to be sewn)
shunIdan (to hear)	shunIda + shudan (to be heard)

<u>A c t i v e</u>	<u>P a s s i v e</u>
bOrdan (to carry)	bOrda + shudan (to be carried)
shushtan (to wash)	shushta + shudan (to be washed)

3. The passive is also commonly formed by combining the unchangeable past participle (cf. § 14-E) of a transitive verb (whether basic or causal) with the appropriate mood or tense of shudan. In addition to the examples above, note fAmIda + shudan (to be understood) and fAmAnda + shudan (to be explained).

22-C

Statements, questions and negatives in the passive forms

bubakhshEn, emshao baretAn ----- besyAr taklif shud	I'm sorry, (but) it's been a lot of trouble for you tonight.
I dars eja mu(H)em as ke ----- bayad yag dafE degAm ----- tekrAr shawa	This lesson is so important that it should be reviewed once more.
bubakhshEn, az pEshem ----- nA-ghalatI sokht	Excuse me, (but) I burned it accidentally (lit., It got burned accidentally by me).
U tAmIr besyAr zUt sAkhta ----- shud	That building was put up (lit., made) very quickly.
I qesm tarkArI khAmAm ----- khOrda mEsha	This kind of vegetable can be (lit., becomes) eaten raw, too.
sar e kOA e paghman umUman ----- barf dIda mEsha	Snow can usually be seen on the Paghman mountains.
bIBI ke tAnk pur shuda yA nE	See if the tank has gotten full or not.
kAlA khushk shuda yA ----- anOz tar as?	Have the clothes gotten dry or are they still wet (or, damp)?
tekes e pOstE qadImI da ----- kuJA yAft mEsha?	Where can old (lit., ancient) postage stamps be found (or, gotten)?

bAzUesh kai shekest?	When did he/she break his/her arm? (Lit., When was his/her arm broken?)
eturAm gufta mEsha?	Can it be said this way, too?
sadAem shunIda mEsha?	Can you hear my voice? (Lit., Is my voice being heard?)
cherA derIshIm anOz dOkhta na shuda?	Why isn't my suit ready yet? (Lit., Why hasn't my suit been sewn yet?)
I khat eqa kharAb neweshta shuda ke Esh khAnda na mEsha	This letter is written so poorly that it can't be read at all.
I kOcha eqa tang as ke du mOtar azesh tEr shuda na mEtAna	This little street (or, alley) is so narrow that two cars can't pass (each other) on it.
bIbInEn ke cherA I cherAgh rOshan na mEsha	See why this light doesn't go on.
anwArI besyAr gerang as -- bAlA bOrda na mEsha	The cupboard is very heavy--it can't be carried upstairs.
pErAnA e nAzuk bayad da aw e dAgh shushta nasha	Delicate shirts (or, blouses, dresses) should not be washed in very hot water.

1. In addition to sakhta + shudan to indicate the origin of something, a noun sakht also occurs, meaning a "product" or "thing made." For example,

I qAlIn sakht e kuJA s?	Where is this rug made? (Lit., From where is this rug a product?)
sakht e (H)ErAt as	It's made in (lit., a product of) Herat.
Ira baretAn kI sakhta?	Who made this for you?
I sakht e khudema s	I made it myself (lit., It's my own production).

2. The English word "ticket" is commonly pronounced tekes and may mean a "ticket" of any kind, as well as a "postage stamp."
3. Although etur commonly occurs without the final /r/, in this case the /r/ is needed because of the following vowel in the -Am suffix.
4. When the negative occurs it is prefixed to the form of shudan and not to the unchangeable past participle.
5. Frequently in bargaining (or other "discussion") when an unacceptable price (or other arrangement) is proposed the retort may be heard:

na mEsha!

It will not be (i.e., It's impossible, It isn't acceptable).

The context alone supplies the information as to what is being made passive and therefore unacceptable.

6. Even without the use of tAnestan (can, to be able) the passive often conveys ability or inability as in examples given above with mEsha or na mEsha. With na mEsha the idea of impossibility may be implied.

22-D

The months of the year

Season	No.	Name	No. of days	Beginning
ba(H)Ar	1	(H)amal	31	March 21
	2	saor	31	April 21
	3	jaozA	31	May 22
tAbestAn	4	saratAn	31	June 22
	5	asad	31	July 23
	6	sumbula	31	August 23
khazAn	7	mIzAn	30	September 23
	8	aqrab	30	October 23
	9	qaos	30	November 22
zemestAn	10	jadI	30	December 22
	11	dalw	30	January 21
	12	(H)Ut	29	February 20
			365	

1. There are actually three calendars in use in Afghanistan:
 - (a) the solar (shamsi), given above and used as the official calendar (jantari) for the country;
 - (b) the lunar (qamari), on which Muslim religious holidays are based and which changes from year to year--e.g., ramazan (the Muslim month of fasting) is a lunar month--and
 - (c) the Christian (Isawi), or Gregorian.

2. When Leap Year occurs, the extra day is added to the month of (H)Ut, thus making six months of 31 days each and six months of 30 days each; total, 366. In the current Afghan year (1350) the month of (H)Ut (i.e., February 20 to March 20, 1972) has 30 days.

3. The solar calendar in use in Afghanistan is reckoned from the time of Muhammad's flight (hegira) from Mecca to Medina (c. 622 A. D.). The current official Afghan year--which began on March 21, 1971--is the year 1350 A. H. (anno hegirae).

22-E

Usage of the months of the year

da afghAnestAn (H)amal mA ----- e awal e sal as	In Afghanistan Hamal is the first month of the year.
(H)amal da b1st 0 yakum ----- e mArch shur0 mEsha	Hamal begins on the twenty-first of March.
r0z c awal e (H)amal ----- naor0z gufta mEsha	The first day of Hamal is called 'Nauroz' (or, New Year's Day).
da mA e saor umUman ----- bArAn mEbAra	In the month of Saur it usually rains.
da mA e jaozA mEWE tAza ----- nao da bAzAr myAya	Fresh fruit begins coming into the marketplace in the month of Jauza.
(H)amal, saor 0 jaozA ----- ba(H)Ar gufta mEsha	Hamal, Saur and Jauza are called spring.
tAbestAn az awal e saratAn ----- shur0 0 da Akher e sum- ----- bula khalAs mEsha	Summer begins from the first of Saratan and finishes at the end of Sumbula.

mĀ e asad umĀman garmtarIn ----- mĀ e sĀI mEbĀsha	The month of Asad is usually the hottest month of the year.
da mĀ e asad 0 sumbula ega ----- khAkbaD mEbĀsha ke khĀna ----- ba mushkel pĀk mĀmĀna	There is so much dusty wind in the months of Asad and Sumbula that it is difficult to keep the house clean (lit., the house remains clean with difficulty).
jashen az awal tĀ shashum ----- e sumbula s	Jashen (= the National Fair) is from the first to the sixth of Sumbula. (= August 23 to 28).
tĀbestĀn sĒ mĀ s, yĀne ----- saratĀn, asad 0 sumbula	There are three months of summer, namely, Saratan, Asad and Sumbula.
mĪzĀn wakht e jĀsh e mĒwĒ ----- kĀbul as--khusĀsan khar-- ----- bUza besyĀr zyĀt mEbĀsha	Mizan is the peak of the season for fruit in Kabul—especially are melons in abundance.
sĀlgerĒ tawaludĪ ĀĀĀ azrat ----- muhammad zaher shĀ da ----- bĪst 0 dawum e mĪzĀn as	The birthday of His Majesty, Muhammad Zahir Shah, is on the twenty-second of Mizan (= October 14).
emsĀI (yĀne 1971) ramazĀn ----- da Akher emĪzĀn myĀya	This year (that is, 1971) 'Ramazan' comes at the end of Mizan (i.e., from October 20).
da mĀ e ramazĀn musulmĀnĀ ----- rĀza mĪĪran	During the month of 'Ramazan' Muslims keep the fast.
az agrab ba bĀd kam kam ----- khuruk shurĀ mĒsha	From Agrab onward it begins to get a little cold.
da kĀbul emte(H)ĀnĀ e ----- maktabĀ sar az awal e ----- qaos shurĀ mĒsha	In Kabul school examinations begin on the first of Qaus (= November 22).
da pĀnzde qaos maktabĀ ----- rukhsat mĒsha	Schools close (or, go on holiday) on the fifteenth of Qaus (= December 6).

jadI mA e awal e zemestAn as	Jadi is the first month of winter.
khunuk e mA e jadI O	There is very severe cold (weather)
dalw shadId as	in the months of Jadi and Dalw.
da mA e (H)Ut jantari	New calendars come out (i.e., are is-
nao mebrAya	sued) in the month of Hut.

22-F

Vocabulary for Lesson Twenty-two

AlA <u>azrat</u>	His Majesty
(H) <u>anal</u>	the first month of the year (beginning March 21)
<u>aqrah</u>	the eighth month of the year (beginning October 23)
<u>asad</u>	the fifth month of the year (beginning July 23)
ba <u>bAd</u>	onward; onwards
b <u>AzU</u>	arm
dalw	the eleventh month of the year (beginning January 21)
<u>gerang</u>	heavy
Isaw <u>I</u>	Christian [adj.]
<u>jadI</u>	the tenth month of the year (beginning December 22)
jantari	calendar
jaoz <u>A</u>	the third month of the year (beginning May 22)
<u>jashen</u>	the annual Afghan National Fair (last week of August)
kai?	when?
khAk <u>bAd</u>	a dusty wind
khAm	raw, uncooked
khushk	dry
kh <u>usU</u> san	especially, particularly

<u>kOcha</u>	narrow street, alley
<u>mIzAn</u>	the seventh month of the year (beginning September 23)
<u>mu(H)em</u>	important
<u>musulmAn</u>	Muslim
<u>nA-ghalaṭI</u>	accidentally, by mistake
<u>nAzuk</u>	delicate, fine, thin (of things)
<u>neweshta</u> (shudan)	a writing; (to be) written
<u>pur</u> (shudan)	filled, full; to be filled, full
<u>qadImI</u>	old, antique, ancient
<u>qamarI</u>	lunar
<u>qaos</u>	the ninth month of the year (beginning November 22)
<u>ramazAn</u>	the Month of Fasting (observed by Muslims)
<u>rOza greftan</u>	to fast, abstain from food
<u>sAkht</u>	product, production, "made in" (with ezAfI)
<u>sAlgera</u>	anniversary (of any kind)
<u>saor</u>	the second month of the year (beginning April 21)
<u>saratAn</u>	the fourth month of the year (beginning June 22)
<u>shamsI</u>	solar
<u>sumbula</u>	the sixth month of the year (beginning August 23)
<u>taklIf</u> (shudan)	trouble, bother; to be troubled, bothered
<u>tAmIr</u>	building, construction
<u>tang</u>	narrow, tight, close-fitting, cramped
<u>tAnk</u>	tank
<u>tar</u>	wet, damp
<u>tawaludI</u>	birth
<u>tekes e pOsta</u>	postage stamp

tekrAr shudan	to be reviewed, repeated
(H)Ut	the twelfth month of the year (beginning February 20)

Exercises for Lesson Twenty-two

(to be written as well as practiced orally with the teacher)

Exercise 196 - Change the verb in each of the following sentences from active to passive. E.g., az kuJA paidA kadEn? az kuJA paidA shud?

1. bare saba bAyad I darsa tekrAr kunEn
2. na mEkhAyum ke shumARA taklif betum
3. tAnka bAyad ar rOz pur kunEn
4. anOz zarfARA khushk na kadEm
5. sarwEsa da Inja estAd na mEkuna
6. Ush kunEn ke gum na kunEnesh
7. tA shash baja bAyad nAna pukhta kunEn
8. panj baja majlesa shuro mEkunEm
9. sar az afTE Acnda utAQ e khuda tabdil mEkunEm
10. maktUba neweshta kadEn?

Exercise 197 - Change the verb in each of the following sentences from active (and transitive) to passive (and intransitive). E.g., tA panj baja enshAllA khuda mERasAnum. tA panj baja enshAllA mERasum

1. Ush kunEn ke dEga na soZAnEn
2. mEmAnARA da sAlUn mEshAnum
3. pAi khuda shekestAnd
4. mara shash O nIm baja az khao khEstAnd
5. pArsala barem rasAnd

Exercise 198 - Complete the following sentences in the passive with shudan and the unchangeable past participle of the verbs shown in ().

E.g., besyAr kalAn as--da I mOtar (na Awurdan).
 besyAr kalAn as--da I mOtar Awurda na mEsha

1. maAsh chI wakht ? (dAdan)
2. shumA da I rOzA Ech (na dIdan)
3. gapesh Ech (na fAmIdan)
4. Ale garmI shuda--bAlapOsh (na pUshIdan)
5. etu(r) gapA (na shunIdan)
6. aga tekkara Ale baretAn betum tA chI wakht ? (dOkhtan)
7. da band e qargha khUb mA (greftan)
8. I pErAnA da aw.e.dAgh. (na shushtan)
9. da Inja (na mAndan)
10. tA wakht e raftanetAn (na furOkhtan)

Exercise 199 - Complete the following sentences with the correct names of the months required.

1., 0 ba(H)Ar as
2., 0 tAbestAn as
3., 0 khazAn as
4., 0 zemestAn as
5. mA e awal e sAl as
6. mA e duwum e sAl as
7. mA e sEyum e sAl as
8. mA e chArum e sAl as
9. mA e panjum e sAl as
10. mA e shashum e sAl as
11. mA e aftum e sAl as
12. mA e ashtum e sAl as
13. mA e nuwum e sAl as

14. mA e dawum e sAl as.
15. mA e yAzdawum e sAl as
16. mA e duwAzdawum yA Akhar e sAl as
17. naorOz da mA e as
18. jashen da mA e s

Exercise 200 - Answer the following questions with the correct name of the month or other answer (as required).

1. I kuDAm mA s?
2. da mA e saor da kAbul budEn?
3. da kuDAm mA da afghAnestAn rasIdEn?
4. nAm e mA e yAzdawum chI s?
5. mA e guzashta chI bUd?
6. mA e Aenda chI s?

LESSON TWENTY-THREE (dars e bist O sEyum)

23-A

Pronunciation drill (to be done only with the teacher)

1. Practicing /y/

yagAn rOz yAdesh myAya (Some days he/she remembers)

shAyad yAzda rOz bAd tayAr shawa (Perhaps it will be ready in
eleven days)

yak yA yak O nIm sAl dars (He/she has studied for a year or a year
khAnda--bAyad kAmyAb shawa and a half; he/she ought to pass)

2. Illustrating /shm/

cheshmetAn rOshan! (How nice for you! [lit., May your eyes be bright])

bAlapOsh e pashmI mEpOsha (He/she wears a wool overcoat)

sar e mEz lashm as (The top of the table is smooth)

3. Illustrating /sht/

pusht e asht nO myAya (Nine comes after eight)

da I zamIn chI kesht kadEn? (What have you cultivated in this field?)

bare nAn e chAsht asht nafar (We are having eight guests for lunch)
mEmAn dArEm

da pusht e khar khesht bAr as (There are bricks loaded on the
donkey's back)

23-B

The use of khAt (may, might) as a contingent future

bAnk e melI baresh

qarz khAt dAd?

Would the National Bank lend (lit.,
give a loan to) him/her some money?

bE-gham bAsh -- az yAdem
na-khAt raft
eqa yakh bare kull e
mEmAnA bas na-khAt kad
chand daqIqE degAm saber
kunEn -- dAktor sAeb
dEr na-khAt kad
Ale wakht na dArum -- fardA
amrAetAn esAb khAt kadum
Inja khu mOtar na myAya --
sar e khar khAt Awurd
I mazmUna tA saba taip
kada khAt tAnestEn?
kudAm-rOz kulcha pukhta
kadanAm yAd khAt dAdumet
baretAn taklIf khAt shud
emrOz besyAr kam abr as --
barf na-khAt barId
kai az qandar arakat khAt
kadan?
U chaokyA makhsUs e kI
khAt bUd?
enshAllA rOz e panjshambE
mukamal khAt shud

Don't worry; I won't (or, wouldn't) forget.

This much ice wouldn't be enough for all the guests.

Wait (lit., be patient) a few minutes more; the doctor shouldn't be much longer.

I don't have time right now; I might do accounts with you tomorrow.

A car (or, truck) [certainly] can't come here (, can it?); he might bring it on a donkey.

Would you be able to type this paper (or, article) by tomorrow?

Someday I'll teach you how to make cookies (or, biscuits), too.

It might be trouble for you.

There are very few clouds (lit., very little overcast) today; I don't think it will snow (lit., snow might not fall).

When would they leave (i.e., move from) Kandahar?

Who(m) are those seats reserved for?

God willing (= I hope) it would be completed by Thursday.

1. The word khAt (may, might, will, would) is used with the simple past tense of any verb to convey the idea of a contingent future.

2. Its position with simple verbs is just before the verb and with compound verbs just before the verbal member of the compound.
3. When the negative occurs it comes just before the khAt rather than before the verb.
4. This form--in addition to the simple present tense (cf. § 7-C-4)--may be used as a substitute for the future tense, but always with a degree of uncertainty or contingency. The contrast may be indicated thus:

fardA myAyum	I will come tomorrow. [Definite]
fardA khAt Amadum	I might come tomorrow. [Contingent]

Even the definite form may be given an element of contingency by adding the phrase enshAllA (If God wills). So,

enshAllA, fardA myAyum	God willing, I'll come tomorrow.
------------------------	----------------------------------

23-0

The past progressive or simple past tense interchanged with the subjunctive

ba khyAlem ke I qesm destgIr ----- e darwAza qawItar	I think this kind of door handle would be stronger.
khAt { bUd bAsha }	
etu(r) na-khAt { bUd bAsha }	It might not be this way (= I doubt it).
gunA e U na-khAt { bUd bAsha }	It may not be his/her fault.
aga sust { shud shawa } mAkamesh ----- kO	If it gets loose, tighten it up.
ar wakht ke { Amad byAya }	Whenever he/she comes I'll let you know (or, inform you).
AwAl mEtumet ----- wakht e ke { rasId berasa } faoran	When he/she/it arrives I'll phone you immediately.
baretAn telefUn mEkunum	

ushtukA az I sag na-khAt

{ tarsIdan betarsan }

The children wouldn't be afraid of this dog.

- In the above examples the forms in braces may be used interchangeably as they are equally common.
- Occasionally the past progressive tense may also be interchangeable with the simple past tense and the subjunctive, particularly when the correlative verb is also past progressive. So,

pEsh az I ke da kOrs dAkhel

{ mEshudEn shudEn shawEn }
engliSI

mEAmIdEn?

Did you know English before signing up for (lit., entering) this course?

- If pEsh az occurs in a future-time context, then the subjunctive only is used and not the past tenses. For example,

pEsh az I ke rafIqcm byAya

bAyad kARA khalAS IzunEn

You should finish the work before my friend comes.

- The idiom etu(r) na-khAt bUd (or, bAsha) is a very polite way of telling someone that you don't believe him. In this course harsher ways of indicating falsehood have not been given. The phrase here means that one might have made a mistake in what he said, but that in any case the hearer does not accept his "version" as the truth.

23-D

The conjunctions (a)garchI (although, even though), tA (wakht e) ke . . . na (until), tA (wakht e) ke (as long as, while) and bE az U (anyhow, anyway)

(a)garchI marIZIsh besyAr

shadId mAlUm na mEshud

lAken bEchARA faot shud

(a)garchI I bukhArI barqI

khurd as lAken utAqa

khUb garm mEkuna

Although his sickness didn't seem very severe (or, serious) the poor fellow died.

Even though this electric heater is small, still it heats the room very well.

tA (wakht e) ke emte(H)Anesh
na { kadEm kunun } dega
na mEkharum
tA (wakht e) ke emte(H)Ana
khalAs na { kadEm kunun }
na mErum
tA (wakht e) ke natIjEsh mAlUm
{ nashuda nasha } kAr paidA
kada na mEtAna

I won't buy any more until I have tried it out.

I'm not going until I have finished the examination.

Until the result [of his/her examination] becomes known, he/she won't be able to find work.

- Until is expressed in Dari by the phrase tA (wakht e) ke (lit., up to the time that) + the negative na, put just before the verb in either the perfect tenses (present or past) or the subjunctive. The "wakht e" in () is frequently omitted, leaving just tA ke.
- emte(H)An kadan means to "test" or "try out" in order to satisfy oneself with regard to something.
- The object marker is not added to emte(H)Anesh since it is part of a compound verb (emte[H]An kadan)--as noted in § 8-E-8 and § 12-E-3. However, it is definitely required with the noun in the next sentence (emte[H]Ana) since it is the object of the verb khalAs kadan.

tA (wakht e) ke da kAbul bUd
besyAr ba dIdanemA myAmad
tA (wakht e) ke marIz as na
mAnEnesh ke besyAr
arakat kuna
Ar kas tA (wakht e) ke qarzdAr
as prEshAn mEbAsha

While he/she was in Kabul he/she came to see us a great deal.

As long as he/she is sick don't let him/her move (around) too much.

As long as a person is in debt he'll be worried (or, concerned).

- tA (wakht e) ke without the accompanying negative na means simply "up to the time that," or, "as long as, while." Here, too, the wakht e is optional.

khU ub shud ke guft En lAken
bE az UAm myAmadum
bE az U ma mElkhAstum ke
shumAra bi in um

It's good that you said something (about it), but I was coming anyway.

I was wanting to see you anyhow.

23-E

ke (that) used in the sense of "when, so that, since, because"

yag in rOz ke wakht
{ dAsht En dAshta bAsh En } by AE n ke
tAwil-khAnara tart ib kun En
rOz e Id ke khAn Esh An
raft En khAna budan?
zUt shaw En ke mOtar Amada
Ush kun En ke khar Ab nasha
rAdyOra beland tar kun En ke
sadAesh shun Ida na mEsha
pesh ao r mE ra ke f am il
e khuda by Ar a

Some day when you have time let's straighten out (or, organize) the storeroom.

When you went to their house on Eid were they home?

Hurry up because the car has come.

Be careful so that it doesn't get spoiled.

Turn the radio on louder since it can't be heard.

He's going to Peshawar so that he can bring his family.

1. The conjunction ke (that) may be used in a number of other senses; for example, to show time, cause, result, purpose.
2. Cf. § 12-C-2 for its use to express simultaneous action.

23-F

Vocabulary for Lesson Twenty-three

abr	cloudiness, overcast
arakat kadan	to move, make a movement
barq I	[adj.] electrical, electric
bas kadan	to stop or discontinue (something), to be enough, sufficient

bE az U	anyway, anyhow
bUi	smell, odor
dEr <u>kadan</u>	to delay, be long (at something)
destgIr	[noun] handle
ente(H)An <u>kadan</u>	to test (something), try out
esAb <u>kadan</u>	to count, take accounts, do accounts
<u>faoran</u>	immediately, at once, right away
faot <u>shudan</u>	to die
(a)garchI	although, even though
garm <u>kadan</u>	to heat, warm (something)
ghalat	[adj.] mistaken, wrong, incorrect
gunA	fault, sin
jOi	ditch
juwAn	young; young person
khar	donkey
khAt	may, might (a modal used with the simple past tense and the subjunctive)
kOrs	course (of study)
mAkam <u>kadan</u>	to tighten, fix firmly
makhsUs	special, "reserved"
mazmUn	subject, paper, dissertation, article
mukamal <u>shudan</u>	to become complete
pIr	old, elderly (of persons); venerable
prEshAn	worried, distressed, concerned
qabUl <u>kadan</u>	to accept, agree to
qarz dA <u>adan</u>	to lend (money), give a loan to
qarzdAr	debtor

qawI	strong
sar az I/UAm	in spite of this/that, notwithstanding, still
sust	loose
taip kadan	to type
tA (wakht e) ke	while, as long as
tA (wakht e) ke....na	until (with the perfect tenses or the subjunctive)
tarsIdan	to fear, be afraid, be scared [pres., <u>metarsa</u> ; neg. impv., <u>natars</u> ; subjv., <u>betarsa</u>]
tartIb kadan	to arrange, straighten out, put in order
wazIfa	profession, occupation, kind of work (one does)
yAd dAdan	to teach (practically [in contrast to dars dAdan]); to remind
yakh	ice
zaIf	weak (in strength); dim (e.g., of lights)

Exercises for Lesson Twenty-three

(to be written as well as practiced orally with the teacher)

Exercise 201 - Complete the following sentences with the correct subjunctive form of the verb given in (). E.g., emrOz bArAn khAt
..... (bArIdan). emrOz bArAn khAt bubAra

1. durust khabar na dArum laken emshao dAktor khAt (Amadan)
2. bE-gham bAshEn -- mA dEr na-khAt (kadan)
3. dukhtaremAm amrAe khAnumem khAt (raftan)
4. utAqa khudesh tartIb khAt (kadan)
5. U khabar khAt ? (dAshtan)
6. tA rOz e chArshambE natIjEsh mAUM na-khAt (shudan)
7. byAdaresh chI khAt ? (guftan)
8. muallem sAeb amrAe khud kIra khAt ? (Awurdan)

9. emte(H)AnemAra chI wakht khAt ? (greftan)
10. qImatesh chand khAt ? (bUdan)

Exercise 202 - Substitute (if appropriate) the past tense forms for the subjunctives underscored in these sentences. E.g., kai khAt burEn? kai khAt raftEn?

1. ar wakht ke safir sAeb byAya baretAn telefUn mEkunum
2. aga I kerAra gabUl kuna bAz katitAn gap mEzanum
3. pEsh az I ke emte(H)Ana khalAs kuna wakht pUra shud
4. paisara ke betI bAyad rasId bIgrI
5. emrOz khAna na-khAt bAshan
6. ar wakht ke paisa paidA kunum mEkharumesh
7. ghalat khAt bAsha
8. pEsh az I ke dAktor berasa faot shud
9. ar wakht ke fAmiletAn Amada betAna bAyad mara khabar kunEn
10. tA aftE Aenda mukamal khAt shawa

Exercise 203 - Use (a)garchI or tA (wakht e) ke as needed to complete these.

1. Adam khudesh qarzdAr as amrAe kase dega kOmak kada na mEtAna
2. garmI s bAyad amEsha yakh dAshta bAshEm
3. khAnumem mara sOb gufta bUd lAken tA shao az yAdem rafta bUd
4. khudsha na dIdum lAken da telefUn amrAesh gap zadum
5. besyAr gap na zanEn darIra khUb yAd na mIgrIEn
6. natIjE emte(H)An anOz mAlUm na shuda lAken yaqIn dArum ke khUb numra greftEm
7. da tAbestAn rOzAna kAbul besyAr garm mEbAsha lAken shawakI sard as
8. da kAbul astEn bAyad yagAn rOz khAnEmA byAEn

9. I kOrs mushkel mAUm mEsha lAken aga kOshesh kunEn fArsIra
zUt yAd mIgirEn
10. Adam bAyad zenda s dars bekhAna

Exercise 204 - Use bE az U or tA (wakht e) ke as needed to complete these.

1. shuma na bAshEn faisala kada na mEtAnEm
2. baretAn AwAl { nadAdEm } bAyad kAra shurO na kunEn
natum
3. da bAzAr kAr dAshtum
4. mEkhAstAn ke shumAra bIbInan
5. rang e darwAza khushk nasha bAyad az I rA nazEn
6. maidAn e awAI mErUm
7. awA khUb na bAsha tayAra taraf e bAmyAn na mEra
8. khUb feker na kunum faoran chIze gufta na mEtAnum
9. mAchAI mEkhOrdEm
10. darIra khUb yAd na greftEm pashtOra shurO na mEkunum
11. mEkhAstEm ke sabA wakht arakat kunEm

Exercise 205 - Give each of the following sentences with the form of the adjective which is opposite in meaning to the adjective already included. E.g., I gOsht az U gOsht kada narmtar as. I gOsht az U gOsht kada sakhtar as

1. I kharbUza khAm nEs
2. kAlA khushk as
3. barqA emshao zalftar as
4. az U kada I kharAbtar bUd
5. degAesh qImatar khAt bUd
6. juwAb e sawAl e panjumatAn durust as
7. I qesm mAshIn subuktar as
8. az I kada kAg haz e dabaltar dArEn?
9. U asrItarIn khAnA e kAbul as
10. karIm az ma kada juwAntar as

LESSON TWENTY-FOUR (dars e bist o chArum)

24-A

Pronunciation drill (to be done only with the teacher)

1. Practicing /f/

farz kunEn ke fardA awA (Suppose the weather is not good tomorrow)
sAf na bAsha

az khAter e kamI barf emsAl (The crops were not good this year be-
cause of a snow shortage)
faslA khUb na shud

zarfa bAyad faoran sAfI shawa (The dishes should be wiped immediately)

I qulf az U qulf kada farq dAra (This lock is different from that one)

safIr sAeb taraf e sefArat e (The ambassador went towards the
farAnsa raft French Embassy)

2. Illustrating /fz/

tA (H)efz nasha, lafz yAd grefta na mEsha (You can't learn word[s] un-
til you memorize them)

3. Illustrating /rf/

da lafz e zarf o da lafz e (The letter 'f' is found in the words
barf (H)arf e fE maojUd as 'zarf' [utensil] and 'barf' [snow])

24-B

Conditional sentences in which there is a possibility of fulfillment--hence, future

aga { burI raftI } mAam mErum	If you go, I'll go too.
aga mazAr { burum raftum } amrAem mIrI?	If I go to Mazar, will you go with me?
aga zenda { bAshum budum } pas myAyum	If I'm still alive, I'll come back.

aga {bIbIn dId} Ish az tarafem	If you see him/her, give him/her my greetings (lit., a 'salAm' from me).
salAm bugOesh	
aga da daftar e khud {bAsha bUd}	If he/she is at his/her office, tell him/her to see (lit., talk with) me.
bugOEn ke amrAem gap bezana	
aga tA panj baja majles	If the meeting isn't held by five o'clock I won't be able to attend.
{nasha nashud} bAd az U ma Azer	
shuda na mEtAnum	If he doesn't have kerosine, gasoline/petrol will be all right.
aga tEl e khAk na {dAshta bAsha dAsht}	
tEl e petrOlAm durust as	If the tank goes empty turn on the pump.
aga tAnk khAlI {shawa shud}	
bambara chAlAn kO	

1. Conditions in which there is a possibility of fulfillment at a time yet future are usually expressed in Dari with aga (if) plus the verb in the subjunctive mood or the simple past tense.
2. The phrase about being "still alive" is a common expression amongst Muslims who are inclined to predicate future actions on "the will of God" which is out of their control. It is another way of saying, "If God wills" (enshAllA).
3. The example with "tank" may be translated "when" (cf. § 23-E on "ke") since it is assumed that the tank may indeed go dry. In this instance the aga is equivalent to wakht e ke (when) or ar wakht ke (whenever).
4. Although the **subjunctive** and the simple past tense are usually interchangeable, there may be contexts where one is preferred but not the other. (Cf. § 23-C-3.) For example,

aga aft bajE sOb az kAbul	If we leave (lit., move [or, start] from) Kabul at 7:00 a.m. what time will we reach Kandahar?
arakat kunEm chand baja	
qandAr mErasEm?	

aga na dIdEm dega bAmAn e khudA	If we don't see each other (again), (then) goodbye.
aga burI bEtar mEsha	It'll be better if you go.

5. Occasionally the present tense of the verb may also occur with aga, especially in instances where it seems as though the fulfillment of the condition is more likely. However, this construction appears to be not as commonly used as the subjunctive and simple past tense forms already cited. For example,

aga { burI raftI mirI } mAm mErum	If you're going, I'm going too.
aga laeq { bAsha bUd as } kAmyAb mEsha	If he/she is capable he/she will be successful.
aga bEkAr { bAsha bUd as } yak	If he/she is "free" we'll see him/her for a while.

sAt mIbInEmesh	
aga da daftar e khud { bAsha bUd as }	If he/she is at his/her office, tell him/her to see (lit., talk with) me.

bugOEn ke amrAem gap bezana	

6. In a few instances the present tense or the subjunctive may occur with aga while the simple past tense would be inappropriate. For example,

aga shaoq { dArEn dAshta bAshEn }	If you are keen to (do it), I'll teach you how.

yAd mEtumetAn	

24-C

Unfulfilled conditions in present and past time (= contrary-to-fact)

aga mEraftI, mAm mEraftum	If you { were going had gone } I would
	{ go have gone } too.
aga Ush mEkadI az pEshet	If you had been careful, you would not have broken it (lit., it would not have got broken by you).
na meshkest	

aga emshao awA sAf mEbUd ----- sail e mAtao mEraftEm	If the sky (lit., weather) had been clear tonight we would have gone out to look at the moon (i.e., to stroll in the moonlight).
aga dIrOz ega khAkbaD na mEbUd ----- khAna ega khAkpur na mEshud	If there hadn't been such a dusty wind yesterday the house wouldn't have gotten so dirty.
aga mEkharIdEm fAida mEkadEm	If you had bought it you would have benefitted (from it).
aga sar e kAsara amrAe chIze ----- put mEkadI kharAb na mEshud	If you had covered the bowl with something it wouldn't have gone bad (lit., gotten spoiled).
aga qadImI na mEbUd ega ----- qimat na mEshud	If it { weren't hadn't been } antique it wouldn't { cost have cost } so much.
aga gossa delchasp na mEbUd ----- ushtuka ega ha shaoq ----- gOsh na mEkadan	If the story { were not had not been } inter- esting, the children would not { listen have listened } so keenly.

1. Conditions in present and past time which are/were unfulfilled are expressed in Dari by the use of the past progressive tense in both parts of the condition. The exact tense involved must be inferred from the context (e.g., time words, etc.). The context of some of the sentences given above does not warrant their being construed as present.
2. Such conditions are commonly called contrary-to-fact since neither condition is fulfilled. This may be seen by paraphrasing any of the above in the following manner:

If you { were going
had gone } --which you { aren't
didn't } --I would { go
have gone }

too--which I { am not
didn't } .

If you had been careful--which you weren't--you wouldn't have broken it--which you did.

Note that in this last paraphrase the condition is improbable in present time.

3. The past progressive tense of shekestan (to get broken) is slightly irregular in pronunciation. According to the pattern of formation it ought to be mEshkeest, but as the example indicates it is shortened to meshkest.

24-D

The past progressive tense with the modals kAshke (would that), bAyad (ought, should) and shAyad (might, could)

kAshke wAda na mEdAdum	I <u>wish</u> I had not promised.
kAshke da tAbestAnAm ega ----- bArAn mEbArId	I <u>wish</u> it had rained this much in the summer too.
kAshke az yAdem na mEraft	I <u>wish</u> I hadn't forgotten.
kAshke rAjEba I qAnUn ----- pEshtar mAUMAt mEdAshtum	I <u>wish</u> I had known about this rule (or, law) before.
kAshke ansAyEmA emshao ----- khAna mEbUd	I <u>wish</u> our neighbor { were had been } home tonight.
I maktUb shakhsI s---kAshke ----- rasMI mEbUd ke kAretAn ----- zUtar khalAs mEshud	This is a personal letter--I <u>wish</u> it { were had been } official so your work could { be have been } finished sooner.
kAshke I jOI chuqur da pEsh ----- e rUi khAnEmA na mEbUd	I <u>wish</u> that this deep ditch { weren't hadn't been } in front of our house.
kAshke tImemA mEbOrd.	I <u>wish</u> (or, would that) our team had won!

- Just as when used with the subjunctive (cf. § 15-E), kAshke expresses a desire or hope--in this case, unfulfilled--and may be rendered in such ways as "Would that," "I wish that" or "It would be nice if . . ."
- bOrdan (to carry, bear, take away) is also used in the sense of "to win" or "to earn or get a score (or, grade)", whether in a game or an examination. Cf. the English idiom, "to carry off (e.g., honors)," meaning to perform successfully.

bAyad aftE guzashta kunduz mEraftan

They ought to have gone to
Kunduz last week.

bAyad pari-rOz I esse darsa ----- khalAs mEkadEm	We <u>should</u> have finished this part of the lesson the day before yesterday.
besyAr qImat as--amrAesh ----- bAyad jagra mEkadI	It's too expensive--you <u>should</u> have bargained with him/her.
kAlA e rangara bAyad da ----- aftao awAr na mEkadI	You <u>shouldn't</u> have hung the colored clothes in the sun(shine).
bAyad az pEshesh rasId ----- mEgreftEn	You <u>should</u> have gotten a receipt from him/her.
bAyad ega wakhta sAs ----- na mEkadEm	We <u>shouldn't</u> have wasted so much time.
bAyad da emte(H)An khUb ----- numra mEbOrd	He/she <u>should</u> have gotten a good grade in the test.
bAyad sarpOsh e dEga ----- da saresh mEmAndI	You <u>should</u> have put the cover (or, lid) on the kettle.
bAyad chAya ega talkh ----- dam na mEkadEn	You <u>shouldn't</u> have made the tea so strong (lit., bitter).

3. The modal bAyad reveals a duty or obligation, something which ought to be or should have been done, but in the instances given with the past progressive tense was not done.

shAyad mEguft
shAyad az pEshem ----- khafa mEshud
shAyad tA Ale mErasId

He/she might have said (it) . . .

He/she might have gotten upset (or, peeved) at me.

He/she/it might have arrived by now.

4. The modal shAyad, also introduced in § 15-E, indicates (when used with the past progressive tense) that which could, or might possibly have occurred but did not. It assumes an unexpressed "if" clause (§ 24-C).
5. As with contrary-to-fact conditions (illustrated in § 24-C) the use of the past progressive tense with the modals kAshke, bAyad and shAyad in-

icates a situation which was (or, occasionally "is") not fulfilled.
So, for example, the implication in the above sentences is:

I wish I had not promised -- but I did.
You should have bargained with him/her -- but you didn't.
He might have said it -- but he didn't.

24-E

Repetition of words for emphasis, distribution or variety

da khazAn qesm qesm mEwa ----- paidA mEsha, masalan ----- sEb, kharbUza 0 angUr	In the fall (or, autumn) various (or, different) kinds of fruit are obtainable, for example, apples, melons and grapes.
yag yag nafar gap bezanEn	Talk just one at a time.
du du dAna bareshAn ----- taqsim kunEn	Distribute (or, divide) them to them two apiece.
lutfan, kharAb kharAbesha ----- natEn	Please don't give (me) the bad ones.
ki ki arrAetAn raft?	Who all went with you?
da afghanestAn kudAm kudAm ----- jAyA e tArIkhIra dIdEn?	What different historical places have you seen in Afghanistan?
da safaretAn da kuJA kuJA ----- tawaquf khAt dAshtEn?	What different places would you be stopping at on this trip?
kOshesh kunEn ke jumLAetAn ----- sAda sAda bAsha	Try to make your sentences simple.
zard zardesha alAida kO	Separate the yellow ones (from the others).
beland beland gap nazanEn ----- ke senf e dega dars dAra	Don't talk too loud because the other class is in session (lit., has a lesson).
AstA AstA qaichI kO ke ----- az pEshet kaj nasha	Cut it very slowly (lit., scissor it) so that you don't make it crooked (lit., so that it doesn't become crooked because of you).

bE az U katI I qaichI tEz
tEz burIda na mEsha
az khAter e ke zU(t) zUt
esAb kad az pEshesh
ghalat shud

Anyhow, it can't be cut very fast with these scissors.

He/she made a mistake (lit., It became wrong by him/her) because he/she counted too fast.

1. Repetition may occur with nouns, numbers, interrogative pronouns, adjectives and adverbs.
2. Repeated words may convey emphasis (very, too, quite), distribution (apiece, at a time) and variety (various, different).
3. In the example with nafar the subject of bezanEn is "You," not nafar, which accounts for the occurrence of the imperative. So, "Just one of you people at a time talk."

24-F

Vocabulary for Lesson Twenty-four

alAida kadan	to separate
amsAya	neighbor
angUr	grape(s)
awAr kadan	to hang, spread (esp., of clothes)
bamba	pump (for water, tires, etc.)
burIdan	to cut [pres., mEbura; impv., <u>bubur</u> ; subjv., <u>bubura</u>]
chALAn kadan	to turn on, start (something [with a motor])
chuqur	deep
dam kadan	to make (tea), cause (food) to simmer
delchasp	interesting
essa	part, portion
fAida kadan	to benefit, profit, gain
gOsh kadan	to listen, pay attention (lit., give ear to)
jagra kadan	to bargain, argue (about price)

<u>ka</u> j	crooked
<u>ka</u> sa	bowl
<u>khaf</u> a	upset, peeved, irritated
<u>khak</u> pur	dirty, dusty
<u>la</u> eq	able, capable, worthy
<u>ma</u> salan	for example,
<u>ma</u> tao	moon
put <u>ka</u> dan	to cover, fill in
<u>qaich</u> I	scissors
<u>qaich</u> I kadan	to cut (with scissors)
<u>qa</u> nUn	rule, law
<u>qes</u> sa	story
<u>ras</u> Id	receipt
<u>ras</u> mI	official
<u>sA</u> da	simple, artless, uncomplicated, straightforward
<u>sA</u> f	clear, unclouded
<u>sai</u> l	viewing, observation, watching, looking at
<u>sarp</u> Osh	cover, lid
<u>shakhs</u> I	personal, private
<u>shao</u> q	desire, keenness, enthusiasm
<u>talkh</u>	bitter
<u>taqs</u> Im kadan	to distribute, divide
<u>ta</u> rIkhi	historical
<u>tE</u> l e <u>khA</u> k	kerosine
<u>tE</u> l e <u>petr</u> Ol	gasoline, petrol, benzine
<u>t</u> Im	team

wAda dAdan (/kadan)	to promise
zAE kadan	to waste, squander (esp., time)
zard	yellow

Exercises for Lesson Twenty-four

(to be written as well as practiced orally with the teacher)

Exercise 206 - Keep the meaning the same but change the subjunctives indicated in the following sentences to the past tense in each case. E.g.,
aga az I kada qImatar bAsha nakharEn. aga az I kada qImatar
bUD nakharEn

1. aga I dawA fAida na kuna dAKtar baretAn dega dawA mEta
2. aga ketAb delchasp bAsha yak chand rOz baremAm betEnesh
3. aga arzAn bAsha yag du sE dAna bekhArEn
4. aga jagra na kunI paisEt besyAr kharch mEsha
5. aga dEr kunEn bAyad taksI biGirEn
6. aga khUb gOsh na kunEn fAmIda na mEtAnEn
7. aga rasId beta bEtar mEsha
8. aga az fArsI gap zadan besharmEn zUt yAd na miGirEn
9. aga timenA bubara shernI mEtumetAn
10. aga angUr kham bAsha Ech nakharEn

Exercise 207 - Keep the meaning the same but change the past tenses indicated in the following sentences to the subjunctive in each case. E.g.,
aga raftan bare shumA AwAl khAt dAdan? aga buran bare shumA
AwAl khAt dAdan?

1. aga wAda dAd yaqIn dArum ke khuda mErasAna
2. aga da I kOrs Ale jAi na bUD kOrs e dega du mA bAd shurO mEsha
3. aga kaj shud bEKara mEsha
4. aga qabUl kad barem telefUn kunEn
5. aga yakh dAshtan bugO amrAetAn byArEn

6. aga AinakAem shekest barem mushkel mEsha chera ke I qesm Ainak
da Inja paidA na mEsha
7. aga emrOz khAkbaD shud kelkInAra basta kunEn
8. aga bamba jOr nashud majbUr astEm ke yag dAna nao bekhareM
9. aga tEl e khAk arzAntar nashud dega kharIda na mEtAnum
10. aga chAijOsh e barqI kharIdI bAyad az I maghAza bekhari

Exercise 208 - Complete these sentences with the correct form of the verbs shown in (). E.g., aga sarem dard na mEkad shAyad amrAetAn
... (raftan) aga sarem dard na mEkad shAyad amrAetAn mEraftum

1. aga dIrOz awA sAf chArekAr mEraftEm (bUdan)
2. aga jagra shAyad baretAn arzAntar mEdAd (kadan)
3. aga wakht englisI dars mEdAdumesh (dAshtan)
4. aga shaoq mEdAsht pashtOrAm yad grefta (tAnestan)
5. aga mArA eJaza mEdAd Ewaz e saba emrOz emte(H)An (dAdan)
6. aga wakht mEdAsht kek pukhta kadana barem yAd (dAdan)
7. aga sarak pukhta az U rA mEraftEm (bUdan)
8. aga Ush kada mEraft aogAr na (shudan)
9. aga dIrOz wakht mEdAshtum kAretAna khalAs (kadan)
10. aga namUnEsha mIdIdEn shAyad khush (kadan)
11. aga khar mara az khao na mEkhAstum ke emrOz tA nA-wakht
khao kunum (khEstAndan)
12. aga emrOz bank wAz mEbUd kAr e khuda khalAs kada (tAnestan)
13. aga dIrOzAm myAmadEn baremA taklif na (bUdan)
14. aga gerang na amrAem da tayAra mEbOrdumesh (bUdan)
15. aga wAda na na mEraftum (dAdan)
16. aga wakhtar mEguftEn tA Ale kAretAn khalAs (shudan)
17. aga khateshAn eqa prEshAn na mEshudan (Amadan)

18. ... aga wakht shuro na mEkadEn anOz ketAbA khalAs kada na (tAnestan)
19. ... aga khabar mEdAsht shAYad shumArAm khabar (kadan)
20. ... aga da mA e sunbula Inja jashena dIda mEtAnestEn (bUdan)

Exercise 209 - Complete the following sentences with both bAYad and kAshke; in other words, there are two possibilities for each of the fifteen sentences.

1. khabar mEdAshtan
2. emrOz rukhsatI mEbUd
3. dars e bIst O chArum eqa mushkel na mEbUd
4. taip kadana yAd mEdAsht
5. shumAm da majles mEbudEn
6. da taksI myAmadEn
7. tayAra emrOz taraf e tErAn mEraft
8. dIrOz kAlAra mEshushtum
9. qabUl mEkad
10. rOz e jummara da sAlang tEr mEkadEm
11. tA Akher e jUn da amrIkA mEbudum
12. az I kada arzAntar myAftEn
13. darwAzara mAkam mEkadEn
14. sAmAnAra dIrOz myAwurDI
15. khuda eqa zAMat na mEdAdEn

Exercise 210 - Complete the following sentences with kAshke, bAYad and shAYad; in other words, there are three possibilities for each of the five sentences.

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. paidA mEshud | 4. da kOrs e duwum jAi mEbUd |
| 2. mIdIdetAn | 5. kAretAna tabdIl mEkad |
| 3. natIjEsh mAUm mEshud | |

Exercise 211 - Complete these sentences with the necessary words repeated.

1. da afghAnestAn qesm angUr yAft mEsha
2. aga aftE yag dars bekhAnEm I ketAbA da shash mA khalAs
kada mEtAnEm
3. bugOEn sE nafar byAEh
4. khurdesha kAr na dArum
5. AstA da zamIn bAnEhesh
6. emrOz chera zU(t) kAr na mEkunEn?
7. anOz faisala na kadEm ke kujAra bIbInum
8. panj dAna alAida kunEn
9. Ush kO ke tAzEsha byArI
10. kalAn AdamA Inja myAyan
11. surkhesh shIrIn mEbAsha
12. kudAm az shumA s?
13. aga jumLAetAn kOtAm bAsha farq na mEkuna
14. sad rupeya dAdumeshAn
15. Ale kam bEtar shudEm
16. tEz esAb nakunEn

LESSON TWENTY-FIVE (dars e bist o panjum)

25-A

Pronunciation drill (to be done only with the teacher)

1. Practicing /m/

a(H)mad Adam e marIza (Ahmad gave the sick person half a tablet)
nIm dAna gULI dAd

mAdarem amEsha da sar e mEz (My mother always puts salt and pepper
murch O namak mEmAna on the table)

umUman I qesm qAlIn (This type of rug is usually cheaper)
kam qImat mEbAsha

rOza e jumAm shafA-khAna (The hospital is open for men and women
bare mardA O zanA wAz as on Fridays, too)

2. Illustrating /mr/

umresh cheqa s? (How old is he/she/it?)

amresha bajAi kadum (I carried out his/her order[s])

3. Illustrating /rn/

kerm da jAi garm O (Worms live in a soft, warm place)
narm zendagi mEkuna

cherA da wakht e gap (Why are you embarrassed when you talk?)
zadan mEsharmEn?

mAlUm mEsha ke U sharm na dARA (He/she doesn't seem to have any
shame [at all])

aga az eshArE surkh tEr (If you cross [the street] against the red
mEshEn, jurm mEshEn light you'll be fined)

25-B

Expressing probability, possibility and presumption in past time

aga sAkhta bAsha myArumesh

If he/she has made (it) I'll bring it.

bachEtAn bAyad Ale besyAr	Your son must be quite grown up by now.
----- kaLAn shuda bAsha	
shAyad sar e jenAza rafta bAshan	They might have gone to the funeral.
bAyad khOrda shuda bAsha	It must have been eaten (by now).
khudA kuna ke pArsalem	I hope (lit., May God grant) that my parcel has arrived.
----- rasIda bAsha	
shAyad nObatesh na buda bAsha	It might not have been his/her turn.
dAsh Ale bAyad garm shuda bAsha	The oven should be warm now.
bAyad atman khunuk khOrda bAshEn	You certainly must have gotten very cold.
mAlUm mEsha ke atman besyAr	It looks as if you definitely must have practiced quite a lot.
----- prektes kada bAshI	

1. The modals aga (if), shAyad (perhaps, may, might) and bAyad (should, ought to, must) or the phrase khudA kuna ke (I hope that [lit., God grant that]) are used with the unchangeable past participle plus the subjunctive forms of bUdan to introduce actions or situations which were probable, possible or are presumed to have occurred in the past.
2. The negative (if any) is prefixed to the unchangeable participle while the subjunctive of bUdan is always conjugated to agree with the subject.
3. atman is an adverb meaning "certainly, definitely, by all means" and, although common with bAyad to reinforce it, is readily used with any tense or mood where required. For example,

rOz e jumma atman mErum

I'm definitely going on Friday.

4. When one "feels cold" he can express it idiomatically with khunuk (coldness) + khOrdan (to consume); thus, literally, "to eat cold." Or, alternately one can say, mara yakh grefta (Cold has grabbed me = I feel cold [right now]).

25-C

-I as an adjectival/nominal suffix

Meaning "of, belonging to"

amrIkA (America)--amrIkAI (American)

ma amrIkAI stum

I'm an American.

kAbul (Kabul)--kAbulI (belonging to Kabul)

unA darI kAbulI mEkhAnan

They are studying 'Kabuli' Dari.

pAkestAn (Pakistan)--pAkestAnI (belonging to Pakistan)

tayArE pAkestAnI emrOz

P. I. A. (lit., the Pakistan airplane)
doesn't come today.

na myAya

Meaning "made of"

chOb (wood)--chUbI (wooden)

katArE chUbIra khush na dArum

I don't care for a wooden fence
(or, railing).

kAghaz (paper)--kAghazI (of paper)

I khalTE kAghazI besyAr nAzuk

This paper bag is too thin; don't
you have a thicker one than it?

as -- az I kada dabaltar

na dArEn?

khesht (brick)--kheshtI (of brick)

masjed e pul e kheshtI kalAn-

The Mosque of Pul e Kheshti (lit.,
of the brick bridge) is the
largest mosque in Kabul.

tarIn masjed e kAbul as

sang (stone)--sangI (of stone)

mEz e sangItAn besyAr maghbUl as

Your stone table is very pretty.

1. Sometimes, as in the examples above, the suffix -I is added to nouns in order to form their corresponding adjectives.
2. With regard to the example with "P.I.A.," if Pakistan had only one airplane then this could be expressed as tayArE pAkestAn. But since a fleet of planes is in mind, the adjectival form is used for one of them. Cf. also § 5-F, sefArat e amrIkA, rather than sefArat e amrIkAI, since only one sefArat (Embassy) is in view.
3. The vowel in chOb usually changes to /U/ in chUbI.
4. See Appendix II for names of countries and their adjectival forms.

Indicating occupation or profession

khayAt (tailor)--khayAtI (tailoring)

dukhtarem khUb khayAtI yAd dAra

My daughter knows tailoring very well.

najAr (carpenter)--najArI (carpentry)

qayUm mEkhAya ke najAr shawa

cherA ke najArI yag

wazIfE besyAr khUb as

Qayum wants to become a carpenter since carpentry is a very fine profession.

5. Sometimes the suffix -I is added to nouns to form other nouns showing occupation or profession.

Indicating condition, quality or state

marIz (sick)--marIzI (sickness)

ba khyAlem marIzIsh shadId as

I think his/her sickness is (very) severe.

maghbUl (beautiful)--maghbULI (beauty)

eqa kOna shuda ke maghbULI

khuda az dest dAda

It's so old that it has lost its beauty.

khUb (good, well)--khUbI (virtue)

amEsha az khUbItAn yAd mEkuna

He/she always mentions (or, remembers) your fine qualities.

darAz (long)--darAzI (length)

darAzIsh cheqa s?

What's its length?

garm (hot)--garmI (heat)

par-sal da kAbul besyAr

garmI bUd

Last year it was very hot (lit., there was much heat) in Kabul.

tayAr (ready)--tayArI (preparation, readiness)

bare majles tayArI dAshtEn?

Were you prepared for the meeting?

6. Sometimes the suffix -I is added to adjectives in order to form their corresponding nouns.

7. Since one cannot be sure whether the -I suffix represents the adjectival or the nominal form--cf. chUbl (wooden) but garmI (heat)--the foreigner cannot easily predict which word occurs in this form. He can, however, take advantage of this relationship between the words if he already knows one of the two words. For example, he might know mErabAnI to be "kindness" and could thus assume when he hears mErabAn for the first time that it ought to mean "kind" (the adjective), which it does. Or, if he knows that beland means "tall, high" he might, on hearing belandI for the first time assume that it means "height, tallness," which it does.
8. When one "feels warm" the sensation of temperature may be expressed in Dari either
 (a) impersonally, as: besyAr garmI s (It's very hot), or
 (b) with garmI (heat) + kadan (to do) + the attached personal pronoun as object. So, garmI kadEm (I feel hot), literally, "The heat (garmI) has done (kada) me (-em, kada + -em = kadEm) [in]."
 While the second form is very colloquial amongst Afghans who, as native speakers of the language, would not misuse it, the first form (a) is safer for foreigners to use.

25-D

The emphatic words amI/amU with adverbial meanings such as "very," "right" and "just"

fardA amI wakht khAna mEbAshan?	Will they be home tomorrow at <u>this very</u> time?
am-emrOz kAresh dArum	I need it <u>this very</u> day.
aga amI-Ale-Am myAEn durust as	Even if you come <u>right now</u> it's all right.
da amU shao karIm-jAnAm	<u>That same</u> night Karim was also at the party.
da dAwat bUd	
amU qesm na yAftum lAken yakI	I didn't find <u>that same</u> kind, but I bought another one similar to it.
dega meslesh kharIdum	
dest nazanesh--amutur	Don't touch it--leave it <u>just</u> where it is.
(jAi ba jAi) bAnesh	
na-khair, aga amI qesm	No, thanks--I'll <u>only</u> buy it if you have this kind.
dAshta bAshEn mEkharum	
ametur ke mEgum jOresh kO	Fix it <u>just</u> as I say.

amatur ke baretAn dIroZ neshAn	Cook it again <u>just</u> the way I
-----	showed you yesterday.
dAdum bAz pukhta kunEn	

aga amEsha ametur kAr kunI	If you always work <u>this</u> way I'll
-----	be happy with you.
azet khush mEshum	

1. amI and amU are used in combination with other words to emphasize them, much as "very," "just," "right" and "same" do in English.
2. Notice certain vowel changes in the examples above, depending on the phonological context. So, amI-emrOz = am-emrOz; amI-tOr = ametur; and amU-tOr = amatur.

25-E

khu with the imperative singular for politeness

aga arzAn bAsha baremAm	If it's cheap please get one for
-----	me, too.
yag dAna khu bIgI	

ghAl-ma-ghAl khu nakO	Please don't make a lot of noise.

bukhArIra khu dar bete	Please light (or, put a fire in)
-----	the heater.
yag daqa kAreta khu bAn	Please leave your work a minute
-----	because I need (your) help.
ke kOmak kAr dArum	

yag dafE degAm khu kOshesh kO	Please try once more.

1. khu may be used with the imperative singular to soften it slightly and make it seem a bit more polite (cf. § 8-E-5). In reality this use of khu is a variety of its use to form attached questions (cf. § 14-B) as can be seen by rendering the examples above with attached questions (or tag endings). So, "You'll get one for me, won't you?" "You won't make a lot of noise, will you?" "You'll light the heater, won't you?" "You'll leave your work a minute, won't you?" and "You'll try once more, won't you?"
2. The khu normally comes just before the verb but in the case of compound verbs may come either between the first and the verbal member of the compound or before the entire compound.
3. If the negative also occurs it is prefixed to the verb and not to khu.
4. khO (a contraction of khUb [well])--as distinct from khu--is also commonly used (especially in telephone conversations) with the meaning "OK," "all right," "fine," signifying agreement. Cf. the English "uh-huh."

25-F

sU used to indicate direction

kudAm sU burum?
usU burEn
khAnEshAn usU nEs
sarwEs IsU na myAya
Ira usU partO

Which way do (lit., should) I go?
(= How do I get there?)

Go that way (or, direction).

Their house isn't in that direction.

The bus doesn't come this way.

Throw this away (= Get rid of it--I don't need it).

1. Although sU is synonymous with taraf in the sense of "direction," it is used in combination with kudAm (which), I (this) or U (that) and never as a preposition. Combined with I- and U- (generally shortened to u-) it actually functions as a postposition.
2. usU in the last sentence does not refer to any particular direction, but is used idiomatically for "anywhere" as long as the item referred to is disposed of (= thrown "away").

25-G

khai (then) in a logical sense

khai, tArIkh e telegrAf ----- chand bUd?
khai, bare khud e kampanI ----- maktUb neweshta kunEn
khai, yag zara shIryakh ----- khu mEkhurEn?
khai kOshesh kunEn ke ----- aqalan jumLA e mu(H)em- ----- esha yAd kunEn

Then what was the date of the telegram?

Then write directly to the company
(lit., the company itself).

Then you'll have a little icecream,
won't you?

Well, at least try to memorize the
most important of these sentences
(lit., most important sentences of
them).

1. khai (then) is used in a logical, not temporal, sense.
2. It indicates that something has already been said on the subject and conveys the logical conclusion, "Well," "Then," "If that's the case" or "In that case."

25-H

Exclamations

I mAs cheqa tursh as!	How sour this yogurt is!
destkashAetAn cheqa maghbUl as!	How pretty your gloves are!
I chA cheqa chuqur as!	What a deep well this is!
I gula cheqa khushbU'i as!	How fragrant these flowers are!
Inja chI khUb yag jAi ArAm as!	What a quiet (i.e., peaceful) place this is!
chI khUb palao pukhta kadEn!	What delicious (lit., good) 'pilau' you have cooked!
I kharbUza chI khUb shIrIn as!	How sweet this melon is!
chI khUb rawAj dArEn!	What a nice custom you have!
chI khUb tO(H)FE khUb AwurdEn!	What a fine (or, nice) present you have brought!
emrOz chetOr khunuk as!	How cold it is today!

1. Question words are used for exclamations as well as for questions. The pronunciation and rhythm are important in exclamatory sentences in order to avoid having them taken as questions. It is very necessary that the student imitate his teacher at this point to avoid being misunderstood. (Cf. § 13-E-3.)
2. Sometimes--as in the example with tO(H)fa (present) above--chI khUb may mean only "what" and may be used with an additional khUb (fine, good) to express the exclamation.

25-I

Vocabulary for Lesson Twenty-five

amI/amU	this very, that very, just, right
ArAm	quiet, peaceful
atman	certainly, definitely, by all means
az dest dAdan	to be lost, faded, to cease
belandI	height
chA	well (of water)

<u>chUbi</u>	wooden
dar dAdan	to light a fire, kindle
darAzI	length
dAsh	oven, stove
destkash	glove
-I	(suffix to indicate "of, belonging to," "made of," profession, occupation, condition, quality or state)
jenAza	funeral
kAghazI	of paper, paper (adj.)
kampanI	company, business, firm (used of foreign companies); agency
katAra	fence, railing
khai	then [logical]; in that case; well
khalta	bag, sack
khayAtI	tailoring
kheshtI	of brick, brick (adj.)
khO	O.K., all right, fine
khUbi	virtue, excellence, fine quality
khushbUi	fragrant, sweet-smelling
maghbUII	beauty
mAs	yogurt
mErabAn	kind, considerate, generous, thoughtful
najAr	carpenter
najArI	carpentry
nObat	turn (as, "his turn")
palao	a dish (or food) prepared mainly of rice with meat and seasoning; 'pilau'

<u>partO/partEn</u>	to throw ([from partAftan] used mainly in the imperative; for other forms use andAkhtan)
<u>prektes kadan</u>	to practice
<u>sangI</u>	of stone, stone (adj.)
<u>shIryakh</u>	icecream
<u>sU</u>	direction (in combination with kudAm, I and U)
<u>tArIkh</u>	date, history
<u>tayArI</u>	preparation, readiness
<u>telegrAf</u>	telegram, cablegram
<u>to(H)fa</u>	present, gift
<u>tursh</u>	sour
<u>yAd kadan</u>	to memorize, mention, remember
<u>zara</u>	a particle, small amount; atom (<u>yag-zara</u> = a little bit [in quantity])

Exercises for Lesson Twenty-five

(to be written as well as practiced orally with the teacher)

Exercise 212 - Complete these sentences with the correct form of the verbs given in (). E.g., shAyad shumAra bAsha (na shenAkhtan). shAyad shumAra na shenAkhta bAsha

1. atman az emte(H)An bAsha ke emrOz nAmada (tarsIdan)
2. shAyad nOkar kAgazAra bAsha (sOkhtAndan)
3. bAyad besyAr mAnda bAshEn (shudan)
4. khudA kuna ke marIz bAshI (na shudan)
5. aga bAsha bugOEn ke zUt bushOya (na shushtan)
6. mumken as ke Ira aolAdA bAshan (shekestAndan)
7. Ale bAyad bAsha (raftan)
8. na mEfAmum ke kelyAra da kuJA bAsha (mAndan)

9. shAyad anOz bAisekel bAsha (na kharIdan)
10. mumken as ke shawaresh bAsha (greftan)
11. shAyad anOz bAisekel furOkhta bAsha (na shudan)
12. aga bAsha yaqIn dArum ke myAya (guftan)
13. shAyad karIm khAnAm ketAbchara bAsha (dIdan)
14. shAyad bAshI ke rafIq e mA O shumA saba khArej mEra
(shunIdan)
15. aga mOtaretAn bAsha byAEh amrEmA jellAbad burEn
(jOr na shudan)
16. aolI tar mAUm mEsha--dIshao bAyad bArAn bAsha (bArIdan)
17. aga kAlAem dOkhta bAsha myAyum mIgrumesh (shudan)
18. rasIda bare kI bAsha? (dAdan)
19. bAyad kAr e khuda bAsha (khalAs kadan)
20. aga bAshan mIbInumeshAn (Amadan)

Exercise 213 - Use the two words given in (), once each, to complete the following sentences. E.g., nAn e ra khush dAra. (afghAn, afghAnI). afghAn nAn e afghAnIra khush dAra

1. emdafa maktUb e az rA e nAmad (awA, awAI)
2. aga mEbUd bukhARI ra estEmAl mEkadEm (barq, barqI)
3. aga esh khUbesh mEbUd shAyad amI mEz e ra mEkhar-
Idum (chOb, chUbI)
4. ba I qesm ketAbA dArum lAken I ketAb uqa na bUd
(delchasp, delchaspI)
5. da nAn e kamtar khOrda mEsha (garm, garmI)
6. (a)garchI khudesh s lAken az kada da Inja
besyArtar rafIq dAra (khArej, khArejI)

7. khuda mEga lAken sh khUb nEs (khayAt, khayAtI)
8. dEr shuda ke as lAken Ale sh bEtar shuda (marIz, marIzI)
9. U besyAr yag Adam e as--amEsha amrAemA mEkuna (mErabAn, mErabAnI)
10. da I rOzA ar chIz as--na mEfAmum ke chera shuda (qImat, qImatI)
11. aga grefta tAnestum mEkhAyum ke na (da) mazAr e sharIf tEr kunum (rukhsat, rukhsatI)
12. (a)garchI darI mEkhAnEm lAken ghair e da dega jAyAm fAmIda mEsha (kAbul, kAbulI)
13. AinAra katI aw e bushOI O amrAe pAk khushk kO (sAf, sAfI)
14. az khAter e ke afghAnestAn e qadImI dAra yag mamlakat e gufta mEsha (tArIkh, tArIkhI)
15. I ba khud besyAr lAeq as (najAr, najArI)

Exercise 214 - Replace successively (changing only one item of the sentence at a time) the following words in the sentence, amU gElAsa khu byAr. E.g., bUra. amU bUrara khu byAr

- | | | |
|------------|----------|------------|
| 1. ao | 5. namak | 8. amI |
| 2. maska | 6. kAsa | 9. pyAla |
| 3. chAinak | 7. bubar | 10. chaokI |
| 4. beto | | |

Exercise 215 - Replace successively the following words or phrases in the sentence, sarwEs kudAm sU mEra? E.g., I. sarwEs IsU mEra

- | | | |
|---------|------------|---------|
| 1. U | 3. khAt | 5. I |
| 2. raft | 4. na-khAt | 6. Amad |

7. byAya

8. tA panj baja

9. emrOz

10. khAt

Exercise 216 - Use chI khUb, cheqa and/or chetOr to complete the following. The number given in () at the end of each sentence shows the number of possibilities. In other words, where (for example) a (2) occurs it shows that only two of these expressions are possible while one should not be used.

1. kOchE ArAm dArEn! (3)
2. emrOz garmI s! (2)
3. guLA e maghbUl dArEn! (3)
4. barqA zaIf as! (2)
5. qImat as! (2)
6. mazadAr as! (3)
7. Ale darI gap mEzanEn!! (1)

APPENDIX I

A COMPARISON OF THE SYMBOLS USED IN
THIS COURSE WITH THOSE OF THE IPA

<u>This Course</u>	<u>IPA</u>	<u>This Course</u>	<u>IPA</u>
<u>Stops</u>		19.	/m/ /m/
1.	/p/ /p/	20.	/n/ /n/ [ŋ] /k g/
2.	/b/ /b/	21.	/w/ /w/
3.	/t/ /t/ [t̚]	22.	/y/ /y/
4.	/d/ /d/ [d̚]	<u>Trill</u>	
5.	/k/ /k/	23.	/r/ /r/ [r̄]
6.	/g/ /g/	<u>Vowels</u>	
7.	/q/ /q/	1.	/I/ /i/
<u>Affricates</u>		2.	/E/ /e/
8.	/ch/ /tʃ/	3.	/e/ /ɛ/
9.	/j/ /dʒ/	4.	/a/ /æ/
<u>Fricatives</u>		5.	/A/ /ɔ/
10.	/f/ /f/	6.	/O/ /o/
11.	/kh/ /x/	7.	/u/ /U/
12.	/gh/ /ɣ/	8.	/U/ /u/
13.	/H/ /h/	<u>Diphthongs</u>	
14.	/s/ /s/	1.	/Ai/ /ɔI/
15.	/z/ /z/	2.	/ai/ /æI/
16.	/sh/ /ʃ/	3.	/ao/ /aU/
17.	/zh/ /ʒ/	4.	/Oi/ /oI/
<u>Resonants</u>		5.	/Ui/ /uI/
18.	/l/ /l/		

APPENDIX II

SOME NAMES IN DARI OF CONTINENTS,
COUNTRIES AND LANGUAGES SPOKEN

<u>English Name</u>	<u>Dari Name</u>	<u>Person & Adjective</u>	<u>Language</u>
Afghanistan	afghAnestAn	afghAn(I)	darI (fArsI)/ pashtO (afghAnI)
Africa	afrIqA	afrIqAI	
America (U.S.A.)	amrIkA	amrIkAI	englIsI
Asia	AsyA	AsyAI	
Australia	AstarlyA	AstarlyAI	englIsI
Austria	utrIsh	utrIshI	jarmanI/almAnI
Bulgaria	bulghAryA	bulghAryAI	bulghAryAI
Canada	kAnAdA	kAnAdAI	englIsI/ farAnsawI
China (People's Republic)	chIn	chInAI	chInAI
Czechoslovakia	chakUsalwAkya	chakUsalwAkI/ chekI=	chakUsalwAkI/ chekI
Denmark	denmArk	denmArkI	denmArkI
Egypt (U.A.R.)	meser	mesrI	arabI
England	englestAn	englIs(I)	englIsI
Europe	urUpA	urUpAI	
Finland	fenland	fenlandI	fenlandI
France	farAnsa	farAnsawI	farAnsawI
Germany	jarmanI/almAn	jarmanI/almAnI	jarmanI/almAnI
Great Britain (U.K.)	bartAnyA	bartAnawI	englIsI
Greece	yUnAn	yUnAnI	yUnAnI

<u>English Name</u>	<u>Dari Name</u>	<u>Person & Adjective</u>	<u>Language</u>
Holland (The Netherlands)	<u>HAland</u>	<u>HAlandI</u>	<u>HAlandI</u>
India	<u>(H)endustAn</u>	<u>HendI/HendustAnI</u>	<u>HendI/HendustAnI</u>
Indonesia	<u>endUnIzyA</u>	<u>endUnIzyAI</u>	<u>endUnIzyAI</u>
Iran	<u>IrAn</u>	<u>IrAnI</u>	<u>fArsI (IrAnI)</u>
Iraq	<u>Eraq</u>	<u>EraqI</u>	<u>arabI</u>
Ireland	<u>Airland</u>	<u>AirlandI</u>	<u>englIsI</u>
Israel	<u>esrAI</u>	<u>yaUd(I)/esrAII</u>	<u>ebrAnI</u>
Italy	<u>etAlya</u>	<u>etAlawI</u>	<u>etAlawI</u>
Japan	<u>jApAn</u>	<u>jApAnI</u>	<u>jApAnI</u>
Lebanon	<u>lebnAn</u>	<u>lebnAnI</u>	<u>arabI</u>
New Zealand	<u>nuzIland</u>	<u>nuzIlandI</u>	<u>englIsI</u>
Norway	<u>nArwE</u>	<u>nArwIjI</u>	<u>nArwIjI</u>
Pakistan	<u>pAkestAn</u>	<u>pAkestAnI</u>	<u>urdU/bangAlI</u>
Philippines	<u>felpAin</u>	<u>felpAinI</u>	<u>felpAinI</u>
Poland	<u>pOland</u>	<u>pOlandI</u>	<u>pOlandI</u>
Russia (U.S.S.R.)	<u>rUsya/shOrawI</u>	<u>rUsI/shOrawI</u>	<u>rUsI</u>
Saudi Arabia	<u>arabestAn</u>	<u>arab(I)</u>	<u>arabI</u>
Scotland	<u>skAtland</u>	<u>skAtlandI</u>	<u>englIsI</u>
Spain	<u>aspAnya</u>	<u>aspAnawI</u>	<u>aspAnawI</u>
Sweden	<u>swIdan</u>	<u>swIdanI</u>	<u>swIdanI</u>
Switzerland	<u>swIs</u>	<u>swIsI</u>	<u>jarmanI/etAlawI/ farAnsawI</u>
Turkey	<u>turkya</u>	<u>turkI</u>	<u>turkI</u>
United Nations	<u>melal e mutaHed</u>		
Yugoslavia	<u>yUgOsalaWyA</u>	<u>yUgOsalaWyAI</u>	<u>yUgOsalaWyAI</u>

APPENDIX III

Chart A. KINSHIP--where khud ("self") is male or female

Key to Chart on Following Page

1. Paternal grandfather	14. Maternal aunt
2. " grandmother	15. Cousin
3. " uncle	16. "
4. " aunt	17. "
5. Father	18. "
6. Cousin	19. Brother
7. "	20. Nephew
8. "	21. Niece
9. "	22. <u>Yourself</u>
10. Maternal grandfather	23. Sister
11. " grandmother	24. Nephew
12. Mother	25. Niece
13. Maternal uncle	

Note: The two general words for relative(s) are:

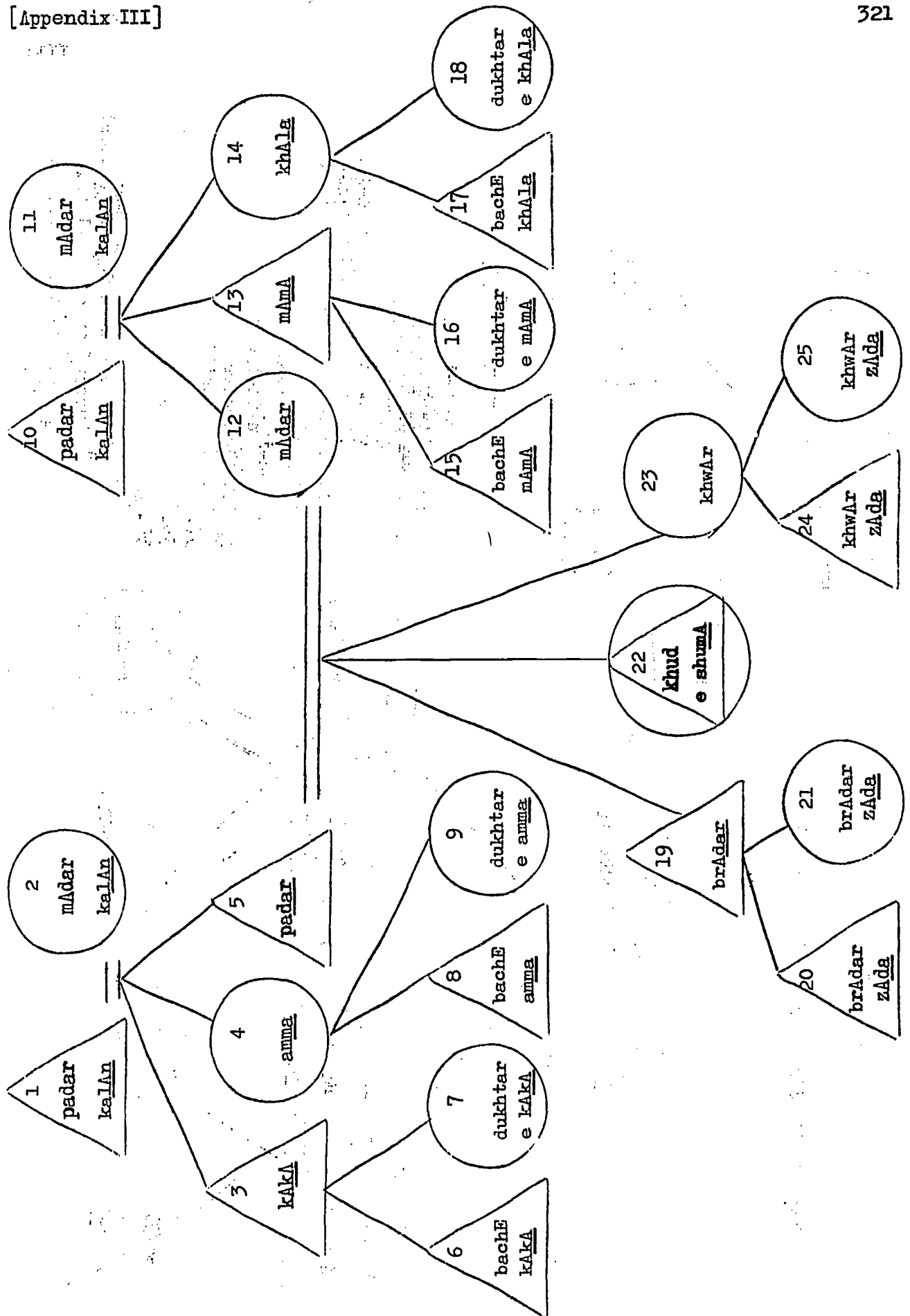
khEshA -- a relative by marriage

qaomA --- a relative by birth

Males are indicated by triangles

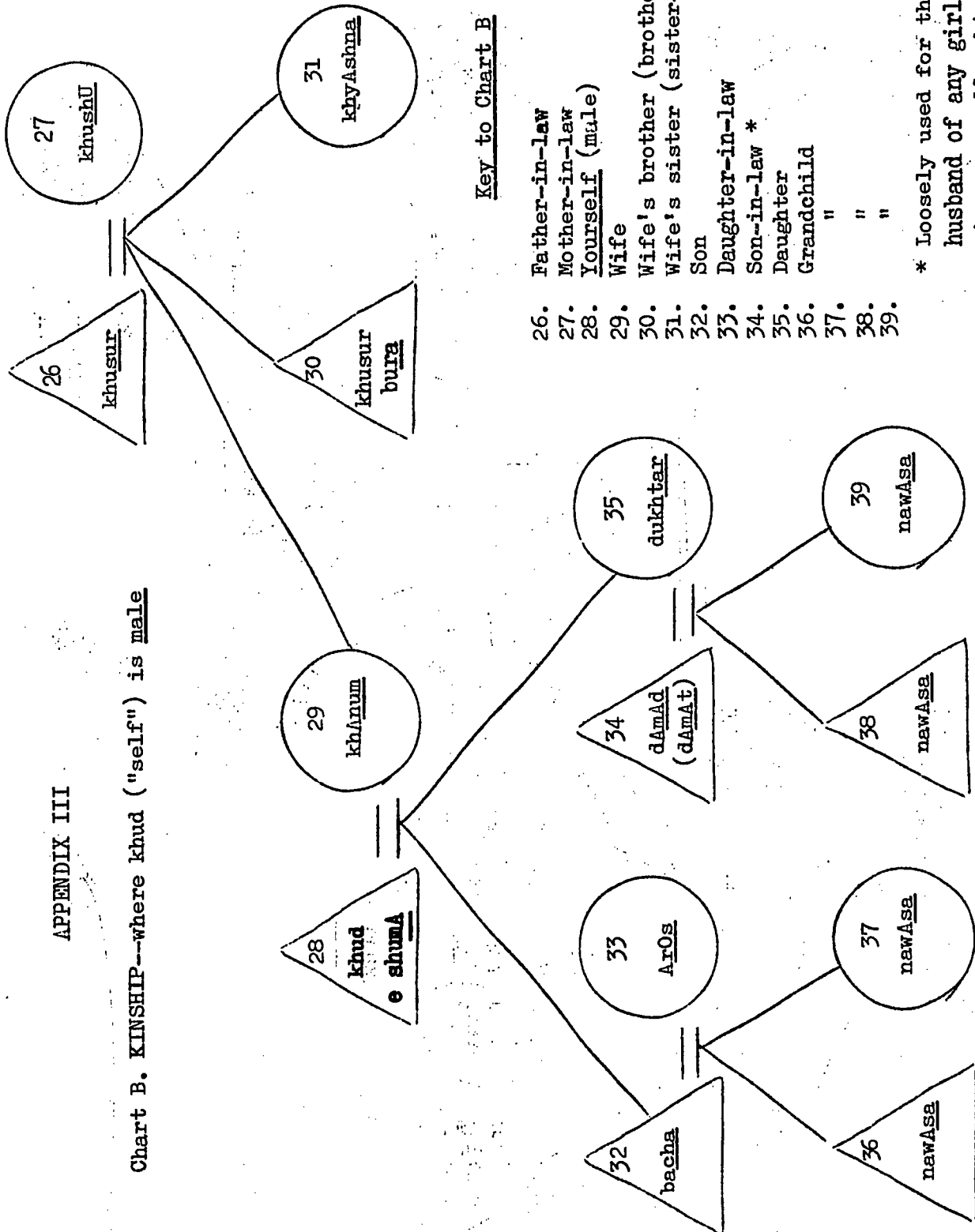
Females are indicated by circles

Marriage is shown by double lines



APPENDIX III

Chart B. KINSHIP--where khud ("self") is male



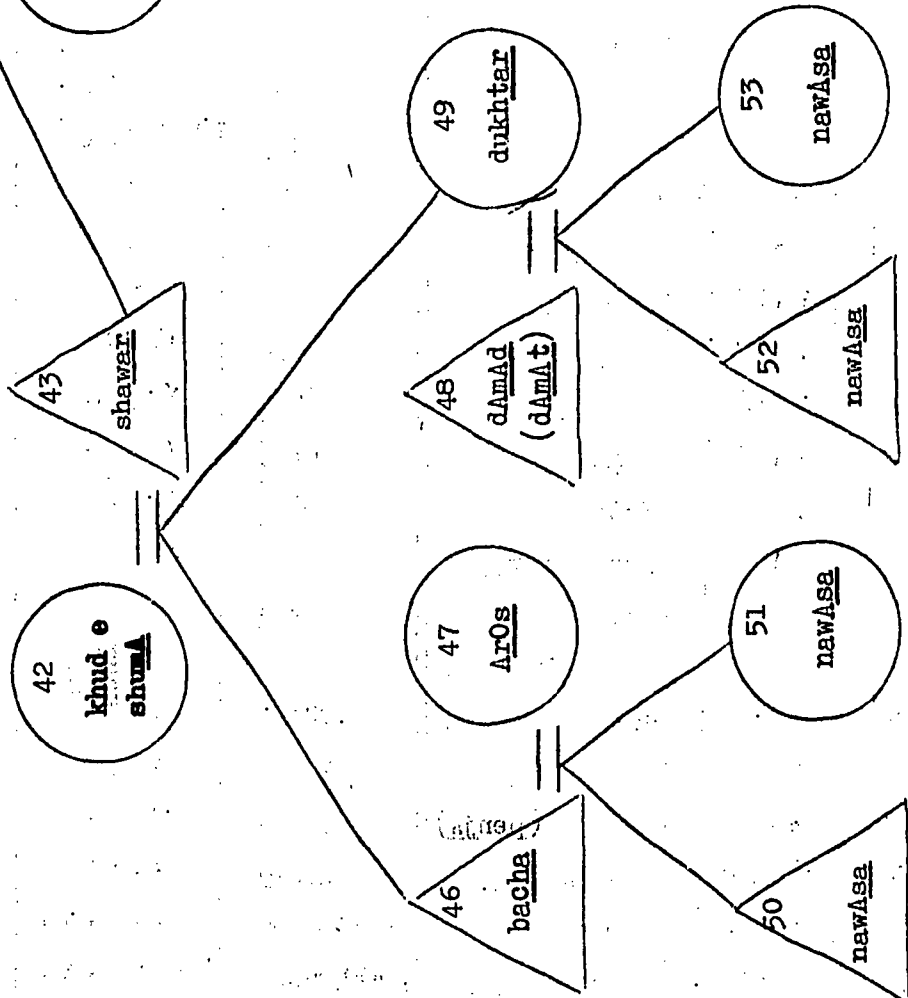
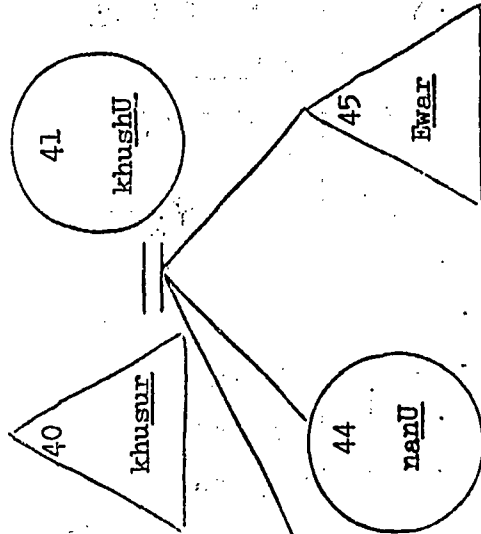
Key to Chart B

- 26. Father-in-law
- 27. Mother-in-law
- 28. Yourself (male)
- 29. Wife
- 30. Wife's brother (brother-in-law)
- 31. Wife's sister (sister-in-law)
- 32. Son
- 33. Daughter-in-law
- 34. Son-in-law *
- 35. Daughter
- 36. Grandchild
- 37. " "
- 38. " "
- 39. " "

* Loosely used for the (older) husband of any girl (e.g., niece, granddaughter) in the family

APPENDIX III

Chart C. KINSHIP--where khud ("self") is female



Key to Chart C

- 40. Father-in-law
- 41. Mother-in-law
- 42. Yourself (female)
- 43. Husband
- 44. Husband's sister (sister-in-law)
- 45. Husband's brother (brother-in-law)
- 46. Son
- 47. Daughter-in-law
- 48. Son-in-law *
- 49. Daughter
- 50. Grandchild
- 51. " "
- 52. " "
- 53. " "

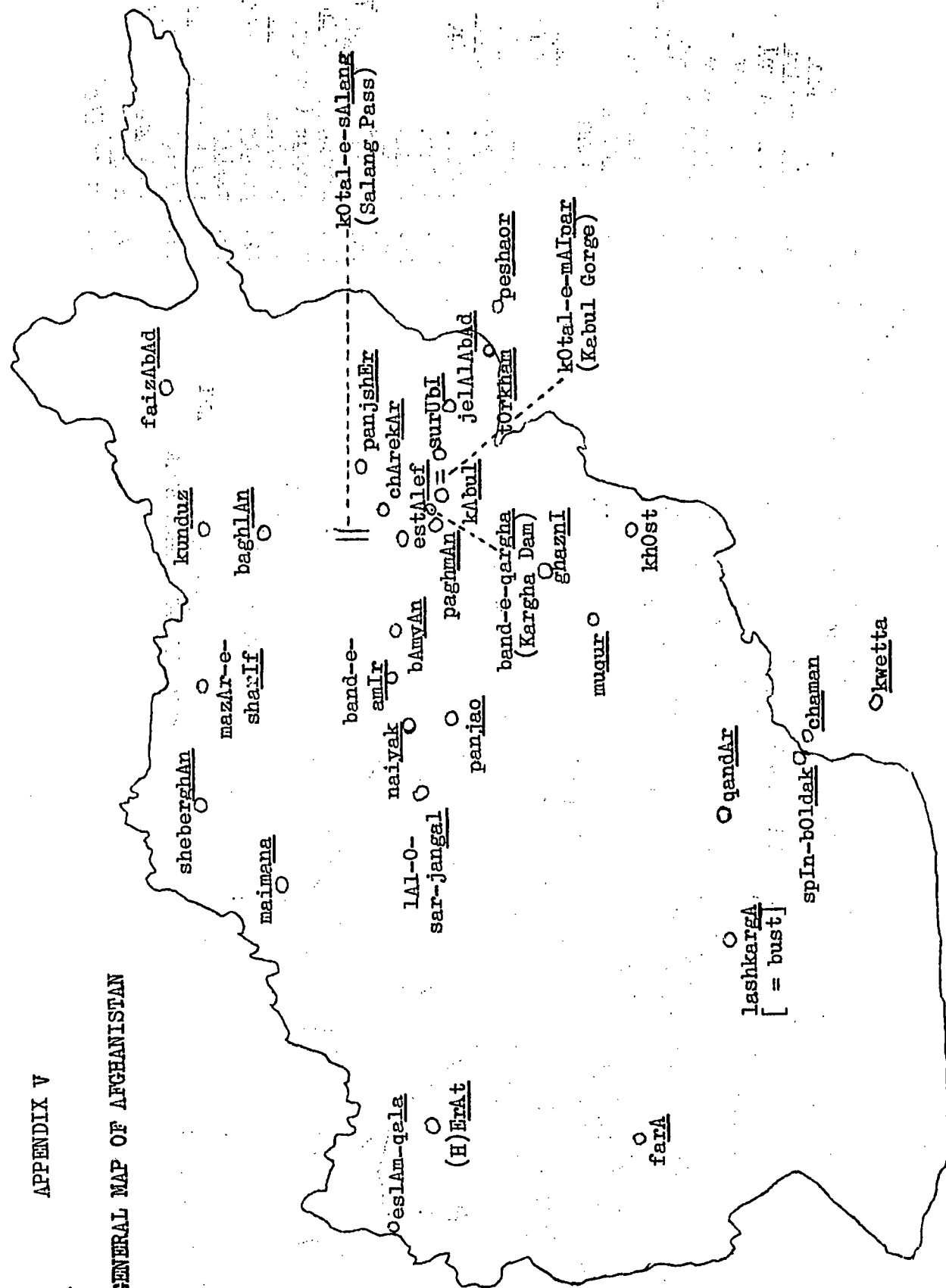
* Loosely used for the (older) husband of any girl (e.g., niece, granddaughter) in the family

APPENDIX IV
CARDINAL NUMBERS

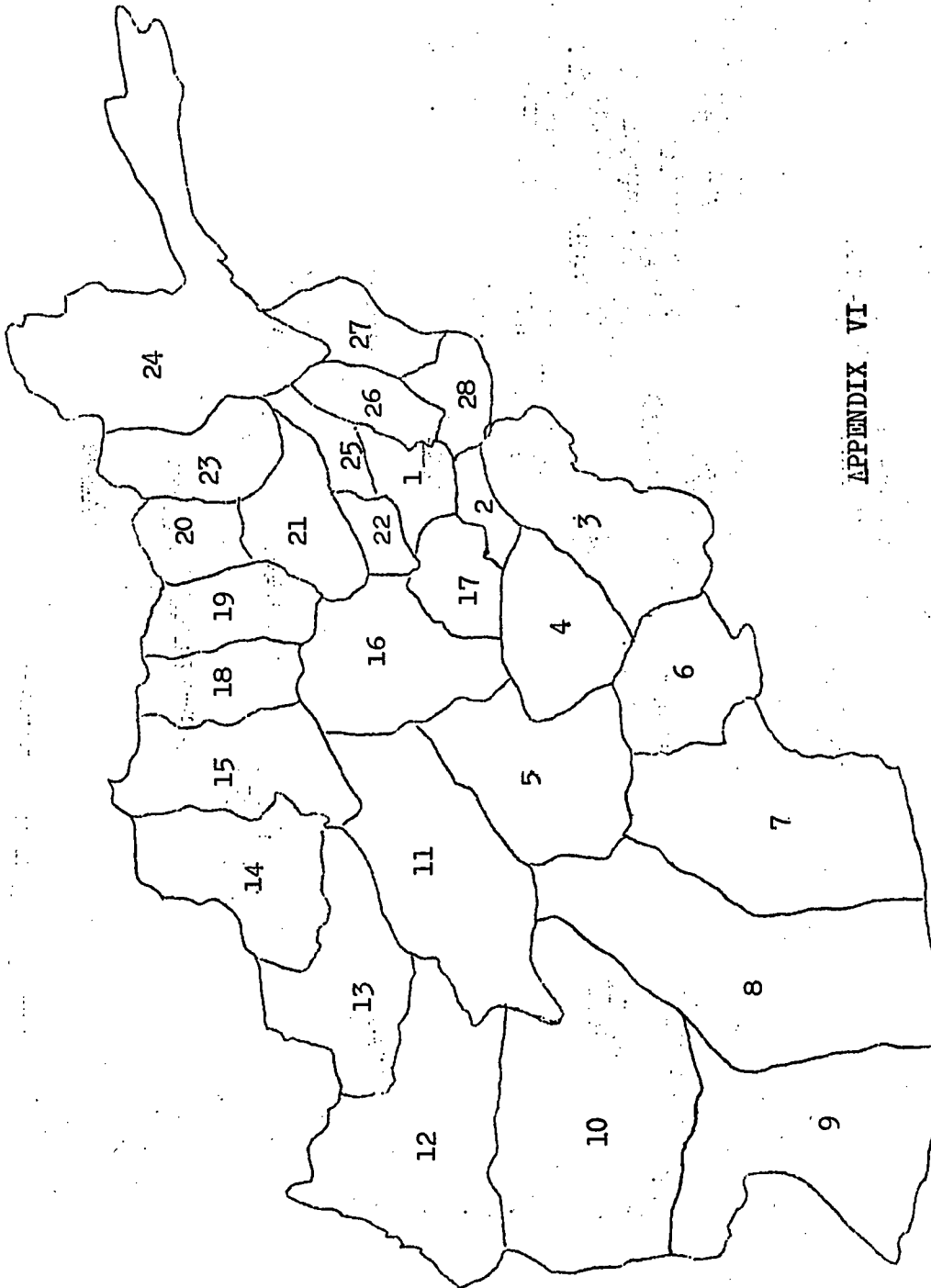
English	Dari	Pronounced	English	Dari	Pronounced
0	•	<u>sefer</u>	70	٧٠	<u>aftAd</u>
1	١	yak (yag)	76	٧٦	aftAd 0 <u>shash</u>
2	٢	dU (du)	80	٨٠	<u>ashtAd</u>
3	٣	sE	87	٨٧	ashtAd 0 <u>aft</u>
4	٤ / ٤	chAr	90	٩٠	<u>nawad</u>
5	٥	panj	98	٩٨	nawad 0 <u>asht</u>
6	٦	shash	100	١٠٠	sad
7	٧	aft	109	١٠٩	yak sad 0 <u>n0</u>
8	٨	asht	200	٢٠٠	<u>du</u> sad
9	٩	n0	210	٢١٠	du sad 0 <u>da</u>
10	١٠	da (dA)	300	٣٠٠	<u>sE</u> sad
11	١١	yAzda	311	٣١١	sE sad 0 yAzda
12	١٢	duwAzda	400	٤٠٠ / ٤٠٠	<u>chAr</u> sad
13	١٣	sEzda	412	٤١٢ / ٤١٢	chAr sad 0 duwAzda
14	١٤ / ١٤	chArda	500	٥٠٠	<u>panj</u> sad
15	١٥	pAnzda	513	٥١٣	panj sad 0 sEzda
16	١٦	shAnzda	600	٦٠٠	<u>shash</u> sad
17	١٧	abda	614	٦١٤ / ٦١٤	shash sad 0 chArda
18	١٨	azhda	700	٧٠٠	<u>aft</u> sad
19	١٩	nuzda	715	٧١٥	aft sad 0 pAnzda
20	٢٠	b1st	800	٨٠٠	<u>asht</u> sad
21	٢١	b1st 0 yak	816	٨١٦	asht sad 0 shAnzda
30	٣٠	sI	900	٩٠٠	<u>n0</u> sad
32	٣٢	sI 0 dU	917	٩١٧	n0 sad 0 abda
40	٤٠ / ٤٠	chel	1,000	١٠٠٠	(H)azAr
43	٤٣ / ٤٣	chel 0 sE	1,018	١٠١٨	yag azAr 0 azhda
50	٥٠	pInjA (penjA)	2,000	٢٠٠٠	<u>du</u> azAr
54	٥٤ / ٥٤	pInjA 0 chAr	2,019	٢٠١٩	du azAr 0 nuzda
60	٦٠	shast	1,000,000	١٠٠٠٠٠٠	<u>melyUn</u>
65	٦٥	shast 0 panj	1,000,020	١٠٠٠٠٢٠	yag melyUn 0 b1st

APPENDIX V

GENERAL MAP OF AFGHANISTAN



- 1. kAbul
- 2. lOgar
- 3. paktyA
- 4. ghazni
- 5. uruzgAN
- 6. zAbul
- 7. qandAr (kandAr)
- 8. (H)elmand
- 9. nIm-rOz
- 10. fara
- 11. ghOr
- 12. (H)ErAt
- 13. bAdghIS
- 14. fArYAb
- 15. jaozjAN
- 16. bAmyAN
- 17. wardak
- 18. balkh
- 19. samengAn
- 20. kunduz (qunduz)
- 21. baghlAN
- 22. parwAN
- 23. takhar
- 24. badakhshAN
- 25. kApIsA
- 26. laghmAN
- 27. kunar
- 28. nangarHar



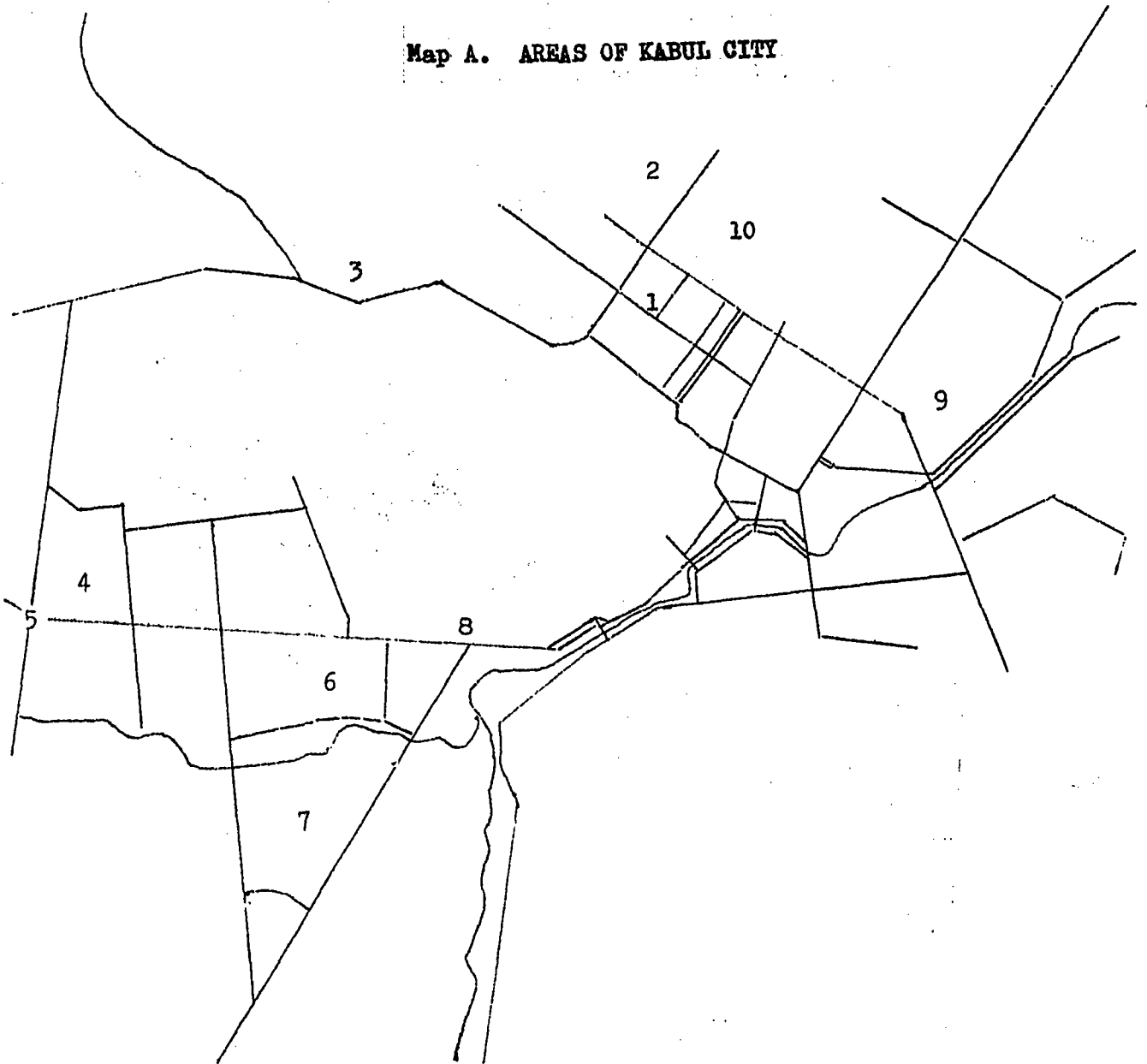
APPENDIX VI

PROVINCES OF AFGHANISTAN

APPENDIX VII

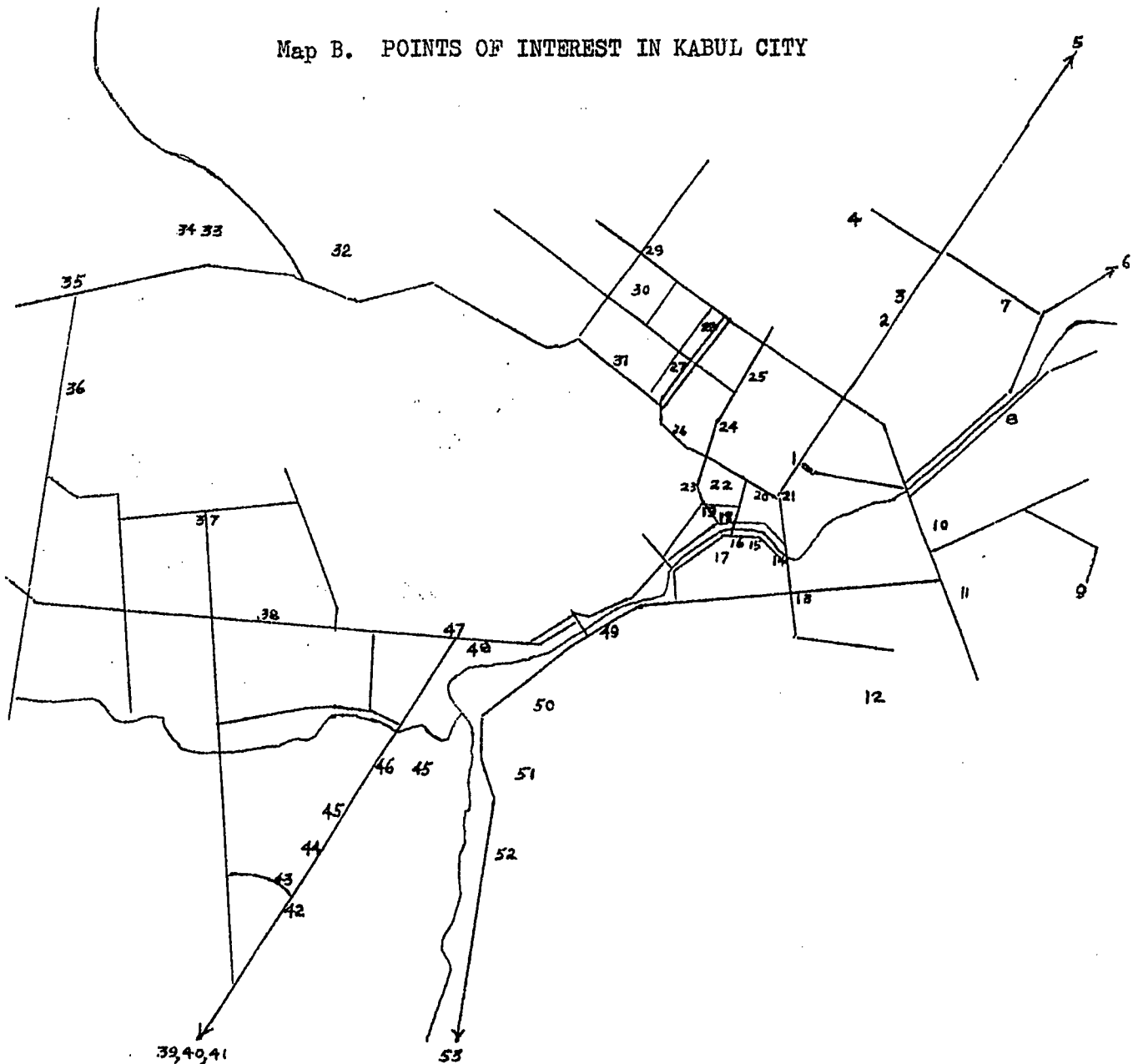
KABUL CITY MAPS

Map A. AREAS OF KABUL CITY

Key to Map Above:

1	shAr e <u>nao</u>	6	kArTE <u>chAr</u>
2	shErpur	7	kArTE <u>sE</u>
3	kArTE <u>parwAn</u>	8	dEmazang
4	kArTE d <u>Enao</u>	9	kArTE <u>wAlI</u>
5	kOtE <u>sangI</u>	10	kArTE wazIr akbar <u>khAn</u>

Map B. POINTS OF INTEREST IN KABUL CITY

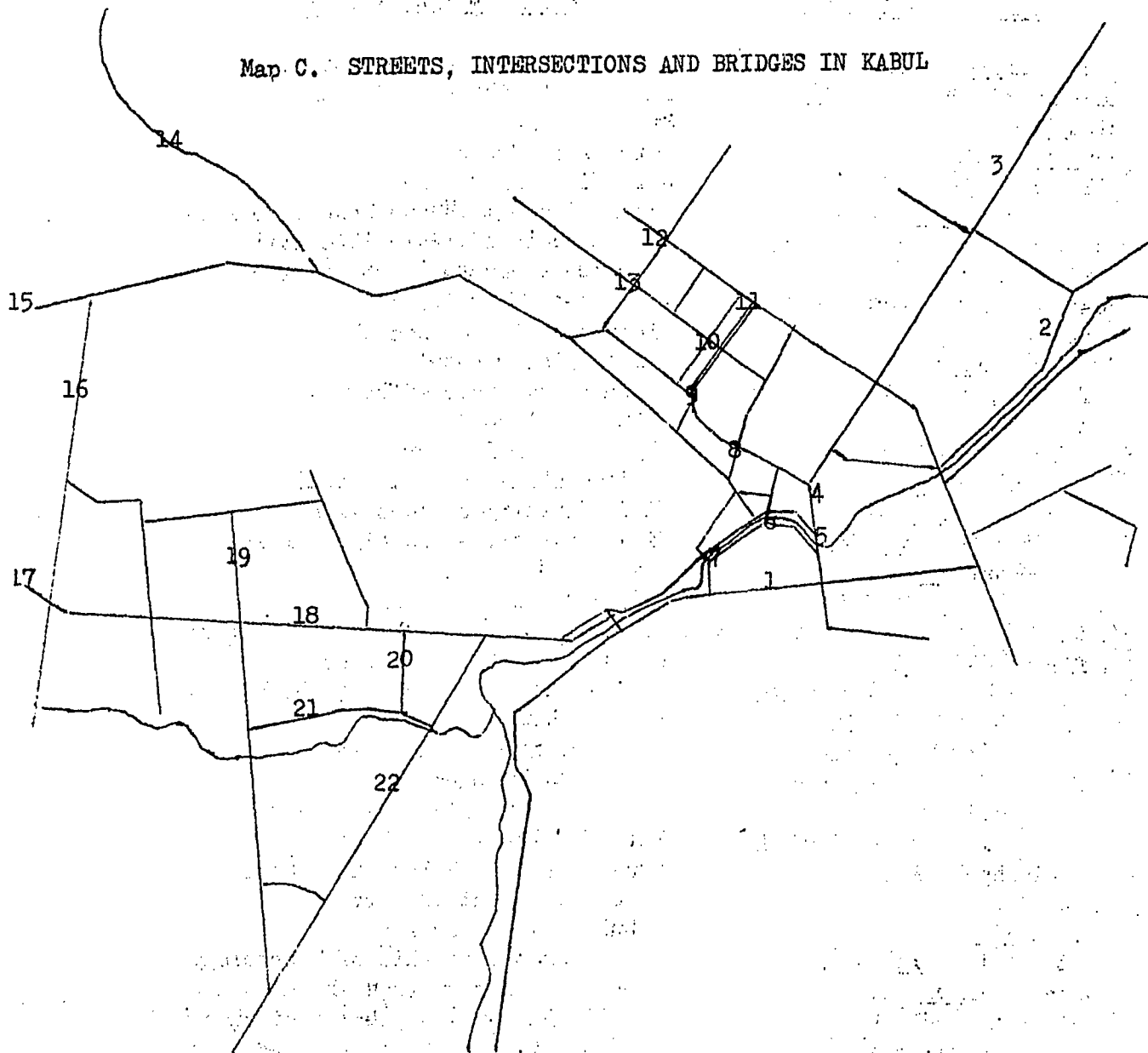
Key to Map Above:

<u>No.</u>	<u>Name in Dari</u>	<u>English Equivalent</u>
1	arg e shA(H)I	Royal Palace
2	rAdyO afghAnestAn	Radio Afghanistan
3	sefArat e amrIkA	American Embassy
4	shafA-khAnE wazIr akbar khAn	Wazir Akbar Khan Hospital
5	maidAn e awAI	Kabul Airport (not shown on map)
6	gumruk	Kabul Customhouse (not shown on map)
7	kAbul taimz	Kabul Times Building

Key to Map B. on Page 328

<u>No.</u>	<u>Name in Dari</u>	<u>English Equivalent</u>
8	zenda bAnAn	Indameer and Bus Company
9	maqbarE nAder shA	Tomb of King Nadir Shah
10	stedyUm	Stadium
11	chaman	Fair Grounds
12	bAlA (H)esAr	Bala Hissar Fort
13	sepA(H)I gumnAm	Monument to the Unknown Soldier
14	masjed e pul e kheshtI	Mosque of 'Pul e Kheshti'
15	sarAi shAzda	Currency Exchange 'Bazaar'
16	pOsta-khAnE markazI	Main Post Office
17	wezArat e seHyA	Ministry of Health
18	Otal e spInzar	Spinzar Hotel
19	daftar e garzandOi	Afghan Tourist Bureau
20	Otal e kAbul	Kabul Hotel
21	rastUrAn e khaiBar	Khyber Restaurant
22	pArk e zarnegAr	Central Park (in town)
23	wezArat e mAref	Ministry of Education
24	wezArat e khAreja	Ministry of Foreign Affairs
25	melal e mutaHed	United Nations
26	bAzAr e welAyat	'Green Door Bazaar'
27	ketAb-khAnE sefArat e amrIkA	U. S. I. S. ('American Center')
28	sefArat e jarmanI	(West) German Embassy
29	masjed e (H)AjI yaqUb	Haji Yaqub Mosque (= Blue Mosque)
30	pArk e shAr e nao	'Shar e Nau' Park
31	wezArat e dAkhela	Ministry of Interior
32	sefArat e englestAn	British Embassy
33	bAgh e bAlA	'Bagh e Bala' Restaurant
34	Otal e bain ul melalI	Intercontinental Hotel
35	pUlI-takhnIk	(Russian) Polytechnic School
36	sIlO	Government Granary
37	pO(H)AntUn	Kabul University
38	maktab e takhnIk	Afghan Institute of Technology
39	mUzIam e kAbul	Kabul Museum (not shown on map)
40	shafA-khAnE nUr	'NOOR' Eye Hospital (not shown on map)
41	maktab e amrIkAI	A. I. S. K. (not shown on map)
42	sefArat e rUsya	Russian Embassy
43	kalIsA	Community Christian Church
44	shOrA	Parliament
45	Ai-sI-E	U. S. A. I. D. (two locations)
46	maktab e (H)abIbya	Habibia High School
47	trAfIk	Kabul Police
48	zU (bAgh e wash)	Kabul Zoo
49	shafA-khAnE ebn e sInA	Avicenna Hospital
50	tOp e chAsht	Noon Cannon
51	bAgh e bAbur	Babur Shah Garden
52	jangalak	Jangalak Factory
53	chel satUn	'Chil Satoon' Gardens (not shown on map)

Map C. STREETS, INTERSECTIONS AND BRIDGES IN KABUL

Key to Map Above:

- | | | | |
|----|-----------------------------------|----|----------------------------------|
| 1 | <u>jAdE maiwand</u> | 12 | <u>chArrAI (H)AjI yaqUb</u> |
| 2 | <u>sarak e jelALAbAd</u> | 13 | <u>chArrAI ansArI</u> |
| 3 | <u>sarak e maidAn e awAI</u> | 14 | <u>sarak e shamAI</u> |
| 4 | <u>jAdE nAder pashtUn</u> | 15 | <u>sarak e qargha O pashmAn</u> |
| 5 | <u>pul e kheshtI</u> | 16 | <u>sarak e sIlO</u> |
| 6 | <u>pul e bAgh e umUmI</u> | 17 | <u>sarak e paghmAn O qandAr</u> |
| 7 | <u>pul e shA(H)E du shamshEra</u> | 18 | <u>sarak e kArTE chAr</u> |
| 8 | <u>chArrAI malek asghar</u> | 19 | <u>sarak e aliAbAd</u> |
| 9 | <u>chArrAI sedArat</u> | 20 | <u>sarak e awal e kArTE chAr</u> |
| 10 | <u>chArrAI turabAz khAn</u> | 21 | <u>sarak e pusht e kArta</u> |
| 11 | <u>chArrAI shErpur</u> | 22 | <u>dAr ul amAn</u> |

APPENDIX VIII

SOME AFGHAN NAMES AND TITLES

1	2	3
<u>ghulAm</u>	<u>muHammad</u>	
<u>aHmad</u>	<u>shOaib</u>	
<u>abduL</u>	<u>karIm</u>	<u>qandArI</u>
<u>HafIz</u>	<u>ulla</u>	<u>wardak</u>
<u>muHammad</u>	<u>all</u>	
<u>all</u>	<u>aHmad</u>	
<u>sayed</u>	<u>all</u>	
<u>azIzudIn</u>		<u>karImI</u>

1. Afghans usually have two or three names. Their last (or, surname) is not always used and in any case is more formal.
2. The surname is either a family name or one chosen by the person himself. Not infrequently it is the name of the place from which the family (or its ancestors) comes (e.g., qandArI, wardak).
3. Some names (e.g., ghulAm and abduL) are more likely to be used as first names only while some others (e.g., ulla [from allA]) will be used mostly as second names. Certain names (e.g., muHammad, aHmad and all) may be used in either position.
4. Many Muslim names are taken from Arabic and have a religious significance (e.g., frequently representing a name or an attribute of God, or the name of some religious leader in Islam). sayed is normally used to apply to one who traces his ancestry back to Muhammad.

<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>
<u>HabIb</u>	<u>HabIba</u>
<u>karIm</u>	<u>karIma</u>
<u>nasIm</u>	<u>nasIma</u>
<u>raHIIm</u>	<u>raHIIma</u>

5. Certain masculine names may be turned into feminines by suffixing -a.
6. In applications and registration forms Afghan girls will usually give their family surname in addition to their personal name.
7. Amongst the educated the woman loses her family name (i.e., surname) and takes her husband's family surname upon marriage.

<u>T i t l e</u>	<u>Given/middle name</u>	<u>Surname</u>
AghA e		qandArI
shAghalE		karImI
pEghla	nasIma	
khAnum		usmAnI

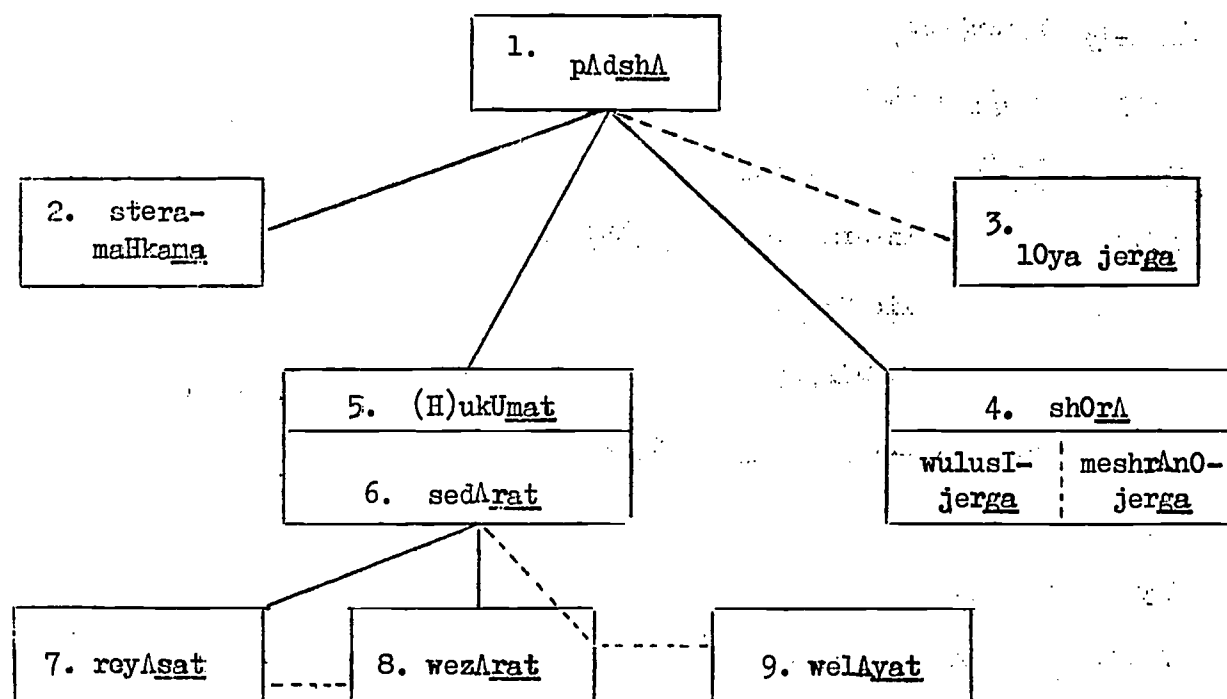
8. With forms of "Mr." the title AghA e or shAghalE--the latter being Pashto, but frequently heard in Dari--is used only with the surname (or family name) following it.
9. In the case of single women the title pEghla (= Miss)--also Pashto--is used with the woman's given (or middle) name rather than with her family name. With khAnum (= Mrs.) the surname is used.

1	2	3
		khAn
	nasIm	jAn
	raHIma	jAn
	kAkA	jAn
	bAbA	jAn

10. khAn is a title of respect given to anyone. It comes after the given or middle name of the person being honored, but it is not put after the surname. It is used only for men.
11. -jAn is a suffix of respect or endearment, used for both men and women. It is added to personal names and used by elders for younger people. If younger people use it for their elders they do not attach it to their personal names but only to their titles (or words indicating their relationship), as kAkA-jAn (uncle) and bAbA-jAn (papa).

APPENDIX IX

GOVERNMENTAL TERMINOLOGY

Key to the above divisions

1. King.
2. Supreme Court.
3. Great Council (called for emergency purposes only).
4. Parliament, consisting of two divisions, the "House of the People" (wulusI-jerga) and the "House of the Elders" (meshrAnO jerga).
5. Government, consisting of the Prime Minister, the Ministers of each Ministry (# 8) and the President of the Department of Tribal Affairs (one of the agencies in # 7). This "Government" is also called the Council of Ministers.
6. Prime Ministry.
7. Department or Agency, either (in some cases) directly under # 6 or also as a division under # 8.
8. Ministry (of which there are 15).
9. Province (of which there are 28), under the Ministry of Interior.

Names of Government Ministries (# 8 in the chart)

All to be prefixed with the phrase wazArat e (Ministry of . . .)

1. adlya (Justice)
2. dAkhela (Interior)
3. darbAr (Royal Court)
4. defA e mellI (National Defense)
5. etlAAat O kultUr (Information and Culture)
6. fawAed e Ama (Public Works)
7. khAreja (Foreign Affairs)
8. maAden O sanAE (Mines and Industries)
9. mAlya (Finance)
10. mAref (Education)
11. mukhAberAt (Communications)
12. plAn (Planning)
13. seHya (Health)
14. tujArat (Commerce)
15. zerAat (Agriculture)

The darbAr (Royal Court) is actually appointed by the King instead of by the Prime Minister. The Ministers of all the other Ministries are selected by the Prime Minister.

The head of the reyAsat e mustaqel e qabAel (Department of Tribal Affairs), one of those listed under # 7 in the chart, also sits with the Council of Ministers (# 5 in the chart).

Names of positions in the Government (in order of descending rank)

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <u>AlA (H)azrat</u> | His Majesty, the King |
| 2. <u>sadr e Azam</u> | Prime Minister |
| 3. <u>wazIr</u> | Minister |
| 4. <u>muIn</u> | Deputy Minister |

- | | |
|-------------------------|--|
| 5. <u>raIs</u> | President (i.e., head of a Department [<u>reyAsat</u>]) |
| 6. <u>mudIr e umUmI</u> | Director General |
| 7. <u>mudIr</u> | Director (i.e., in charge of a branch in one of the Departments) |
| 8. <u>muAwen</u> | Assistant (to any other officer or appointee in the Government) |
| 9. <u>mAwUr</u> | Secretary |
| 10. <u>sar-kAteb</u> | Head Clerk |
| 11. <u>kAteb</u> | Clerk |
| 12. <u>tAwIldAr</u> | Storekeeper |

Provincial Governments

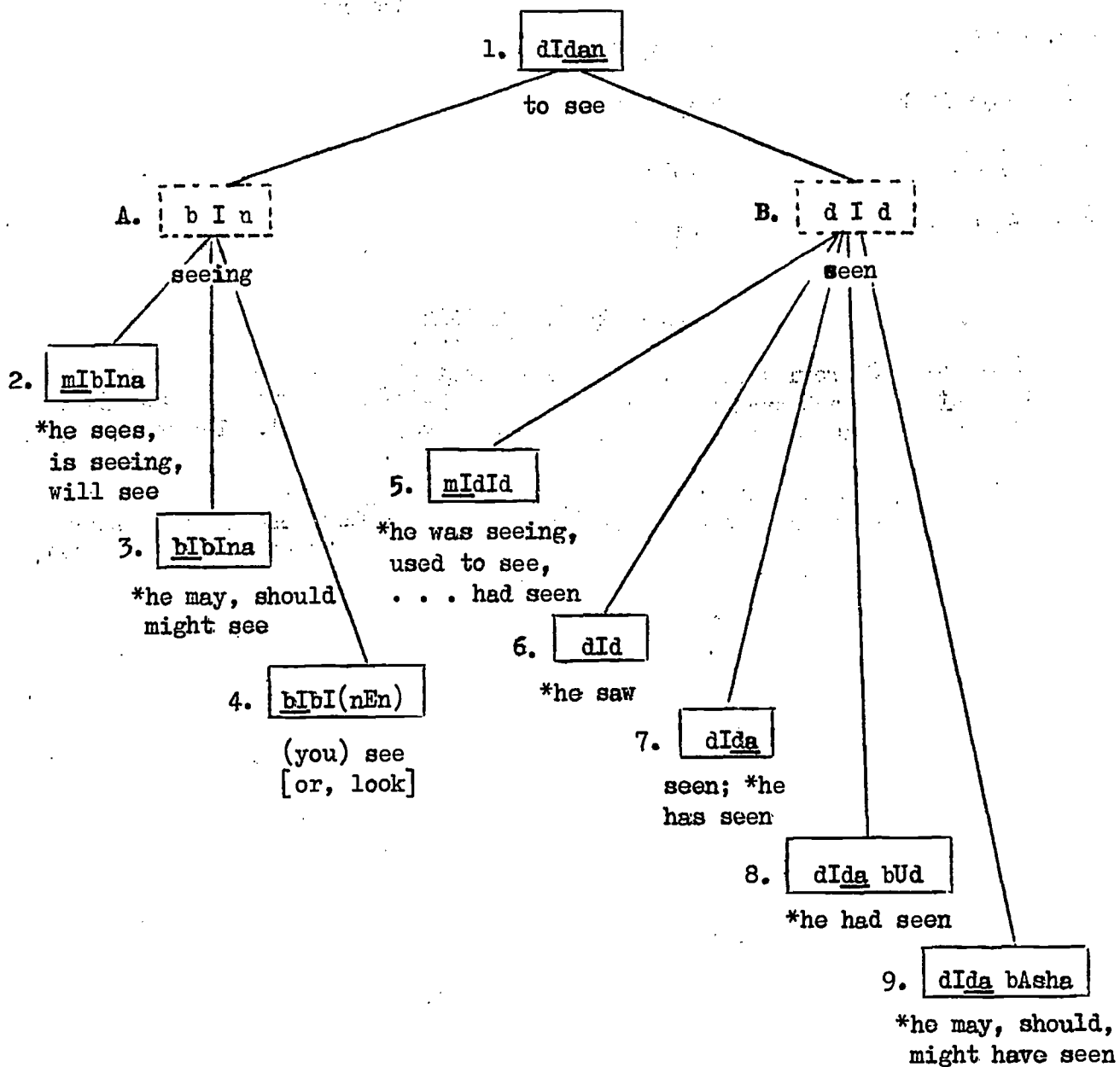
There are 28 provinces, each called a welAyat (the plural of which is welAyAt) and each under the control of a wAlI (Governor). The 28 provinces are shown on the map in Appendix VI on page 326.

Note: sAeb as a suffix is appropriately added for respect to any of the titles of the officials of Government, both central and provincial.

APPENDIX X

THE DARI VERB SYSTEM

(Colloquial)



* Where "he" is given "she" is also possible,
as also "it" might be with appropriate verbs

Key to chart on preceding page

1. The infinitive (or dictionary) form of the verb always ends in -an (§ 3-E-1). It may also be used as a noun (§ 20-B). It is here arbitrarily subdivided into two forms: (A) -bIn- which shows action as incomplete--in other words, in progress or contemplated--and (B) -dId- which shows action as complete, in some way "finished." These two forms may have prefixes and/or suffixes. The mE- prefix--in the model given here changed to mI- because of the influence of the following vowel--indicates action either in progress or unfulfilled.
2. mIbIna does service for three tenses: (a) the simple present (§ 7-C-1), (b) the present progressive (§ 7-C-2) and (c) the future [when appropriate time words or context warrant it] (§ 7-C-4, § 10-B-2).
3. bIbIna, the subjunctive form, may be introduced by a variety of words (e.g., aga [if] and shAyad [perhaps]) and renders many potential or contingent concepts such as "may, might, should, ought to" (§ 15-B, E, § 16-B, § 17-B-2, § 23-C, § 24-B, § 25-B).
4. bIbI (sing.) or bIbInEn (plur.) is the imperative or form of command (§ 8-E, F, § 16-B, § 25-E).
5. mIdId may be (a) past progressive (§ 12-B-1), (b) past habitual or customary (§ 12-C-1) and (c) contrary-to-fact, showing an unfulfilled condition and introduced by such words as aga [if] and kAshke [would that] (§ 24-C, D).
6. dId can be (a) the simple past tense, frequently qualified by a definite time word (§ 10-E, F) or (b) a contingent future [with khAt] (§ 23-B). In certain constructions it is interchangeable with the subjunctive (§ 23-C, § 24-B). It also occurs with the past perfect tense (§ 20-C).
7. dIda (with the accent on the final syllable) may be used (a) by itself as a kind of "past participle," functioning alone with a conjunctive force (§ 14-E) or in combination with other verbs (§ 14-F, § 18-F, § 20-C-1, § 21-C-5, § 22-B-3, § 25-B), or (b) as the present perfect tense (§ 19-B, C, D).
8. dIda bUd suggests action in the past which is more remote than (or happened sooner than) another action in the past. It is commonly called the past perfect tense and is much more frequently used in Dari than in English, being employed where an English speaker would use the simple past tense (§ 20-C, D).
9. dIda bAsha is used to indicate that which was possible, probable or presumed to have occurred in past time (§ 25-B). It is a kind of past presumptive.

APPENDIX XI

SUMMARY OF BASIC VERBS USED IN THIS COURSE

(Presented in the second person in imperatives and in the third person singular in all other tenses/moods--Numbers given in headings are references to Appendix X, q.v.--Blank spaces are left for forms which are not likely to occur at all)

Infinitive [# 1]		Simple Pres. Pres. Progr. Future [# 2]	Subjunc- tive [# 3]	Imperative [# 4]	
				Singular	Plural
1. <u>aftAdan</u>	to fall	<u>mefta</u>	<u>bef</u> ta <u>na</u> fta		
2. <u>Amadan</u>	to come	<u>myAya</u>	<u>by</u> Aya <u>nay</u> Aya	byA <u>nay</u> A	<u>by</u> AEn <u>nay</u> AEn
3. <u>andAkhtan</u>	to throw	<u>mendAza</u>	<u>bend</u> Aza <u>nand</u> Aza	<u>bend</u> Az <u>nand</u> Az	<u>bend</u> AzEn <u>nand</u> AzEn
4. <u>Awurdan</u>	to bring	<u>myAra</u>	<u>by</u> Ara <u>nay</u> Ara	byAr <u>nay</u> Ar	<u>by</u> ArEn <u>nay</u> ArEn
5. <u>barAmadan</u>	to leave	<u>mebrAya</u>	<u>bar</u> Aya <u>nabr</u> Aya	<u>bar</u> Ai <u>nabr</u> Ai	<u>bar</u> AEn <u>nabr</u> AEn
6. <u>barIdan</u>	to precip- itate	<u>mEbAra</u>	<u>bub</u> Ara <u>nab</u> Ara		
7. <u>bOrdan</u>	to take, carry	<u>mEbara</u>	<u>bub</u> ara <u>nab</u> ara	<u>bi</u> bar <u>nab</u> ar	<u>bub</u> arEn <u>nab</u> arEn
8. <u>bUdan</u>	to be	as [<u>mEbAsha</u>]	<u>bA</u> sha <u>nab</u> Asha	bAsh <u>nab</u> Ash	<u>bA</u> shEn <u>nab</u> AshEn
9. <u>burIdan</u>	to cut	<u>mEbura</u>	<u>bub</u> ura <u>nab</u> ura	<u>bub</u> ur <u>nab</u> ur	<u>bub</u> urEn <u>nab</u> urEn
10. <u>dAdan</u>	to give	<u>mEta</u>	<u>be</u> ta <u>nata</u>	<u>be</u> te <u>nate</u>	<u>be</u> teEn <u>nate</u> En
11. <u>dAnestan</u>	to know	<u>mEdAna</u>	<u>be</u> dAna <u>nad</u> Ana	<u>be</u> dAn	<u>be</u> dAnEn
12. <u>dAshtan</u>	to have	<u>dA</u> ra [<u>mEdAshta</u> <u>bAsha</u>]	<u>dAshta</u> - <u>bAsha</u> <u>na-dAshta</u> - <u>ta-bAsha</u>		

Past Progr. Past Habitual Cont.-to-Fact [# 5]	Simple Past [# 6]	Past Part. & Pres.Perfect [# 7]	Past Perfect [# 8]	Past Presumptive [# 9]
<u>mEftAd</u>	<u>aftAd</u>	<u>aftAda</u>	<u>aftAda</u> bUd	<u>aftAda</u> bAsha
<u>myAmad</u>	<u>Amad</u>	<u>Amada</u>	<u>Amada</u> bUd	<u>Amada</u> bAsha
<u>mendAkht</u>	<u>andAkht</u>	<u>andAkhta</u>	<u>andAkhta</u> bUd	<u>andAkhta</u> bAsha
<u>myAwurd</u>	<u>Awurd</u>	<u>Awurda</u>	<u>Awurda</u> bUd	<u>Awurda</u> bAsha
<u>mEbrAmad</u>	<u>barAmad</u>	<u>barAmada</u>	<u>barAmada</u> bUd	<u>barAmada</u> bAsha
<u>mEbArId</u>	<u>barId</u>	<u>barIda</u>	<u>barIda</u> bUd	<u>barIda</u> bAsha
<u>mEbOrd</u>	<u>bOrd</u>	<u>bOrda</u>	<u>bOrda</u> bUd	<u>bOrda</u> bAsha
<u>mEbUd</u>	<u>bUd</u>	<u>buda</u>		<u>buda</u> bAsha
<u>mEburId</u>	<u>burId</u>	<u>burIda</u>	<u>burIda</u> bUd	<u>burIda</u> bAsha
<u>mEdAd</u>	<u>dAd</u>	<u>dAda</u>	<u>dAda</u> bUd	<u>dAda</u> bAsha
<u>mEdAnest</u>	<u>dAnest</u>	<u>dAnesta</u>	<u>dAnesta</u> bUd	<u>dAnesta</u> bAsha
<u>mEdAsht</u>	<u>dAsht</u>	<u>dAshta</u>		

I n f i n i t i v e [# 1]		Simple Pres. Pres. Progr. Future [# 2]	Subjunc- tive [# 3]	I m p e r a t i v e [# 4]		
				Singular	Plural	
13.	<u>dIdan</u>	to see, look	<u>mIbIna</u>	<u>bIbIna</u> <u>nabIna</u>	<u>bIbI</u> <u>nabI</u>	<u>bIbInEn</u> <u>nabInEn</u>
14.	<u>dOkhtan</u>	to sew	<u>mEdOza</u>	<u>budOza</u> <u>nadOza</u>	<u>budOz</u> <u>nadOz</u>	<u>budOzEn</u> <u>nadOzEn</u>
15.	<u>fAmAndan</u>	to ex- plain	<u>mEfAmAna</u>	<u>bufAmAna</u> <u>nafAmAna</u>	<u>bufAmAn</u> <u>nafAmAn</u>	<u>bufAmAnEn</u> <u>nafAmAnEn</u>
16.	<u>fAmIdan</u>	to know, under- stand	<u>mEfAma</u>	<u>bufAma</u> <u>nafAma</u>		
17.	<u>furOkhtan</u>	to sell	<u>mefrOsha</u>	<u>bufrOsha</u> <u>nafrOsha</u>	<u>bufrOsh</u> <u>nafrOsh</u>	<u>bufrOshEn</u> <u>nafrOshEn</u>
18.	<u>gashtan</u>	to turn	<u>mEgarda</u>	<u>begarda</u> <u>nagarda</u>	<u>begard</u> <u>nagard</u>	<u>begardEn</u> <u>nagardEn</u>
19.	<u>greftan</u>	to take, grab	<u>mIgIra</u>	<u>bIgIra</u> <u>nagIra</u>	<u>bIgI</u> <u>nagI</u>	<u>bIgIEn</u> <u>nagIEn</u>
20.	<u>guftan</u>	to say, ask, tell	<u>mEga</u>	<u>bugOya</u> <u>nagOya</u>	<u>bugO</u> <u>nagO</u>	<u>bugOEn</u> <u>nagOEn</u>
21.	<u>kadan</u>	to do	<u>mEkuna</u>	(<u>bu</u>) <u>kuna</u> <u>nakuna</u>	(<u>bu</u>) <u>kO</u> <u>nakO</u>	(<u>bu</u>) <u>kunEn</u> <u>nakunEn</u>
22.	<u>kashIdan</u>	to pull, draw	<u>mEkasha</u>	<u>bekasha</u> <u>nakasha</u>	<u>bekash</u> <u>nakash</u>	<u>bekashEn</u> <u>nakashEn</u>
23.	<u>khAndan</u>	to read, study	<u>mEkhAna</u>	<u>bekhAna</u> <u>nakhAna</u>	<u>bekhAn</u> <u>nakhAn</u>	<u>bekhAnEn</u> <u>nakhAnEn</u>
24.	<u>kharIdan</u>	to buy	<u>mEkhara</u>	<u>bekhara</u> <u>nakhara</u>	<u>bekhar</u> <u>nakhar</u>	<u>bekharEn</u> <u>nakharEn</u>
25.	<u>khAstan</u>	to want, order	<u>mEkhAya</u>	<u>bekhAya</u> <u>nakhAya</u>	<u>bekhAi</u> <u>nakhAi</u>	<u>bekhAEn</u> <u>nakhAEn</u>
26.	<u>khEstan</u>	to arise, get up	<u>mEkheza</u>	<u>bekheza</u> <u>nakheza</u>	<u>bekhe</u> <u>nakhe</u>	<u>bekhezaEn</u> <u>nakhezaEn</u>
27.	<u>khEstAndan</u>	to wake up (someone)	<u>mEkhezaAna</u>	<u>bekhezaAna</u> <u>nakhezaAna</u>	<u>bekhezaAn</u> <u>nakhezaAn</u>	<u>bekhezaAnEn</u> <u>nakhezaAnEn</u>

Past Progr. Past Habitual Cont.-to-Fact [# 5]	Simple Past [# 6]	Past Part. & Pres.Perfect [# 7]	Past Perfect [# 8]	Past Presumptive [# 9]
<u>mIdId</u>	dId	dIda	dIda bUd	dIda bAsha
<u>mEdOkht</u>	dOkht	dOkhta	dOkhta bUd	dOkhta bAsha
<u>mEfAmAnd</u>	fAmAnd	fAmAnda	fAmAnda bUd	fAmAnda bAsha
<u>mEfAmId</u>	fAmId	fAmIda	fAmIda bUd	fAmIda bAsha
<u>mefrOkht</u>	furOkht	furOkhta	furOkhta bUd	furOkhta bAsha
<u>mEgasht</u>	gasht	gashta	gashta bUd	gashta bAsha
<u>megreft</u>	greft	grefta	grefta bUd	grefta bAsha
<u>mEguft</u>	guft	gufta	gufta bUd	gufta bAsha
<u>mEkad</u>	kad	kada	kada bUd	kada bAsha
<u>mEkashId</u>	kashId	kashIda	kashIda bUd	kashIda bAsha
<u>mEkhAnd</u>	khAnd	khAnda	khAnda bUd	khAnda bAsha
<u>mEkharId</u>	kharId	kharIda	kharIda bUd	kharIda bAsha
<u>mEkhAst</u>	khAst	khAsta	khAsta bUd	khAsta bAsha
<u>mEkhEst</u>	khEst	khEsta	khEsta bUd	khEsta bAsha
<u>mEkhEstAnd</u>	khEstAnd	khEstAnda	khEstAnda bUd	khEstAnda bAsha

Infinitive [# 1]		Simple Pres. Pres. Progr. Future [# 2]	Subjunc- tive [# 3]	Imperative [# 4]	
				Singular	Plural
28. <u>khOrdan</u>	to consume	<u>mEkhura</u>	<u>bukhura</u> <u>nakhura</u>	<u>bukhO</u> <u>nakhO</u>	<u>bukhurEn</u> <u>nakhurEn</u>
29. <u>mAndan</u>	to put, let	<u>mEmAna</u>	<u>bAna</u> <u>namAna</u>	<u>bAn</u> <u>namAn</u>	<u>bAnEn</u> <u>namAnEn</u>
30. <u>pAlIdan</u>	to search, look for	<u>mEpAla</u>	<u>bupAla</u> <u>napAla</u>	<u>bupAl</u> <u>napAl</u>	<u>bupAlEn</u> <u>napAlEn</u>
31. <u>partAftan</u> *	to throw	<u>mEparta</u>		<u>partO</u> <u>napartO</u>	<u>partEn</u> <u>napartEn</u>
32. <u>pUshIdan</u>	to wear, put on	<u>mEpOsha</u>	<u>bupOsha</u> <u>napOsha</u>	<u>bupOsh</u> <u>napOsh</u>	<u>bupOshEn</u> <u>napOshEn</u>
33. <u>raftan</u>	to go, leave	<u>mEra</u>	<u>bura</u> <u>nara</u>	<u>burO</u> <u>narO</u>	<u>burEn</u> <u>narEn</u>
34. <u>rasAndan</u>	to deliver	<u>mErasAna</u>	<u>berasAna</u> <u>narasAna</u>	<u>berasAn</u> <u>narasAn</u>	<u>berasAnEn</u> <u>narasAnEn</u>
35. <u>rasIdan</u>	to arrive, reach	<u>mErasa</u>	<u>berasa</u> <u>narasa</u>	<u>beras</u>	<u>berasEn</u>
36. <u>sAkhtan</u>	to make	<u>mEsAza</u>	<u>besAza</u> <u>nasAza</u>	<u>besAz</u> <u>nasAz</u>	<u>besAzEn</u> <u>nasAzEn</u>
37. <u>shAndan</u>	to put, attach, seat	<u>mEshAna</u>	<u>beshAna</u> <u>nashAna</u>	<u>beshAn</u> <u>nashAn</u>	<u>beshAnEn</u> <u>nashAnEn</u>
38. <u>sharmIdan</u>	to be shy, embar- rassed	<u>mEsharma</u>	<u>besharma</u> <u>nasharma</u>	<u>besharm</u> <u>nasharm</u>	<u>besharmEn</u> <u>nasharmEn</u>
39. <u>shekestan</u>	to get broken	<u>meshkena</u>	<u>beshkena</u> <u>nashkena</u>		
40. <u>shekestAndan</u>	to break, chop	<u>meshkenAna</u>	<u>beshkenAna</u> <u>nashkenAna</u>	<u>beshkenAn</u> <u>nashkenAn</u>	<u>beshkenAnEn</u> <u>nashkenAnEn</u>
41. <u>shenAkhtan</u>	to know, recognize	<u>meshnAsa</u>	<u>beshnAsa</u> <u>nashnAsa</u>		

* For other forms besides those given use andAkhtan (verb # 3).

Past Progr. Past Habitual Cont.-to-Fact [# 5]	Simple Past [# 6]	Past Part. & Pres.Perfect [# 7]	Past Perfect [# 8]	Past Presumptive [# 9]
<u>mEk</u> khOrd	khOrd	khOr <u>da</u>	khOr <u>da</u> bUd	khOr <u>da</u> bAsha
<u>mEm</u> And	mAnd	mAn <u>da</u>	mAn <u>da</u> bUd	mAn <u>da</u> bAsha
<u>mEp</u> AlId	pAl <u>Id</u>	pAl <u>Ida</u>	pAl <u>Ida</u> bUd	pAl <u>Ida</u> bAsha
<u>mEp</u> UshId	pUsh <u>Id</u>	pUsh <u>Ida</u>	pUsh <u>Ida</u> bUd	pUsh <u>Ida</u> bAsha
<u>mEr</u> aft	raft	raft <u>a</u>	raft <u>a</u> bUd	raft <u>a</u> bAsha
<u>mEr</u> asAnd	rasAnd	rasAn <u>da</u>	rasAn <u>da</u> bUd	rasAn <u>da</u> bAsha
<u>mEr</u> asId	ras <u>Id</u>	ras <u>Ida</u>	ras <u>Ida</u> bUd	ras <u>Ida</u> bAsha
<u>mEs</u> akht	sAkht	sAkht <u>a</u>	sAkht <u>a</u> bUd	sAkht <u>a</u> bAsha
<u>mEsh</u> And	shAnd	shAn <u>da</u>	shAn <u>da</u> bUd	shAn <u>da</u> bAsha
<u>mEsh</u> armId	sharm <u>Id</u>	sharm <u>Ida</u>	sharm <u>Ida</u> bUd	sharm <u>Ida</u> bAsha
<u>mesh</u> kest	shekest	shekest <u>a</u>	shekest <u>a</u> bUd	shekest <u>a</u> bAsha
<u>mesh</u> kestAnd	shekest <u>And</u>	shekestAn <u>da</u>	shekestAn <u>da</u> bUd	shekestAn <u>da</u> bAsha
<u>meshn</u> akht	shenAkht	shenAkht <u>a</u>	shenAkht <u>a</u> bUd	shenAkht <u>a</u> bAsha

	I n f i n i t i v e [# 1]	Simple Pres. Pres. Progr. Future [# 2]	Subjunc- tive [# 3]	I m p e r a t i v e [# 4]		
				Singular	Plural	
42.	<u>sheshtan</u>	to sit, live	<u>mIshIna</u>	<u>bIshIna</u> <u>nashIna</u>	<u>bIshI</u> <u>nashI</u>	<u>bIshInEn</u> <u>nashInEn</u>
43.	<u>shudan</u>	to become	<u>mEsha</u>	<u>shawa</u> <u>nasha</u>	<u>sh0</u> <u>nash0</u>	<u>shawEn</u> <u>nashEn</u>
44.	<u>shunIdan</u>	to hear, listen to	<u>meshnawa</u>	<u>beshnawa</u> <u>nashnawa</u>	<u>beshnao</u> <u>nashnao</u>	<u>beshnawEn</u> <u>nashnawEn</u>
45.	<u>shushtan</u>	to wash	<u>mEshOya</u>	<u>bushOya</u> <u>nashOya</u>	<u>bush0i</u> <u>nash0i</u>	<u>bush0En</u> <u>nash0En</u>
46.	<u>sOkhtan</u>	to be burned	<u>mEsOza</u>	<u>busOza</u> <u>nasOza</u>		
47.	<u>sOkhtAndan</u>	to burn (something)	<u>mEsOzAna</u>	<u>busOzAna</u> <u>nasOzAna</u>	<u>busOzAn</u> <u>nasOzAn</u>	<u>busOzAnEn</u> <u>nasOzAnEn</u>
48.	<u>tAnestan</u>	can, to be able	<u>mEtAna</u>	<u>betAna</u> <u>natAna</u>		
49.	<u>tarsIdan</u>	to fear, be afraid	<u>mEtarsa</u>	<u>betarsa</u> <u>natarsa</u>	<u>natars</u>	<u>natarsEn</u>
50.	<u>yAftan</u>	to get, obtain	<u>myAfa</u>	<u>byAfa</u> <u>nayAfa</u>	<u>byAf</u>	<u>byAfEn</u>
51.	<u>zadan</u>	to hit, beat	<u>mEzana</u>	<u>bezana</u> <u>nazana</u>	<u>bezan</u> <u>nazan</u>	<u>bezanEn</u> <u>nazanEn</u>

Past Progr. Past Habitual Cont.-to-Fact [# 5]	Simple Past [# 6]	Past Part. & Pres.Perfect [# 7]	Past Perfect [# 8]	Past Presumptive [# 9]
<u>mEshesht</u>	shesht	sheshta	sheshta bUd	sheshta bAsha
<u>mEshud</u>	shud	shuda	shuda bUd	shuda bAsha
<u>meshnId</u>	shunId	shunIda	shunIda bUd	shunIda bAsha
<u>mEshusht</u>	shusht	shushta	shushta bUd	shushta bAsha
<u>mEsOkht</u>	sOkht	sOkhta	sOkhta bUd	sOkhta bAsha
<u>mEsOkhtAnd</u>	sOkhtAnd	sOkhtAnda	sOkhtAnda bUd	sOkhtAnda bAsha
<u>mEtAnest</u>	tAnest	tAnesta	tAnesta bUd	tAnesta bAsha
<u>mEtarsId</u>	tarsId	tarsIda	tarsIda bUd	tarsIda bAsha
myAft	yAft	yAfta	yAfta bUd	yAfta bAsha
<u>mEzad</u>	zad	zada	zada bUd	zada bAsha

APPENDIX XII

MEASUREMENTS

<u>L I N E A R</u>	<u>English name</u>	<u>Equivalent to</u>
s <u>AntI</u>	centimeter	.3937 inches
m <u>eter</u>	meter	3.2803 feet
k <u>IlO</u> m <u>eter</u>	kilometer	.62 miles
en <u>ch</u>	inch	2.54 centimeters
fo <u>t</u>	foot	30.48 "

Note: ench and fot are not in as common usage as metric measurements, although pipe, for example, is measured in inches rather than in metric equivalents.

L I Q U I D

l <u>itar</u>	liter	1.057	quarts
g <u>Elan</u>	gallon (U.S.)	3.785	liters

D R Y

khar <u>Ar</u>	-	(in Kabul)	1246.	pounds (= 80 s <u>Er</u> = 10 man)
man	maund	"	124.6	" (= 1/10 khar <u>Ar</u> = 8 s <u>Er</u>)
s <u>Er</u>	seer	"	15.6	" (= 1/8 man = 4 ch <u>Arak</u>)
ch <u>Arak</u>	-	"	3.9	" (= 1/4 s <u>Er</u> = 4 pao)
pao	-	"	.975	" (= 1/16 s <u>Er</u> = 4 khurd)
khurd	-	"	.2437	" (= 1/4 pao = 1/64 s <u>Er</u>)
mesq <u>Al</u>	-	"	.01	" (= 1/24 khurd)
k <u>IlO</u>	kilogram		2.2	"

Note: kharAr is used mostly for measuring wood, sawdust or straw.

T E M P E R A T U R E

sAntIgrEd centigrade

Formulas for conversion of temperature from one scale to the other:

$$C^{\circ} \times 9/5 + 32 = F^{\circ}$$

$$F^{\circ} - 32 \times 5/9 = C^{\circ}$$

Some sample conversions are shown in the graph on the right.

C	100°	-----	212°	F
E	40°	-----	104°	A
N	37°	-----	98.6°	H
T	25°	-----	77°	R
I	20°	-----	68°	E
G	20°	-----	68°	N
R	10°	-----	50°	H
A	5°	-----	41°	E
D	5°	-----	41°	I
E	0°	-----	32°	T

APPENDIX XIII

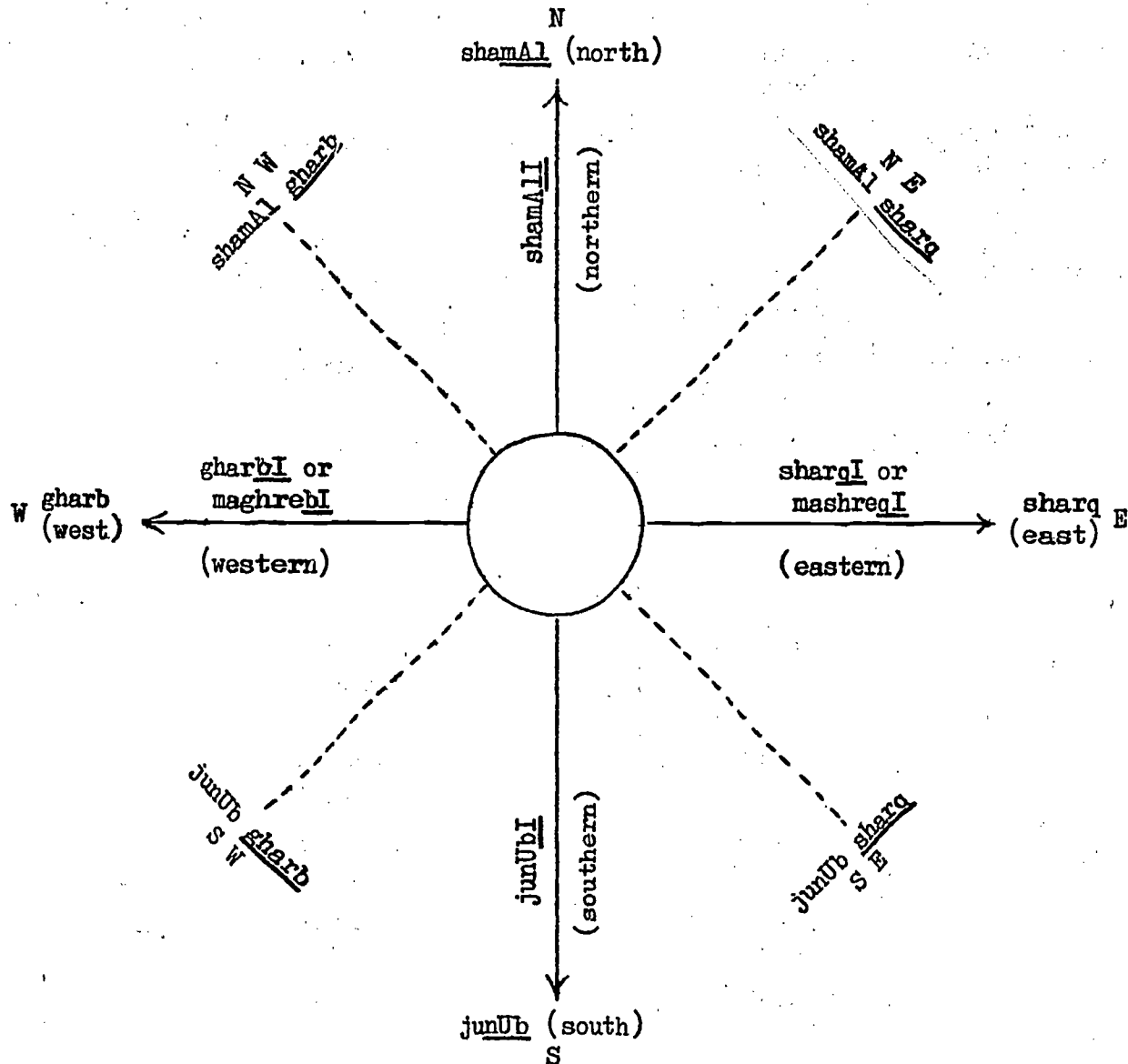
AFGHAN HOLIDAYS

Afghan date	Dari name	=	Commemorating	Days
1st of (H)amal	naorOz	March 21	1st day of Spring (= New Year's Day)	1
6th of jaoZA	jashen e esteqlAl	May 27	Independence Day	1
1st, 2nd & 3rd of sumbula	jashen e esteqlAl	August 23, 24 & 25	Independence Day, actual- ly celebrated at the time of 'Jashen', the Afghan National Fair	3
9th of sumbula	jashen e pashtUnestAn	August 31	Pashtunistan Day	1
18th of sumbula	tAsIs e shOrA e melI	September 9	Parliament (inauguration) Day	1
23rd of mIzAn	jashen e nejAt	October 15	Victory Celebration (when King Nadir Shah took over the throne from [H]abIbulla, bachE saqao)	1
*	dA e muharram (10th of muharram)	*	The assassination of Muhammad's grandson, Hussain, and his family	1
*	maolUd	*	The birth (and also death) of Muhammad	1
*	awal e ramazAn	*	The first day of Ramazan, the Month of Fasting	1
*	Id e ramazAn (= Id e fetr)	*	The conclusion of the Month of Fasting	3
*	Id e qurbAn (= Id e azHA)	*	The sacrifice of Abra- ham's son— Two lunar months after Id e ramazAn—Also called 'The Big Eid'	4
				—
				18

Note: Holidays marked with * are based on the Muslim lunar calendar and therefore change from year to year.

APPENDIX XIV

DIRECTIONS OF THE COMPASS



1. The word mashregI (eastern) is sometimes used to refer to the city of jeLALAbAd or its province, nanGARHAR.
2. The word junUbI (southern) may refer to the province of paktyA.
3. The word shamAlI (northern) is sometimes applied to the green valleys north of Kabul, particularly in the province of parwAn.

INDEX I

LIST OF SOUNDS PRACTICED IN PRONUNCIATION DRILLS

(References are to page numbers)

/a/, 121, 159	/khsh/, 189	/s/, 203, 216
/A/, 121, 174, 203, 216	/kht/, 133	/sh/, 216, 244
/ai/, 54	/khy/, 42	/shk/, 255
/Ai/, 54	/l/, 29	/shm/, 279
/ao [aw]/, 189	/lkh/, 159	/sht/, 279
/b/, 159	/m/, 303	/sm/, 267
/by/, 42	/mr/, 303	/sp/, 216
/ch/, 189	/my/, 42	/st/, 244
/d/, 17	/n/, 255	/sy/, 42
/e/, 29, 42, 108, 231	/ng/, 255	/t/, 17
/E/, 17, 42, 159	/o/, 203, 231, 244, 255	/u/, 93, 108, 216, 244
/f/, 290	/oi/, 133	/U/, 93, 174, 255
/ft/, 174	/p/, 159	/Ui/, 147
/fz/, 290	/py/, 42	/w/, 267
/g/, 54, 93, 121, 147	/q/, 42, 54, 108, 121	/y/, 279
/gh/, 79, 121, 133	/r/, 29	/z/, 203, 244
/ghz/, 203	/rd/, 18	/zh/, 231
/gr/, 147	/rf/, 290	/zy/, 42
/H/, 174	/rg/, 79	
/I/, 17, 29	/rgh/, 93	
/j/, 189	/rk/, 42	
/k/, 42, 66, 79, 147	/rkh/, 66	
/kh/, 66, 93, 108, 133	/rm/, 303	
/khch/, 189	/rq/, 54	
/khs/, 108	/rs/, 29	
	/rsh/, 267	
	/rt/, 29	

INDEX II

LIST OF DARI WORDS AND PHRASES USED IN THE LESSONS

(References are to page numbers, in most cases to the page where the word is listed as a vocabulary item for that lesson rather than to the particular page of the lesson where it first occurs)

A

- a, 24, 74, 210
 -A, 24
 abda, 61, 324
 AbI, 250
 abr, 285
 Adam, 49
 AdI, 250
 Adras, 183
 Aenda, 102
 afghAnI, 128
 aft, 37, 324
 afta, 87
 aftAd, 102, 324
 aftAdan, 183
 aftao, 198
 aftawAr, 225
 aga, 183
 aga nE, 225
 agarchI--see garchI
 AghA, 61
 Aina, 142
 Ainak, 250
 Akher, 128
 aks, 142
 aks greftan, 183
 AlA azrat, 274
 alAida, 154
 alAida kadan, 297
 Ale, 74
 almArI--see anwArI
 -Am, 37
 Amadan, 74
 (H)amal, 274
 amEsha, 116
 amI/amU, 310
 amkAr, 142
 amrAe, 87
 amsAya, 297
 amshIra, 24
 -an, 24
 andAkhtan, 154
 andAza, 225
 angUr, 297
 anOz, 238
 anwArI, 24
 ao, 37
 aodAn, 198
 aogAr, 198
 aoghAnI--see afghAnI
 aolAd, 24
 aolI, 49
 aqalan, 129
 aqrab, 274
 ar(-), 74, 225
 ar dU, 74
 arakat kadan, 285
 ArAm, 310
 ArUsI kadan, 250
 arzAn, 116
 asad, 274
 AsAn, 87
 Ashpaz, 24
 Ashpaz-khAna, 49
 asht, 37, 324
 ashtAd, 102, 324
 asp, 225
 asrI, 225
 AstA, 184
 Atesh, 184
 atman, 310
 aw e jOsh, 74
 aw e jOsh dAdagi, 74
 awA, 116
 awAI, 262
 awAkhUrI raftan, 210
 awal, 142
 AwAl, 184
 awAr kadan, 297
 Awurdan, 74
 az (), 49, 61
 az dest dAdan, 310
 az I/U, 102
 az I bAd, 198
 az I/U khAter, 154
 az khAter e (ke), 154
 az kI, 61
 az pEsh ____, 168
 az rA e, 238
 az rUi, 262
 (H)azAr, 102, 324
 Azer, 168
 azhda, 61, 324

B

- ba, 102
 ba-bAd, 274
 ba khair, 102
 ba khyAl ____, 102
 ba shart e ke, 184
 ba wakht, 154
 bAba, 87
 bacha, 24
 bad, 49
 bAd, 88, 262, 274
 bAd az, 198
 baHAr, 198
 bain ul melali, 262
 bAisekel, 129
 baja, 102
 baks, 61
 bAlA, 210
 bAlA shudan, 210
 bAlapOsh, 49
 bale (baLE), 24
 bAmAn e khuda, 61
 bamba, 297
 bAnk e melI, 262

barAbar (-e-), 225
 barAmadan, 142
 bArAn, 142
 bare, 88
 bare chI, 88
 barf, 238
 bArIdan, 184
 barq, 239
 barqI, 285
 bas, 88
 bas kadan, 285
 basta, 49
 basta kadan, 74
 bAwar dAshtan, 262
 bAwujUd e, 250
 bAyad, 184, 295
 bAz, 102
 bAzAr, 37
 bAzI kadan, 211
 bAzU, 274
 bE, 225
 bE az U, 286
 bEchAra, 168
 beJUn e, 250
 bEgham, 250
 bEkAr, 198
 bEkAra, 262
 beland, 154
 belandI, 310
 belkul, 250
 berenj, 129
 beshqAb, 61
 bestara, 262
 besyAr, 49
 besyAr kam, 116
 bIr-0-bAr, 239
 bIrU(n-e-), 211
 bIst, 61, 324
 bOrdan, 88, 295
 brAdar, 24
 bubakhshEn, 88
 bUdan, 24
 bufarmAEn, 88
 bUi, 286
 bukhArI, 61
 bUra, 129
 burIdan, 297
 bUt, 49
 buzkashI, 225
 byAdar--see brAdar

C

-cha, 211
 chA, 310
 chAi, 37
 chAi-sOb, 116
 chAijOsh, 61
 chAinak, 37
 chAlAn kadan, 297
 (-) chan(d), 102, 262
 chendIn, 239
 chaokI, 24
 chap, 102
 chapa, 239
 chaparkat, 129
 chAr, 37, 324
 chArda, 61, 324
 chArrAI, 239
 chArshambE, 129
 chAsht, 116
 chatal, 154
 chel, 102, 324
 cheqa, 154
 cherA, 154
 cherA ke, 211
 cherA nE, 184
 cherAgh, 24
 cherk, 116
 cheshem, 184
 chetOr, 49
 chI, 37, 100, 135, 223
 chI Al dArEn, 37
 chI wakht, 102
 chIz, 74
 chIze, 154
 chOb, 129
 chUbi, 311
 chUcha, 211
 chuqur, 297

D

da (dA), 37
 da, 49
 da I nezdIkyA, 250
 da wakht e, 198
 dabal, 116
 dAdan, 74
 dafa, 88
 dafatan, 116
 daftar, 61

dAgh, 88
 dAkhel shudan, 250
 dAktar, 24
 dalAk, 251
 dAlar, 129
 dAlEz, 37
 dalw, 274
 dam kadan, 297
 dAman, 251
 dAna, 103
 dandAn, 239
 dAnestan, 198
 daqIqa (daq), 142
 dar dAdan, 311
 darakhv, 251
 darAz, 225
 darAz kashIdan, 225
 darAzI, 311
 dard kadan, 239
 darI, 103
 darjan, 129
 dars, 116
 dars dAdan, 251
 darU(n-e-), 211
 darwAza, 24
 darya, 211
 dAsh, 311
 dAshtan, 37
 dast--see dest
 dawA, 49
 dAwat, 142
 dAwat kadan, 142
 dE, 37
 dEg, 184
 dega, 168, 191, 219, 223
 del, 184
 delchasp, 297
 delchaspI, 103
 deq, 103, 136, 160, 245,
 260
 dEr, 168
 dEr kadan, 286
 derIshI, 184
 dest, 103
 dest rasIdan, 184
 dest zadan, 168
 destgIr, 286
 destkash, 311
 dEwAl, 37
 dI-, 116
 dIdan, 74

dIgar, 116
 dOkAn, 49
 dOkAndAr, 116
 dOkhtan, 184
 dOst, 88
 dU (du), 24, 324
 dukAn--see dOkAn
 dukAndAr--see dOkAndAr
 dukhtar, 24
 dunyA, 168
 dUr, 154
 durust, 251
 dushambE, 129
 duwAzda, 61, 324

E

-e(-), 49, 129
 Ech, 37, 149, 180
 Echkas, 154
 Ech-wakht, 116
 ejAza, 74
 -em, 62
 em-, 88
 -Em, 24
 -emA, 62
 emte(H)An, 142
 emte(H)An kadan, 286
 emzA, 168
 emzA kadan, 211
 -En, 24
 enA, 24
 engliSI, 239
 enshAllA, 154
 entezAr kashIdan, 211
 eqa, 154
 ErOgrAm, 88
 esAb, 225
 esAb kadan, 286
 -esh, 62
 -eshAn, 62
 eshAra, 142
 eshArE mA bad, 142
 essa, 297
 estAd kadan, 211
 estAd shudan, 251
 estEmAl kadan, 142
 esterAat kadan, 168
 -et, 62
 -etAn, 62
 -etu(r), 103

Ewaz e, 251

F

fAida, 74
 fAida kadan, 297
 faisala kadan, 225
 fAltU, 211
 fAmAndan, 262
 fAmIdan, 88
 fAmIl, 169
 faoran, 286
 faot shudan, 286
 (-) fardA (-), 74, 88
 farq, 225
 farq dAshtan, 225
 farq kadan, 225
 fArsI, 184
 farz kadan, 184
 fazl e khudA, 49
 feker kadan, 129
 fElan, 262
 furOkhtan, 198

G

gap, 142
 gap zadan, 103
 garAj, 211
 garchI, 286
 garm, 211
 garm kadan, 286
 garmI, 169
 garzandOI, 262
 gashtan, 103
 gElAs, 62
 gerang, 274
 ghair e, 251
 ghAl-ma-ghAl, 198
 ghalat, 286
 gharIb, 169
 gOgerd, 50
 gOsh kadan, 297
 gOsht, 184
 gOsht e gao, 129
 gOsht e gOspand, 129
 greftan, 129
 guftan, 88
 gul, 24
 gul kadan, 88
 gul-khAna, 50

guldAn(I), 198
 gum kadan, 143
 gum shudan, 169
 gumruk, 239
 gunA, 286
 gushna, 239
 guzAra (shudan), 225
 guzashta, 117

H

Words occasionally pronounced with an initial /H/ are listed in this index under the first vowel sound following the /H/, q.v.

I

-I, 24, 129, 311
 I, 37
 Id, 198
 Inja, 50
 IsawI, 274

J

jAda, 239
 jadI, 274
 jagra kadan, 297
 jAi, 37
 jAkAt, 226
 jam kadan, 198
 (-) jAn, 74, 332
 jantari, 274
 jaozA, 274
 jArU kadan, 74
 jashen, 274
 jenAza, 311
 jerAb, 50
 jOI, 286
 jOr, 117
 jOr kadan, 226
 jOra, 50
 jOsh, 169, 273
 jumla, 184
 jumma, 129
 juwAb, 169
 juwAb dAdan, 169
 juwAn, 286

K

kachAlU, 24
 kada, 226
 kadan, 75
 kaFI, 103
 kAghaz, 37
 kAghazI, 311
 kai, 274
 kaj, 298
 kAlA, 62
 kalAn, 50
 kalIsA, 129
 kam, 117
 kame, 198
 kompanI, 311
 kAmyAb, 184
 kAr, 37
 kAr___ bUdan, 62
 kAr dAshtan, 38
 kAr kadan, 75
 kArD, 251
 kArIgar, 117
 kAsa, 298
 kase, 169
 kashIdan, 199
 kAshke, 184
 katAra, 311
 katI, 88
 ke, 117, 135, 285
 kEk, 129
 kElI, 24
 kelkIn, 25
 kerA, 117
 ketAb, 38
 ketAbcha, 211
 khabar(A), 199
 khabar dAshtan, 262
 khabar kadan, 211
 khafa, 298
 khai, 311
 khair as, 38
 khair(Iy)at, 50
 khAk, 239
 khAkbaD, 274
 khAkpur, 298
 khalAs, 75
 khalAs kadan, 88
 khali kadan, 239
 khaliifa, 211
 khalta, 311

khAm, 274
 (-) khAna, 25, 44
 khanda kadan, 143
 khAndan, 143
 khAnum, 38
 khao (bUdan/shudan), 117
 khao greftan, 154
 khao kadan, 75
 khar, 286
 kharAb, 211
 kharAb kadan, 143
 kharbUza, 239
 kharch, 226
 kharch kadan, 226
 khArej, 251
 khArejI, 251
 kharIdan, 75
 khAstan, 211
 khat, 154
 khAt, 286
 khatar, 38
 khayAt, 239
 khayAtI, 311
 khazAn, 199
 khEshA, 262
 khesht, 251
 kheshtI, 311
 khEstan, 117
 khEstAndan, 262
 kh0, 311
 khOrdan, 117
 khu, 169
 khUb, 50
 khUbesh, 155
 khUbI, 311
 khud, 199
 khudA, 50
 khudA (H)afez, 62
 khudA nA khAsta, 239
 khunuk, 211
 khurd, 50
 khush, 117
 khush___ Amadan, 199
 khush AmadEn, 117
 khush dAshtan, 199
 khush kadan, 103
 khushbUi, 311
 khushk, 274
 khushk kadan, 239
 khusUsan, 274
 khwAr, 38

kI, 62
 kI10, 129
 kIra, 75
 k0, 62
 k0ch kashIdan, 239
 k0cha, 275
 k0mak kadan, 88
 k0na, 103
 k0rs, 286
 k0shesh kadan, 88
 k0tA, 226
 kUchI, 239
 kudAm (-), 155
 kujA, 50
 kulcha, 262
 kull e, 169
 kulla, 50
 kurtI, 184

L

lab, 211
 lAeq, 298
 lAken, 75
 lAzem, 38
 lughat, 143
 lutfan, 88

M

ma, 25
 mA, 25, 88
 maAsh, 226
 (mA)bain e, 226
 machem, 262
 mAdar, 38
 mAfUz, 169
 maghAza, 117
 maghbUl, 50
 maghbUlI, 311
 mA(H)Ana, 226
 mA1, 211
 maida, 129
 maida kadan, 129
 maidAn e awAI, 143
 majbUr, 184
 mAjed--see masjed
 majles, 226
 mAkam kadan, 286
 makhsUs, 286
 maktab, 62

maktUb, 62
 mAlUm kadan, 239
 mAlUm shudan, 226
 mAlUmAt, 211
 mAlUmdAr, 226
 mamlakat, 169
 mAnA, 143
 mAnda, 143, 155
 mAndan, 103
 maqsad, 262
 mAqUl, 169
 mara, 75
 mArA, 75
 mard, 38
 mardAna, 262
 mardum, 129
 mariz, 117
 marizi, 226
 markazi, 239
 mArkEt, 129
 mAs, 311
 masalan, 298
 mash(H)Ur, 251
 mAshIn, 226
 masjid, 130
 maska, 103
 mAsUl, 239
 mAsUliyat, 199
 mAtao, 298
 matlab, 262
 mazadAr, 117
 mazmUn, 286
 melyUn, 103
 mEmAn, 130
 mErabAn, 311
 mErabAnI kadan, 239
 mesl e, 103
 mestar, 62
 meter, 130
 mEwa, 143
 mEz, 25
 mItar, 130
 mIzAn, 275
 mOtar, 38
 muallem, 25
 mubArak, 184
 mu(H)em, 275
 mukamal shudan, 286
 mulAqAt kadan, 199
 mumken, 184
 munAseb, 199

muqAbel e, 262
 murch, 211
 murgh, 226
 mushkel, 88
 musulmAn, 275
 mutAbeg e, 251
 mutasefAna, 263

N

na (...na), 25, 152,
 164, 165
 na-khair, 25
 nA-bInA, 155
 nA-ghalatI, 275
 nA-jOr, 155
 nA-shushta, 155
 nA-wakht, 155
 nafar, 75
 najAr, 311
 najArI, 311
 nakhcha--see naqsha
 nal, 251
 nalbakI, 75
 nAm, 62
 namak, 211
 namUna, 251
 nAn, 38
 nAn e chAsht, 88
 nAn e shao, 103
 nao, 88
 naorOz, 143
 naqsha, 251
 narm, 226
 natiJa, 240
 nawad, 103, 324
 nAzuk, 275
 nE, 25
 negA kadan, 169
 neshAn dAdan, 184
 neweshta kadan, 75
 neweshta shudan, 275
 nezdik (-e-), 226, 236
 nIm (-e-), 143
 nO, 38, 324
 nObat, 311
 nOkar, 25
 nOsh e jAn (kunEn), 89
 nukhs--see nuqs
 numra, 103
 nuqs, 251

nuzda, 62, 324

O

O, 38, 89
 Otal, 38

P

padar, 38
 padar-O-mAdar, 62
 pAdshA, 169
 pAi, 226
 pAi-takht, 199
 paidA kadan, 169
 paidA shudan, 89
 paisa, 38
 pAk, 50
 pAk kadan, 75
 pAkAt, 263
 pakhch (pakhsh), 103
 palao, 311
 pAlIdan, 240
 pAlU (-e-), 240, 259
 panj, 38, 324
 panja, 251
 panjshambE, 130
 pAnzda, 62, 324
 pao, 75
 pAr-sAl, 117
 parda, 25
 parI-rOz, 117
 pArsal, 103
 partO/partEn, 312
 parwA na dAra, 38
 pas (-e-), 89, 155, 211
 pas kadan, 117
 pasAn(tar), 155
 pashtO, 240
 patIUn, 251
 pAyAn, 212
 pAyAn kadan, 212
 pAyAn shudan, 212
 pEghla, 38
 pensel, 38
 pErAn, 240
 pEsh (-e-), 117, 169
 pEsh az, 199
 pEsh e rUi, 263
 pEshAmad, 199

pEsh(tar), 155
 pInjA, 103, 324
 pIr, 286
 pIshIn, 117
 pLAn, 212
 pOlls, 169
 pOst, 155
 pOst kadan, 155
 pOsta-khAna, 50, 148
 prektes kadan, 312
 prEshAn, 286
 prOzha, 226
 pukhta, 199
 pukhta kadan, 226
 pul, 226
 pUl, 117
 pUl e syA, 130
 pUldAr, 117
 pur, 275
 pur kadan, 199
 pUra, 155
 pursAn kadan, 199
 pUshIdan, 75
 pusht e (sar e), 263
 put kadan, 298
 pyAda raftan, 143
 pyAla, 38
 pyAnO, 263
 pyAz, 130

Q

qabUl kadan, 286
 qadImI, 275
 qaichI, 298
 qaichI kadan, 298
 qalam, 38
 qAlIn, 117
 qAlIncha, 212
 qamarI, 275
 qAnUn, 298
 qaomA, 263
 qaos, 275
 qAr shudan, 263
 qarz dAdan, 286
 qarz greftan, 251
 qarzdAr, 286
 qAshuq, 62
 qAwa, 62
 qawI, 287
 qerAn, 130

qesm, 103
 qessa, 298
 qImat, 117, 122
 qImatI, 118
 qulf, 50
 qulf kadan, 184

R

-ra--see -a, 74
 rA, 185
 rAdyO, 38
 rafIq, 89, 215
 raftan, 75
 rAjEba, 89
 ramazAn, 275
 rang, 62
 rang kadan, 212
 ranga, 62
 rasAndan, 263
 rasId, 298
 rasIdan, 155
 rasml, 298
 rAs(t), 103
 rAstI, 143, 240
 rastUrAn, 89
 rawAj, 226
 rawAn kadan, 143
 rEzesh kadan, 185
 rOshan, 185
 rOshan kadan, 240
 rOz (-ba-rOz), 75, 226
 rOz-tamAm, 212, 222
 rOza greftan, 275
 rOzAna, 226
 rU-ba-rU, 103
 rUipAk, 263
 rukhsat(I), 212
 rup(ey)a, 130

S

sabA, 240
 saber kadan, 212
 sAbUn, 143
 sabz, 251
 sad, 103, 324
 sadA, 155
 sadA kadan, 199
 sAda, 298
 sAeb, 62, 335

sAf, 298
 safa, 50
 safar kadan, 199
 safEd, 50
 sAfI, 89
 sAfI kadan, 75
 safIr, 240
 sag, 62
 saI, 169
 sail, 298
 sail kadan, 143
 sakht, 240
 sAkht, 275
 sAkhtan, 185
 sAl, 89
 salAm (AlEkum), 50
 salAmat, 185
 sAlAna, 227
 sAlgera, 275
 sAlUn, 38
 sAmAn, 263
 sAneya, 143
 sang, 251
 sangI, 312
 saodA, 118
 saor, 275
 sar (-e-), 50, 263
 sar az, 240
 sar az I/U-Am, 287
 sar e kAr, 75
 sar tayAr kadan, 251
 sarAi, 240
 sarak, 155
 saratAn, 275
 sard, 89
 sarpOsh, 298
 sarwEs, 89
 sAt, 50
 sAt tEr shudan/bUdan, 240
 sAtakI, 227
 satel, 240
 sawAl, 143
 sawAl kadan, 155
 sE, 38, 324
 sEb, 169
 sefArat, 50
 segret, 199
 se(H)at, 130
 senf, 155
 sEr, 130
 sEshambE, 130

sEzda, 63, 324
 shadId, 251
 shafA, 185
 shafA-khAna, 50
 shAgerd, 25
 shakhsI, 298
 shambE, 130
 shamsI, 275
 shAndan, 263
 shAnzda, 63, 324
 shAnzda-pULI, 130
 shao, 89
 shaoq, 298
 shAr, 38
 sharmIdan, 252
 shash, 39, 324
 shast, 104, 324
 shawakI, 227
 shawar, 63
 shAyad, 185, 295
 shekAyat kadan, 252
 shekestan, 143
 shekestAndan, 263
 shenAkhtan, 169
 sherkat, 240
 shernI, 63
 sheshtan, 169
 shIr, 89
 shIrIn, 169
 shIryakh, 312
 shOba, 263
 shudan, 75
 shukur, 50
 shumA, 25
 shumAra, 75
 shunIdan, 89
 shurO kadan, 155
 shurO shudan, 143
 shushtan, 75
 sI, 104, 324
 sInumA, 155
 sOb, 118
 sObakI, 227
 sOkhtan, 185
 sOkhtAndan, 263
 sU, 312
 subuk, 227
 sumbula, 275
 surkh, 169
 sust, 287
 syA, 130

T

tA, 98, 104
 tA shudan, 75
 tA wakht e ke (...na),
 287
 tabdIl kadan, 75
 tabdIl shudan, 263
 tAbestAn, 199
 taip kadan, 287
 tair, 212
 taklif shudan, 275
 taksI, 240
 taIkx, 298
 tamAm, 212
 tAmIr, 275
 tanA, 130
 tAnestan, 169
 tang, 275
 tAnk, 275
 teqrIban, 155
 taqsIm kadan, 298
 tar, 275
 taraf e, 104, 291
 tArIk, 170
 tArIkx, 312
 tArIkxI, 298
 tarkArI, 143
 tarsIdan, 287
 tartIb kadan, 287
 tashakur, 50
 tashnAb, 39
 tashnAb kadan, 75
 tawaludI, 275
 tawaquf dAshtan/kadan/
 shudan, 212
 tAwIl-khAna, 50
 tayAr, 104
 tayAr kadan, 76
 tayAra, 199
 tayArI, 312
 tAZa, 118
 tefel, 25
 tekes e pOsta, 275
 tekka, 130
 tekrAr kadan, 130
 tekrAr shudan, 276
 tEl e khAk, 298
 tEl e petrOl, 298
 telefUn, 143
 telefUn kadan, 89

telegrAf, 312
 tEr kadan, 263
 tEr shudan, 240
 tEz, 227
 tIm, 298
 tO(H)fa, 312
 tOp, 118
 tU, 25
 tukhum, 130
 tura (tUra), 76
 tursh, 312
 tushna, 240

U

U, 25, 39
 ukUmat, 143
 -um, 25
 -um (-wum, -yum), 143
 ummEd, 185
 umUman, 118
 umUmI, 212
 umur, 252
 unA, 25
 unAra, 76
 unja, 51
 uqa, 155
 Ura, 76
 Ush kadan, 185
 Ush___ taraf/sar e ___
 bAsha, 212
 ushtuk, 212
 UshyAr, 170
 (H)Ut, 276
 utAq, 25
 utAq e khao, 51
 utAq e nAn, 51
 uttU kadan, 170
 utu(r), 104

W

wA, 39
 wAda dAdan, 299
 wakht e ke, 199, 247
 wakht(ar), 39, 155
 wAlEkum asalAm, 51
 wAlI, 240
 wAra, 76
 -wArI, 104
 watan, 263

[Index II]

wAz, 51
 wAz kadan, 76
 wazIfa, 287
 wazIr, 199
 welAyat, 240
 wezArat, 155

Y

yA (...yA), 39, 170
 yAd__ bUdan, 155
 yAd dAdan, 287
 yAd-dAsht, 263
 yAd dAshtan, 263
 yAd greftan, 185
 yAd kadan, 312
 yAd__ raftan, 170
 yAf(t) shudan, 76
 yAftan, 240
 yagAn, 118
 yagjAi, 199
 yak (yag), 25, 324
 yakh, 287
 yakh zadan, 252
 yakI, 99, 124
 yakshambE, 130
 yAne, 212
 yaqIn dAshtan, 240
 yAzda, 63, 324

Z

zadan, 143
 zAe kadan, 299
 zaIf, 287
 zAmat dAdan, 199
 zamIn, 25
 zan, 39
 zanAna, 263
 zara, 312
 zard, 299
 zardak, 130
 zarf, 63
 zargar, 264
 zarUr(I), 170
 zelzela, 252
 zemestAn, 199
 zenda, 185
 zendagI, 264
 zendagI kadan, 170

zEr e, 51
 zInA, 39
 zubAn, 170
 zUt (zUd), 118
 zUt shudan, 185
 zyAt (zyAd), 200

Total vocabulary in
 Dari = 1,003 entries,
 not counting alterna-
 tive pronunciations.

INDEX III

LIST OF ENGLISH WORDS AND PHRASES USED IN THE LESSONS

(References are to page numbers, in most cases to the page where the word is listed as a vocabulary item for that lesson rather than to the particular page of the lesson where it first occurs)

A

- a, 25
 a-, 129, 297
 able, 169, 298
 about, 89, 155
 above, 210
 abroad, 251
 accept, 286
 accidentally, 275
 according to, 251, 262
 account, 225
 accounts (to take, do ___), 286
 accustomed (to), 250
 ache, 239
 addition (in ___ to), 251
 address, 183
 aerogramme, 88
 Afghan, 102, 128
 Afghani, 96, 128
 afraid (to be ___), 287
 after, 155, 198, 211, 263
 afternoon, 116, 117
 afterwards, 88, 89, 155
 again, 89, 102
 age, 210, 252
 agency, 311
 ago, 117
 agree (to), 286
 ahead, 117, 155
 ahead (straight ___), 103
 aid, 88
 air, 116, 262
 air (by ___), 262
 air letter, 88
 airplane, 199
 airport, 143
 alight, 75
 alive, 185
 all, 212
 all-, 74, 169
 all right, 38, 50, 169, 251, 311
 alley, 275
 allow, 103, 190
 almost, 155
 alone, 130
 along with, 87, 88
 already, 155
 also, 37
 alter, 75
 although, 250, 286
 always, 116
 ambassador, 240
 amount (small___), 312
 an, 25
 ancient, 275
 and, 38
 angry (to become ___), 263
 anniversary, 275
 annual, 227
 another, 168
 answer, 169
 antique, 275
 anybody, 154
 anyhow, 286
 anything, 154
 anyway, 286
 apart from, 251
 a piece, 129, 297
 appear (to be), 226
 apple, 169
 appointment (have an ___ with), 199
 apprentice, 25
 appropriate, 199
 approximately, 100, 155
 April/May, 275
 argue, 297
 arise, 117
 arm, 274
 arrange, 287
 arrive, 155
 arrive (cause to ___), 263
 article, 286
 artisan, 211
 artless, 298
 as, 104
 as long as, 287
 as much as, 225
 as soon as, 224
 ascend, 210
 ask, 88, 199
 ask for, 211
 asleep, 117
 assemble, 198
 assembly, 226
 assignment, 37
 assist, 88
 assistant, 335
 at, 49
 at all, 37
 at home, 58
 at least, 129
 at the time of, 198
 atom, 312
 attach, 263
 attempt, 88
 attendance (in ___), 168
 attention (to pay ___), 185, 297
 August/September, 275
 automobile, 38
 autumn, 199
 available, 89

avenue, 239
 awaken, 262
 aware of, 185
 away, 309

B

baby, 25
 back, 89, 102
 back (in ___ of), 263
 back (to move ___), 117
 backward, 239
 bad, 49, 211
 bag, 263, 311
 baggage, 263
 balcony, 7
 ball, 118
 bank, 211
 barber, 251
 bargain, 122, 123, 297
 batch, 129
 bath, 39
 bathe, 75
 bathroom, 39
 be, 75
 bear, 88
 beat, 143
 beautiful, 50
 beauty, 311
 because (of), 117, 154,
 211
 become, 75
 bed, 129
 bed (wrong side of ___),
 234
 bedding, 262
 bedroom, 51
 beef, 129
 before, 155, 199
 begin, 143, 155
 beginning from, 240
 behavior, 199
 behind, 263
 believe, 262
 belong(ing) to, 49, 169,
 304, 311
 bench, 24
 beneath, 212
 benefit, 74, 297
 benzine, 298
 beside, 240

besides, 251
 best, 155
 better, 155
 between, 226
 bicycle, 129
 big, 50
 birth, 275
 biscuit, 262
 bit (little ___), 117, 312
 bitter, 298
 black, 130
 blessed, 184
 blind, 155
 bloom, 88
 blouse, 240
 blue, 250
 board (get on ___), 210
 body, 74
 boiled, 74
 boiling, 74, 169
 book, 38
 booklet, 211
 borrow, 251
 boss, 211
 both, 74
 bother, 199, 275
 bothered (to be ___),
 275
 boulevard, 239
 bowl, 298
 boy, 24
 bread, 38
 break, 129, 143, 263
 breakfast, 116
 brick, 251, 311
 bridge, 226
 briefcase, 61
 bright, 170, 185, 227
 bring, 74
 broken (to get ___), 143
 brother, 24
 bucket, 240
 building, 275
 bunch, 129
 bundle, 129
 bureau, 263
 burn, 185, 263
 bus, 89
 business, 311
 business firm, 240, 311
 busy, 38

but, 75
 butter, 103
 buy, 75, 129
 by, 49, 102, 104, 168, 262
 by all means, 184, 310
 by mistake, 275
 by the way, 240
 by way of, 238

C

cablegram, 312
 cake, 129
 calendar, 274
 call, 88, 89, 96, 199, 211
 can, 169
 candy, 63
 cannon, 118
 cap, 50
 capable, 298
 capital city, 199
 car, 38
 care, 38
 care (God's), 102
 carefree, 250
 careful, 185
 carpenter, 311
 carpentry, 311
 carpet, 117, 212
 carrot, 130
 carry, 88
 case (in ___), 183
 case (in that ___), 311
 catch (a cold), 185
 cease, 310
 celebration, 198, 347
 central, 239
 certain, 240
 certainly, 310
 chair, 24
 change, 75, 129, 130, 263
 cheap, 116
 chicken, 226
 child, 212
 choose, 103
 chop, 263
 Christian [adj.], 274
 church, 129
 cigarette, 199
 cinema, 155
 city, 38

- class(room), 155
 clean, 50, 75
 clear, 117, 298
 clerk, 335
 clever, 170
 climate, 116
 climb, 210
 clock, 50
 close, 74, 226
 close-fitting, 275
 closed, 49
 closet, 24
 cloth, 130
 clothes, 62
 cloudiness, 285
 coat, 49, 184
 coffee, 62
 cold, 89, 211
 cold (to catch ____),
 185
 cold (to feel ____), 304
 colleague, 142
 collect, 198
 color, 62, 212
 colored, 62
 come, 74
 coming, 102
 company, 130, 240, 311
 compelled, 184
 complain, 252
 complete, 88, 212, 286
 completed, 75
 completely, 155, 250
 compound, 240
 concentrate, 120
 concern, 38
 concerned, 286
 concerning, 89
 conclude, 233
 conclusion, 240
 condition (in good ____),
 50
 condition (on ____ that),
 184
 confidence, 262
 congratulations, 184
 consider, 129, 198
 considerate, 311
 construction, 275
 consume, 117
 container, 198
 continually, 82
 continue, 222
 conversation, 142
 cook, 24, 226
 cooked, 199
 cookie, 262
 cooking pot, 184
 corner, 239
 correct, 103, 169, 251,
 226
 courtyard, 49
 cover, 298
 covering, 25
 co-worker, 142
 craftsman, 211
 cramped, 275
 crooked, 298
 crowd, 239
 cup, 38
 cupboard, 24
 cure, 185
 curtain, 25
 custom, 226
 customs (tax), 239
 customhouse, 239
 cut, 297, 298
 deep, 297
 definitely, 310
 definition, 143
 delay, 212, 286
 delicate, 275
 delicious, 117
 deliver, 263
 department, 263, 333
 Deputy Minister, 334
 descend, 212
 desire, 182, 183, 294, 298
 desk, 25
 dessert, 63
 die, 286
 difference, 225
 different, 225, 296
 difficult, 88
 dim, 287
 dining room, 51
 dinner, 103
 direction(s), 104, 312,
 348
 directly, 174, 195, 196
 Director, 335
 Director General, 335
 dirt, 239
 dirty, 116, 154, 155, 298
 discontinue, 285
 dish, 63
 dismiss, 169
 dissertation, 286
 distant, 154
 distressed, 286
 distribute, 298
 ditch, 286
 divide, 298
 do, 75
 doctor, 24
 dog, 62
 dollar, 129
 donkey, 286
 door, 24
 down (get ____), 75
 down (go, put ____), 212
 down(stairs), 212
 drape, 25
 draw, 199
 drawing, 251
 dress, 240
 drink, 117
 driver (bus, truck ____), 211

D

drowsy, 154
dry, 239, 274
during, 198
dust, 75, 239
dustcloth, 89
dusty, 298
dusty wind, 274
dwell, 169, 170

E

each, 74
earlier, 155
early, 155
earth, 25
earthquake, 252
east(ern), 348
easy, 87
eat, 89, 117
edge, 211
egg, 130
Eid, 198
eight, 37, 324
eighteen, 61, 324
eighty, 102, 324
either, 37, 170
either...or, 164, 165
elderly, 286
electric(al), 285
electricity, 239
eleven, 63, 324
else, 168
embarrassed, 252
embassy, 50
empty, 239
end, 128
endorse, 211
endorsement, 168
ends (make ___ meet),
225
English, 239
enjoy, 240
enough, 88, 103, 285
enroll, 250
enter, 250
enthusiasm, 298
entirely, 250
envelope, 263
equal, 225
equals (=), 100
equipment, 263

erase, 75, 88
especially, 274
essential, 38, 170
estimate, 225
even though, 250, 286
evening(s), 89, 227
ever (not ___), 116
-ever, 225
every, 74
exactly, 155, 250
examination, 142
example, 251
example (for ___), 298
excellence, 311
except, 250, 251
Excuse me, 88
excused, 205
exit, 142
expectation, 185
expend, 226
expenditure, 226
expense, 226
expensive, 117
explain, 262
extent, 154, 155
extinguish, 88
extra, 211
extremely, 49
eye, 184
eye (keep an ___ on),
169, 212
eyeglasses, 250

F

fact (It's a ___ that),
226
faded, 310
fair (national), 274
fall, 183, 199
falsehood, 282
family, 169
famous, 251
far-off, 154
farther on, 236
fast, 117, 118, 227, 275
fasting, 275
father, 38
faucet, 251
fault, 286
fear, 287

February/March, 276
feel, 182, 205, 257
feel cold, 304
feel hot (/warm), 307
fence, 311
few, 100, 102, 117
fifteen, 62, 324
fifty, 103, 324
fill (in), 199, 298
filled, 275
final, 128
find, 169, 240
find (out), 239
fine, 50, 155, 275, 311
finish, 88
finished, 75
fire, 169, 184
fire (light a ___), 311
fire (set ___ to), 263
firm, 240, 311
firmly (fix ___), 286
first, 142
first (You ___, please), 88
fish, 211
fit, 225
fitting, 199
five, 38, 324
fix, 226
fix firmly, 286
fixed, 117
fixed prices, 122, 123
flesh, 184
floor, 25
flower, 24
flowerpot, 198
flower room, 50
-fold, 262
following, 198
food, 38
foot, 226
for, 88, 211, 237, 260,
263
for example, 298
for the time being, 262
forbid (God ___), 239
forced, 184
foreign, 251
foreigner, 251
foreman, 211
forget, 143, 155, 170
fork, 251

fortunate, 184
 forty, 102, 324
 found, 76, 89
 four, 37, 324
 fourteen, 61, 324
 fragrant, 311
 free, 198, 212
 freeze, 252
 fresh, 118
 Friday, 129
 friend, 88, 89
 friendly, 89, 215
 from, 49
 from now on, 198
 front (in ___ of), 263
 fruit, 143
 full, 275
 full-time, 212
 funeral, 311
 future, 102

G

gain, 297
 garage, 211
 garbage, 239
 garden, 49
 gasoline, 298
 gather, 198
 gauge, 130
 general, 212
 generous, 311
 gentleman, 62
 gesture, 142
 get, 169, 240
 get along, 225
 get by, 225
 get down, 75
 get off, 75, 212
 get up, 117
 gift, 312
 girl, 24
 give, 74
 give back, 223
 glad (to meet you), 113
 glance (at), 143
 glass, 62, 142
 glove, 311
 go, 75
 go down, 212
 go out, 142

go up, 210
 God, 49, 50, 102, 154,
 239
 godown, 50
 goings-on, 142
 good, 50, 155, 225
 good (be ___ to), 239
 good time (have a ___),
 240
 goodbye, 50, 61, 62
 goods, 118, 263
 gotten, 76
 government, 143, 333
 Governor, 240, 335
 grab, 129
 grace (of God), 49
 grade, 155
 grape(s), 297
 great(er), 200
 green, 251
 greet, 291
 greetings, 48
 groceries, 118
 guest, 130
 gypsy, 239

H

habituated, 250
 [hail, 8]
 haircut, 226, 251
 half, 143
 hall(way), 37
 hand, 103
 handle, 168, 286
 handwriting, 154
 hang, 297
 happening, 142
 happy, 117, 184
 hard, 88, 240
 hard-working, 117
 harm, 251
 hat, 50
 have, 37, 82, 169
 have to, 184
 he, 25
 head, 263
 head clerk, 335
 headman, 211
 healing, 185
 health, 130

healthy, 117
 hear, 89
 heart, 184
 heat, 169, 286
 heater, 61
 heavy, 274
 height, 310
 hello, 24, 50, 51
 help, 88
 help yourself, 89
 helpless, 168
 her, 25, 62, 76
 here, 50
 hers, 25, 57
 Hey, you ... , 82
 high, 154, 210
 him, 25, 62, 76
 his, 25, 57, 62
 His Majesty, 274
 historical, 298
 history, 312
 hit, 143
 holiday, 212, 347
 home, 25
 homeland, 263
 homesick, 103, 260
 hope, 160, 185, 239
 hope not, 239
 horse, 225
 hospital, 50
 hot, 88, 211
 hot (to feel ___), 307
 hotel, 38
 hour, 50, 102
 hour (by the ___), 227
 house, 25
 how, 49, 154
 How about ___? 82, 101
 How are you? 37
 how much? 102
 How should I know? 262
 hundred, 103, 324
 hungry, 239
 hurry, 185
 hurt, 198, 239
 husband, 63

I

I, 25
 ice, 287

icecream, 312
 if, 183
 If God wills, 154
 if not, 225
 ill, 117, 155
 illness, 226
 illuminate, 240
 imagine, 184
 immediately, 286
 important, 50, 170, 275
 impossibility, 271
 in, 49, 102
 in addition to, 251
 in back of, 263
 in case, 183
 in front of, 263
 in other words, 212
 in place of, 251
 in spite of, 250, 287
 in the direction of, 104
 incidentally, 240
 income, 226
 incorrect, 286
 individual, 75
 industrious, 117
 inexpensive, 116
 infant, 25
 inflation, 118
 inform, 211
 information, 184, 211, 262
 injured, 198
 ink, 62
 inquire, 155, 199
 inside (of), 211
 instead of, 251
 intelligent, 170
 intention, 262
 intercontinental, 262
 interest, 103
 interesting, 297
 international, 262
 intersection, 239
 invitation, 142
 invite, 142, 211
 iron, 170
 irritated, 298
 -ish, 104
 issue, 142
 it, 24, 25, 62, 76
 item, 103, 104
 its, 62

J

jacket, 184
 January/February, 274
 jeweller, 264
 job, 37
 job (on the ___), 75
 join, 250
 journey, 199
 July/August, 274
 June/July, 275
 just, 130, 310
 just now, 74

K

keenness, 298
 keep an eye on, 169, 212
 keep on ___, 222
 kerosine, 298
 kettle, 184
 key, 24
 kilogram, 129
 kind, 103
 kind (be ___ to), 239
 kind (this/that ___), 103, 104, 311
 kindle, 311
 kindly, 88
 king, 169, 333, 334
 kitchen, 49
 knife, 251
 know, 88, 169, 198, 262, 263
 know how to, 263
 known (become ___), 226
 known (well-___), 251

L

ladder, 39
 ladies', 263
 lady, 38
 lamp, 24
 land, 25
 language, 170
 large, 50
 last, 128
 last-, 116, 117
 last year, 117
 late, 155, 168
 lately, 250

later, 88, 155
 laugh, 143
 law, 298
 lay hold of, 129
 learn, 185, 239
 least (at ___), 129
 leave, 75, 103, 142, 212
 left, 102, 143, 234
 leg, 226
 lend, 286
 length, 311
 less, 117
 lesson, 116
 let, 103, 190, 191
 let go, 169
 Let's, 190
 letter, 62, 154
 lid, 298
 lie, 282
 lie down, 75, 225
 life, 252, 264
 light, 24, 142, 227, 239, 311
 like, 49, 102, 103, 104, 199
 liking, 184
 line, 154
 lip, 211
 listen to, 89, 297
 little, 50, 117, 211
 little bit, 117, 198, 312
 live, 169, 170
 living, 185, 225
 living room, 38
 loan (give/take a ___), 251, 286
 locate, 169
 located (be ___), 89
 location, 37
 lock, 50, 74, 184
 locked, 49
 lonesome, 260
 long, (225
 long (as ___ as), 287
 long (be ___ at), 286
 long time, 168
 longer (any ___), 190, 223
 look after, 169, 212
 look for, 240
 look(ing) at, 143, 298
 loose, 287
 lose, 143

loss, 251
lost, 169, 310
loud, 154
low, 103
lower, 212
lunar, 275
lunch, 88

M

machine(ry), 226
"made in", 275
made of, 305
main, 239
main street, 239
Majesty (His ___), 274
make, 185
make ends meet, 225
make (tea), 297
makes (=), 100
man, 38, 49
manner, 49, 98
many, 49
many (How ___?), 102
map, 251
March/April, 274
market, 129
marketplace, 37
marry, 250
match(es), 49
material, 130
matter, 225
may, 286
May/June, 274
me, 25, 62, 75
meaning, 143, 262
means (by all ___), 184,
310
measure, 225
measurements, 346
meat, 184
medicine, 49
meet, 113, 199
meet (make ends ___),
225
meeting, 226
melon, 239
memo, 263
memorize, 312
men's, 262
mention, 312

mercy, 102
meter, 130
mid-, 143
midday, 116
middle (of), 226
midnight, 140
might, 286
milk, 89
million, 103
mind (to ___), 160
mine, 25, 57
Minister, 199, 334
Ministry, 155, 333
minute, 142
mirror, 142
Miss, 38
mistake (by ___), 275
mistaken, 286
modern, 225
Monday, 129
money, 38, 117, 129
month, 88
monthly, 226
moon, 298
more, 168, 200
morning(s), 118, 227
mosque, 130
mother, 38
mountain, 62
move, 239, 285
move back, 117
movement, 285
movie, 155
Mr., 61, 62
Mrs., 38
much, 49
much (how ___?), 102
musical instruments
(playing ___), 258
Muslim, 275
mutton, 129
my, 25, 62

N

name, 62
narrow, 275
National Bank, 262
near (to), 226
necessary, 38, 170
need, 37, 38, 62

neighbor, 297
neither, 74, 180
neither..nor, 164, 165
never, 116
nevertheless, 75
new, 88
New Year's Day, 143
news, 184, 199, 211
next, 102
next (to), 240
nice, 294
night, 89
nine, 38, 324
nineteen, 62, 324
ninety, 103, 324
no (-), 25, 37
no one, 169
No, sir, 25
nobody, 154
noise, 198
nomad, 239
none, 37
noon, 116, 118
not, 25
not any, 37
note, 263
notebook, 211
nothing, 154
notify, 211
notwithstanding, 250, 287
November/December, 275
now, 74
now (from ___ on), 198
nowadays, 81
number, 103
nurse, 24

O

o, 89
o that . . . , 184
observing, 298
obtain, 76, 169, 240
occasion, 88
occupation, 287, 306, 311
o'clock, 102
October/November, 274
odor, 286
of, 49, 61, 304, 311
of course, 184, 226
off, 212

- off (get ___), 75, 212
 off (turn ___), 88
 office, 61
 official, 298
 offspring, 24
 O.K., 38, 50, 169, 251, 311
 old, 103, 275, 286
 old man, 87
 older, 50
 oldest, 50
 on, 49, 50, 102
 on condition that, 184
 on time, 154
 on top of, 50
 once more, 102
 one, 25, 49, 324
 onion, 130
 only, 130
 onward, 274
 open, 51, 76
 opposite (to), 262
 or, 170
 order, 211, 287
 ordinarily, 118
 ordinary, 250
 other, 168
 other (in ___ words), 212
 otherwise, 225
 ought to, 184
 our, 25, 62
 ours, 25, 57
 out-of-order, 211
 outside (of), 211, 251
 oven, 311
 overcast, 285
 overcoat, 49
 overturned, 239
 own, 199
 owner, 62
- P
- package, 103
 page, 50
 pail, 240
 pain, 239
 paint, 62, 212
 pair, 50
 pale, 50
 pamphlet, 211
 pants, 251
 paper, 37, 286, 311
 parcel, 103
 Pardon me, 88
 parents, 62
 park, 211, 251
 Parliament, 333
 parlor, 38
 part, 297
 particle, 312
 particularly, 274
 part-time, 209, 227
 party, 142
 Pashto, 123, 240
 pass by, 240
 past, 117
 patience (have ___), 212
 patient, 117, 212
 pattern, 251
 paved, 199
 pay, 226
 pay attention, 185, 297
 peaceful, 310
 peak, 169
 peel, 155
 peeling, 155
 peeved, 298
 pen, 38
 pencil, 38
 people, 129
 pepper, 211
 per, 129
 perhaps, 185
 period, 50
 permission, 74
 permit, 190, 191
 Persian, 103, 184
 person, 49, 75
 person (in ___), 195, 196
 personal, 298
 petrol, 298
 photograph, 142, 183
 piano, 263
 picnic, 210
 picture, 142, 183
 piece, 103, 104, 130
 pilau, 311
 pipe, 251
 place, 37, 103
 place (in ___ of), 251
 plan, 212, 251
 plant, 263
 plate, 61
 play, 143, 211, 258
 pleasant, 117
 Please, 88, 89
 pleased (to be ___ with), 199
 plenty, 88
 point, 37
 police, 169
 pocr, 162, 169
 portion, 297
 possessor, 62
 possible, 184
 possibly, 185
 post office, 50
 postage (stamp), 275
 pot, 184
 potato, 24
 pound, 75
 practice, 312
 precipitate, 184
 precisely, 250
 prefer, 103, 183, 199
 preference, 184
 preparation, 312
 prepare, 76
 prepared, 104
 prescription, 263
 present, 168, 312
 President, 335
 press, 170
 pretty, 50
 prevent (May God ___ it), 239
 price, 117
 Prime Minister, 334
 private, 298
 produce, 169
 product(ion), 275
 profession, 287, 306, 311
 profit, 297
 project, 226
 promise, 299
 promptly, 154
 proper, 199
 provided, 184
 province, 240, 326, 335
 public, 212

pull, 199
 pullover, 226
 pump, 297
 puppy, 208
 purchase, 75
 purpose, 262
 put, 103, 211, 263
 put in order, 287
 put on, 75
 put out, 88

Q

quality (fine ___), 311
 question, 143, 155
 quickly, 118
 quiet(ly), 184, 310
 quite, 49

R

racket, 198
 radio, 38
 railing, 311
 rain, 142, 184
 rarely, 116
 raw, 274
 reach, 155, 184
 reaction, 259
 read, 143
 readiness, 312
 ready, 76, 104
 Really? 143
 reason, 154
 reasonable, 169
 receipt, 298
 recently, 250
 recipe, 263
 recognize, 169
 red, 169
 refuse, 239
 regarding, 89
 regret, 235
 regretfully, 263
 relative, 101, 262, 263,
 320-323
 religious celebration,
 198
 remaining, 143
 remember, 155, 312
 remind, 287
 reminder, 263

remote, 154
 remove, 117
 rent, 117
 repair, 226
 repaired, 117
 repeat, 130, 276
 reply, 169
 require, 38, 62
 requirement, 37
 reserved, 286
 responsibility, 199
 rest, 168
 restaurant, 89
 result, 240
 return, 223
 review, 130, 276
 rice, 129
 rich, 117
 right, 103, 310
 right (all ___), 251,
 311
 ripe, 199
 river, 211
 road, 155, 185
 rock, 251
 room, 25
 rug, 117, 212
 ruin, 143
 rule, 298
 rupee, 130

S

sack, 311
 sad, 103, 245
 safe, 169, 185
 salary, 226
 salt, 211
 sample, 251
 Saturday, 130
 saucer, 75
 say, 88
 say (You don't ___), 143
 scared, 287
 school, 62
 scissors, 298
 search (for), 240
 Search me, 262
 season, 169, 271
 seat, 24, 263
 second, 143
 secretary, 335
 section, 263
 secure, 169, 185
 see, 74
 seed, 130
 seem, 226
 seer, 130
 seldom, 116
 self (-ves), 199
 sell, 198
 semi-, 143
 send, 143
 send for, 211
 sensible, 169
 sentence, 184
 separate, 297
 separate(ly), 154
 September/October, 275
 servant, 25, 49
 seven, 37, 324
 seventeen, 61, 324
 seventy, 102, 324
 several, 239
 severe, 251
 sew, 184
 sewing machine, 226
 sharp, 227
 she, 24, 25
 shelf, 24
 shell, 155
 shining, 185
 shirt, 240
 shoe, 49
 shop, 49, 204
 shopkeeper, 116
 shopping area, 240
 shopping center, 129
 shopping supplies, 118
 short, 226
 should, 184
 show, 155, 184
 shut, 49, 74
 shy, 252
 sick, 117, 155
 sickness, 226
 side (by the ___ of), 240
 sign, 142, 211
 signal, 142
 signature, 168
 similar to, 103
 simmer, 297

[Index III]

367

- simple, 298
 sin, 286
 since, 117, 154, 211,
 237, 240
 sing, 143
 single, 149
 sir, 25, 62
 sister, 24, 38
 sit, 169
 six, 39, 324
 sixteen, 63, 324
 sixty, 104, 324
 size, 125, 225
 sketch, 251
 skin, 155
 skirt, 251
 sleep, 75, 117
 sleepy, 154, 235
 slightly, 198
 slow(ly), 89, 155, 184
 small, 50
 small-, 211
 small-ant, 312
 smart, 170
 smell, 286
 [smelly, 16]
 smoke, 199
 snow, 184, 238
 so, 154, 155
 so (Is that ___?) 143
 so that, 117
 soap, 143
 sock, 50
 soft, 226
 soil, 25
 soiled, 116
 solar, 275
 some, 118
 some-, 155
 someone, 169
 something, 154
 somewhat, 104
 son, 24
 soon, 118
 soon (as ___ as), 224
 sorry, 88, 103, 235,
 245, 261, 262
 sort, 98, 103
 sort of, 104, 113
 sound, 155
 sour, 312
 space, 37
 spare, 211
 speak, 103
 special, 286
 spectacles, 250
 speech, 142
 spend, 226, 263
 spilled, 239
 spite (in ___ of), 250,
 287
 spoil, 143
 spoiled, 211
 spoon, 62
 spread, 297
 spring, 198
 squander, 299
 stack, 261
 stained, 154
 stairs, 39
 stamp (postage ___),
 275
 stand, 211, 212, 251
 start, 143, 155, 297
 starting from, 240
 still, 287
 stocking, 50
 stone, 251, 312
 stool, 24
 stop, 212, 285
 store, 49, 117
 storekeeper, 116, 335
 storeroom, 50
 story, 298
 stove, 61, 311
 straight, 103, 174
 straight ahead, 103
 straighten out, 287
 straighten up, 198
 straightforward, 298
 street, 155, 185, 275
 stretch out, 225
 strike, 143
 stroll, 210
 strong, 287
 student, 25
 study, 143
 subject, 286
 successful, 184
 suddenly, 116
 sufficient, 88, 103,
 285
 sugar, 129
 suit, 184
 suitcase, 61
 summer, 199
 summit, 169
 Sunday, 130
 sunroom, 50
 sun(shine), 198
 supper, 103
 supplies, 118
 suppose, 184
 sure, 226, 240
 sweater, 226
 sweep, 74
 sweet, 169
 sweet-smelling, 311
- T
- table, 25
 tailor, 239
 tailoring, 311
 take, 88, 117, 129
 take a look at, 143
 take away, 117
 take care of, 169
 take off, 199
 talk, 103, 142
 tall, 154
 tank, 275
 tardy, 155
 tasty, 117
 tax, 239
 taxi, 240
 tea, 37
 tea (make ___), 297
 teach, 251, 287
 teacher, 25
 teakettle, 61
 team, 298
 teapot, 37
 telegram, 312
 telephone, 89, 143
 tell, 88
 temporarily, 262
 ten, 37, 324
 tender, 226
 test, 142, 286
 than, 226
 thank you, 50, 183
 thanks (to God), 50

that, 39, 117
 that is, 212
 the, 34, 44
 theatre, 155
 their, 25, 62
 theirs, 25, 57
 them, 25, 62, 76
 then, 102, 311
 there, 51
 therefore, 154
 these, 39
 they, 24, 25
 thick, 116
 thin, 275
 thing, 74
 think, 102, 129, 184
 thirsty, 240
 thirteen, 63, 324
 thirty, 324
 this, 37
 this-, 55, 103
 those, 39
 though (even ___), 250,
 286
 thoughtful, 311
 thousand, 102, 324
 three, 38, 324
 throw, 154, 312
 Thursday, 130
 ticket, 275
 tidy up, 75, 198
 tight, 275
 tighten, 286
 time, 39, 88
 time (at the ___ of),
 198
 time (for a long ___),
 168
 time (for the ___ being),
 262
 time (good ___), 240
 time (on ___), 154
 time (What ___?), 102
 tire, 212
 tired, 155
 to, 49, 102, 104, 169
 to-, 88
 together, 199
 tomorrow, 74, 240
 tongue, 170
 too, 37, 49
 tool(s) 263

tooth, 239
 top, 50, 263
 touch, 168
 tough, 240
 tourist, 262
 toward(s), 104
 towel, 263
 town, 38
 tradition, 226
 traffic light, 142, 239
 trainee, 25
 trash, 239
 travel, 199
 tree, 251
 trip, 199
 trouble(d), 199, 275
 trousers, 251
 true, 103
 try, 88
 try out, 286
 Tuesday, 130
 turn, 103, 311
 turn off, 88
 turn on, 240, 297
 twelve, 61, 324
 twenty, 61, 324
 two, 24, 324
 type, 98, 103, 287

U

unclouded, 298
 uncomplicated, 298
 uncooked, 274
 under(neath), 51
 understand, 88
 undoubtedly, 226
 unemployed, 198
 unfortunately, 263
 unhappy, 103
 unless, 250
 unoccupied, 198
 unseeing, 155
 until, 104, 143, 287
 unwashed, 155
 unwell, 155
 unworried, 250
 up, 210
 up to, 104
 up-to-date, 225
 upset, 239, 298

upside down, 239
 upstairs, 210
 us, 25, 62, 75
 use, 74, 142
 used to, 199, 250
 useful, 62
 useless, 262
 usually, 118
 utensil, 63

V

valuable, 118
 value, 74
 various, 296
 vase, 198
 vegetable(s), 143
 venerable, 286
 very, 49, 50, 310
 via, 238
 view(ing), 143, 298
 village, 37
 virtue, 311
 visit, 74, 199
 voice, 155

W

wait, 211, 212
 wake up, 262
 walk, 143, 210
 wall, 37
 walled area, 240
 want, 211
 warehouse, 50
 warm, 211, 286
 warm (feel ___), 307
 wash, 75
 waste, 299
 watch, 50
 watching, 298
 water, 37
 water-storage container,
 198
 way, 49, 98, 185
 way (by the ___), 240
 way (this/that ___), 103,
 104
 we, 24, 25
 weak, 287
 wear, 75

- weary, 155
 weather, 116
 Wednesday, 129
 week, 87
 weekly, 225
 welcome, 49, 117, 183
 well, 50, 117, 311
 well-known, 251
 wet, 275
 what, 37
 what for, 88
 what time, 102
 when, 102, 117, 199, 274
 where, 50
 which, 117, 155
 while, 50, 198, 199, 287
 white, 50
 who, 62, 117
 whoever, 224
 whole, 212
 whom, 75, 117
 whose, 61
 why, 88, 154
 Why not? 184
 wife, 38
 wills (If God ___), 154
 wind, 262, 274
 window, 25
 window glass, 142
 winter, 199
 wipe up, 239
 wish, 184, 294
 with, 49, 87, 88, 102
 without, 250
 without work, 198
 woman, 39
 women's, 263
 wood(en), 129, 311
 word, 143, 184
 work, 37, 75, 287
 work (to have ___), 38
 working (= on the job),
 75
 workman, 211
 world, 168
 worried, 286
 worthy, 298
 would that, 184
 write, 75
 writing, 275
 written (be ___), 275
 wrong, 286
 wrong side (of the bed),
 234
 wrongside-out, 239
 Y
 yard, 49
 year, 89
 year (last ___), 117
 yearly, 227
 yellow, 299
 yes, 24
 yester-, 116
 yesterday (day before
 ___), 117
 yet, 238
 yogurt, 311
 you, 24, 25, 62, 75, 76
 young, 211, 286
 youngster, 25, 211
 your, 25, 62
 You're welcome, 49
 yours, 25, 57

INDEX IV

SUBJECT INDEX

(References are to page numbers)

A

ability to do something:
 with mEsha, 271
 with tAnestan, 165
 accent, 2, 20
 accidental occurrences, 168
 addition, formula for, 100
 adjectives:
 comparative forms, 217
 demonstrative, 31
 made from nouns, 47, 261, 305
 positive forms, 46
 possessive (emphatic), 56
 possessive (ordinary), 55
 superlative forms, 218
 unchangeable, 47
 adverbs, showing location, 43, 206
 Afghan currency, explained, 123
 age:
 answering questions about, 208
 shown with bUdan/shudan, 238
 shown with kalAn/khurd, 149,
 219
 shown with suffix -a, 208
 shown with umur, 246
 agent, with intransitive verbs,
 168
 agreement of verb, 21
 allow (permit), with mAndan, 190
 am- as a prefix = co-, 135
 answering:
 beggars, 86
 questions about age, 208
 questions about cost/price, 122
 questions about rent, 115
 questions about salary, 221
 questions about time, 139
 article, no definite, 34, 44
 aspiration, not meaningful in
 Dari, 3
 attached forms of verbal objects,
 136

attached questions:
 with khu, 160, 308
 with nE, 161

B

bale (bale) [yes], in telephone conver-
 sations, 23
 bargaining, 122, 123, 271
 beggars, answering, 86

C

calendar, Afghan, 193, 271
 calling (something by a name), with
 guftan, 81, 96
 cannon in Kabul City = noon, 111
 cardinal numbers, 18, 30, 60, 94, 324
 causal verbs, 256
 celebrations, religious and official,
 193, 347
 change, making, 124
 circumlocution needed for acquaintances
 of opposite sex, 80, 81
 commands, 83, 308
 comparative form of adjectives, 217
 comparisons, general, 96, 97, 219
 compass, directions of, 248
 complex sentences, with past perfect
 tense, 247
 compound subjects, 32
 compound verbs, 70
 compounds, indefinite, with ar-, 224
 concurrent action, 135
 conditional sentences:
 future, 290
 past, 292
 present, 292
 condolence, expressing, 245, 261
 congratulations (for things or events,
 not persons directly), 182
 conjunction, past participle used for,
 164

container, shown by suffix
 -dAn(I), 193, 194
 continents, names of, 318
 contingency, 175, 279
 contingent future, 279
 continuation of an action, 222
 contraction, 22, 114
 contrary-to-fact conditions,
 292 to 296
 correlative conjunctions, 164, 165
 cost or price, 122
 countable quantities, with chand,
 99
 countries, names of, 318, 319
 courtesies, 48, 49, 181, 182, 183
 currency units, with -I, 124
 customary action:
 future, 109
 past, 135
 present, 69, 109

D

--dAr as a suffix of possession,
 114
 days of the week, 127
 days, plural form for all days of
 that name, 128
 definiteness, 33, 44, 72
 demonstrative adjectives, 31, 307
 demonstrative pronouns, 30, 307
 diminutive suffix -cha, 209
 direct discourse, 161
 direction words, 101, 348
 directions of the compass, 348
 directions, with imperative, 83
 discourse, direct/indirect, 161
 distribution, by repetition of
 words, 296
 dry measure, 346

E

eggs, always sold by the piece,
 not by the dozen, 126
 emphasis, by repetition of words,
 296
 emphatic pronouns, 195
 endearment, with suffix -jAn, 73,
 332

evening, expressed with the following
 day, 128
 examinations, taking and giving, 141
 exclamations, 151, 310
 exhortations, 180, 191
 extent or amount, how shown, 151

F

familiarity/unfamiliarity determines
 singular or plural, 19, 20
 foreigners, common mistakes of, 22, 31,
 33, 35, 37, 57, 76, 96, 126, 234
 formality/informality determines singu-
 lar or plural, 19, 20
 "four" (4) as a numeral, written two
 ways, 30, 60, 102, 324
 fraction word, nIm ($\frac{1}{2}$), 140
 frequency words, 109
 Friday, religious and official holiday,
 127, 206
 "friend," caution in use of the word,
 80, 81
 future, contingent, 279
 future tense, 69, 109, 280

G

gender, 19
 "God," references to, common in Dari, 48,
 61, 99, 153, 182, 235, 280, 281, 292
 governmental terminology, 333
 greetings:
 a considerable routine, 48, 206
 conveying to another, 291

H

habitual action:
 future, 109
 past, 135
 present, 69, 109
 holidays in Afghanistan, 193, 206, 347
 "house" (khAna) usually takes plural
 possessive adjectives, 56

I

idiomatic uses of sar (head), 260
 imperative expressions, 85

imperative singular + khu, for politeness, 308
 imperatives, 83
 impossibility, with "na mEsha," 271
 inclusiveness, shown with ar-, 70
 indefinite compounds:
 with ar- ("-ever"), 223
 with kudAm- ("some-"), 149
 indefiniteness in numbers, 95, 100, 151
 indirect discourse, 161
 indirect objects, 74
 infinitives:
 form of, 20
 to show purpose, 245
 used as nouns, 244
 inquiry, use of subjunctive for, 180
 intention, how shown, 69, 181, 245
 IPA (International Phonetic Alphabet), 1, 8, 12, 317
 irregular plurals, 34, 236

K

Kabul City maps, 327 to 330
 kalAn (large), may refer to age, 219
 ke (that):
 used as a relative pronoun, 115
 used for simultaneous action, 135
 used in senses other than "that," 285
 khAna (house):
 as a suffix, 44
 usually used with plural possessive adjectives, 56
 khu:
 with attached questions, 160
 with imperative singular for politeness, 308
 khurd (small), may refer to age, 149
 kinship, 101, 260, 320 to 323
 "knowing how to" do something, 165, 258

L

languages:
 names of, 318, 319
 object marker, when used with, 195
 Leap Year, 272
 leave-taking, forms of, 48, 61
 left hand, cultural note on, 234
 linear measure, 346
 liquid measure, 346

M

maps:
 of Afghanistan, general, 325
 of Kabul City, 327 to 330
 of provinces, 325
 measurements, chart of, 346
 measures, vary depending on part of the country, 125
 mEbAsha, as a special form, 109, 164, 167, 209
 mEsha (it will be, becomes):
 in bargaining, 122, 271
 in mathematical formulas (=), 100
 to show possibility, 271
 ministries, names of Government, 333
 months of the year, 271
 multiplication, formula for, 100
 musical instruments, playing, 258

N

na, contracted with verbs with initial A-, 114
 nA- as a negative prefix, 152
 names and titles, Afghan, 331-332
 necessity, shown with subjunctive, 179
 negative meanings of anOz (yet), with present perfect tense, 235
 negative plus verbs beginning with A- = nA-, 114
 negative prefixes:
 bE- (without), 165
 nA- (un-), 152
 noon in Kabul City (= cannon), 111
 nouns, made into adjectives, 47, 261, 305
 numbers:
 cardinal, 18, 30, 60, 94, 324
 ordinal, 137

pronunciation of long ones, 95
 telephone, 99
 when used with object marker,
 72
 numerical plurality (indefinite-
 ness), 90

O

object marker (to show definite-
 ness in verbal objects), 71 to
 74, 85, 124, 137, 139, 153.
 284
 object pronouns, unattached, 73,
 79 to 81, 136
 objects of verbs, attached, 136
 oldest/youngest, shown by kalAn/
 khurd, 149, 219
 order of words, 22, 32, 56, 82,
 85, 205
 ordinal numbers, 137

P

passives, 267 to 271
 past contrary-to-fact action,
 292 to 296
 past customary action, 135
 past habitual action, 135
 past participle (unchangeable),
 163, 164, 223, 246, 258, 269,
 304
 past perfect tense, 246, 247
 past progressive tense, 133, 134,
 135, 281, 282, 293, 295
 past tense, simple, 111 to 113,
 246, 280, 281, 291
 past time prefixes/words, 114,
 115
 perfect tenses:
 past, 246, 247
 present, 231 to 236
 permission, shown by subjunctive,
 181
 permit, allow--with mAndan, 190
 personal endings, 20
 personal pronouns:
 attached--
 as objects of prepositions,
 79 to 81
 as objects of verbs, 136

as possessives, 55
 with numbers, 70
 with pronouns, 149
 unattached--
 as objects of prepositions, 79 to
 81
 as objects of verbs, 73
 as possessives, 56, 57
 as subjects, 19

phonological changes, rules for (when
 adding suffixes), 19, 35, 46, 55, 72
 plural forms:

irregular, 34, 236
 of days, for all days of that name,
 128
 of nouns, 18
 of numbers, showing indefiniteness,
 95

politeness, 19, 23, 57, 73, 84, 308,
 332, 335

possession, how shown, 55 to 58, 114,
 167

possessive adjectives:
 emphatic, 56
 made from nouns + -Ana, 261
 ordinary, 55

possessive form of nouns, 58
 possessive pronouns, with az, 57

possibility:
 in past time, 303, 304
 in present/future time, 179
 with mEsha, 271

pOst and pOsta distinguished, 148

preference, how shown, 95, 183

prepositions--see under name of particu-
 lar one in vocabulary list

present contrary-to-fact, 292, 293

present perfect tense, 231 to 236

present progressive tense, 69

present tense:
 interchangeable with simple past
 and subjunctive, 292
 simple, 19, 32, 67 to 69

presumption, in past time, 303

probability, in past time, 303

progressive indicator, mE-, 68, 134

progressive tenses:
 past, 133 to 135, 281, 282, 290 to
 296

present, 67 to 69

prohibitions, 83

pronouns:

- emphatic, 195
- object, 73, 79 to 81, 136
- personal, q.v.
- possessive, 57
- reflexive, 195 to 198
- relative, 115
- subject, 19
- totality, 162
- provinces, map of, 326
- purpose, how shown, 69, 181, 245

Q

- quantity and size, 125, 346
- question words--see under name of particular one in vocabulary

R

- recurrence, regular, shown by:
 - ar + time word, 70
 - time suffixes, 221, 222
- reflexive pronoun, 195 to 198
- regularity of recurrence, shown by:
 - ar + time word, 70
 - time suffixes, 221, 222
- relative pronoun, 115
- relatives, 101, 260, 320 to 323
- religious celebrations, 193, 347
- repetition of words, 296
- reporting (someone's) words (or, speech), 161
- requests, 83, 204, 308
- respect, how shown, 19, 23, 57, 73, 84, 332, 335
- responses:
 - because of, since, therefore, 150
 - in greetings, 48, 183, 206
 - to "thank you," 49, 183
- responsibility, shown by subjunctive, 181
- result, shown by subjunctive, 181

S

- sAeb, as a suffix of respect, 57, 335
- simple past tense, 111 to 113, 246, 280, 281, 291

- simple present tense, 19, 32, 67 to 69
- simultaneous action, 135
- sounds of Dari, 1 to 16
- streets in Kabul City, names of, 167, 327 to 330
- subject endings, 20
- subject pronouns, 19
- subjunctive, 175, 176, 179 to 183, 190, 191, 205, 281, 282, 291, 292
- superlative form of adjectives, 218
- symbols used in this course, compared with IPA, 317

T

- "tag" (attached) questions:
 - with khu, 160, 308
 - with nE, 161
- telephone:
 - conversation, 23
 - numbers, 99, 100
 - time, 141
- telling time, 139 to 142
- temperature, 346
- terminology used for government, 333 to 335
- tests, "taking" and "giving", 141
- "there"--doesn't occur in Dari as an impersonal function word, 45
- time:
 - expressing aspects of, 153
 - of day, asking, 139
 - since, 237
 - words, 81, 82, 94
- titles and names, Afghan, 331, 332
- totality:
 - with ar-, 70
 - with kull e, 162
- totality pronoun, 162

U

- unchangeable past participle, 163, 164, 223, 246, 258, 269, 304
- uncountable quantities, with cheqa, 151
- unfulfilled conditions, past and present time, 292 to 296

V

- variety, by word repetition, 296

verbs, compound, 70
verb forms, summaries of, 86, 87,
176 to 179, 249, 250, 338 to
345
verb system in Dari, 336, 337
vocatives, 87

W

wakht e ke, uses of, 193, 201,
202, 246, 247, 253, 291
week days, 127, 128
word order, 22, 32, 56, 82, 85,
205

Y

yak (yag), as indefinite article,
124
yak + tA = yakI, 99
youngest/oldest, shown by khurd
(small)/kalAn (large), 149,
219